Precise diagnostics of AGN-driven outflows

Luke R. Holden

Department of Physics & Astronomy
The University of Sheffield

A dissertation submitted in candidature for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy at the University of Sheffield

April 2024

“Deep in the human unconscious is a pervasive need for a logical universe that makes sense. But the real universe is always one step beyond logic.”

— Frank Herbert

Acknowledgements

Undertaking a PhD in astrophysics (and over ten years in higher education in general) is an immense feat, and while I'm incredibly proud of the work and determination that it has taken to reach this point, I would not have been able to do it without a lot of help and support, for which I am incredibly thankful.

First and foremost, I thank my supervisor, Clive Tadhunter, for his invaluable assistance and mentorship, both during my PhD and before. I could not have asked for a better supervisor, and I have an immense amount of respect for you as a scientist (in particular your healthy scepticism, which is contagious). Beyond academia, it has been a pleasure to get to know you over the past seven years — I have greatly enjoyed our conversations about science and almost everything else, and I look forward to keeping in touch. It was an absolute honour to work with you.

There are many others within academia and education who have helped me immensely, yet are too many to name here. Particular thanks to Dr. Nolan, my Sixth Form physics teacher, without whom I likely would have never made it into an astrophysics course, and Vik Dhillon, without whom I would not have had the opportunity to work on La Palma, which turned out to be the most important and influential year of my life thus far. My thanks to all of those who I had the pleasure of knowing and working with on La Palma (including the ING + ORM staff, and the ING and NOT student cohort of 2018–2019), as well as all of those in the Sheffield astrophysics group during my time here. Special thanks to Paul Kerry for his patience and support on the computing side of things — the Sheffield astrogroup couldn't do our job without you.

Along with astronomy, my other main passion is music, which I've attempted to include in this thesis by having the quotes at the start of each chapter be from songs that have had a particular meaning to me throughout my PhD — many thanks to the artists behind those songs. Thank you also to the Sheffield / South Yorkshire underground metal scene for being an ace community during my time in the city, and a special thank you to my Void Maw bandmates Bill and Shaun for not only allowing me to achieve a life goal of writing and playing my own music live (as well as putting an AGN jet in the band logo), but also for their understanding and patience with me finishing this PhD.

Thanks also to my friends who have supported me during this period — unfortunately, I don't have the space here to do justice to my appreciation of all of you. Kahleel: eternal thanks for your endless support and friendship; it has been a pleasure to grow and evolve with you. David: thank you for your years of support and understanding — I would say I'm the first astrophysicist to cite a neuroscientist, but given how much survey astronomers love statistics, I'd say it's unlikely. Kuba & Olivia: thanks for your support and all of the good times, and apologies for formally tying you to astrophysics with this acknowledgement. Thanks also to Rob for being a great friend (as well as housemate for the majority of my PhD), and for all of our brilliant conversations. Importantly, I give my thanks and love to Dario Napodano and Alan Chopping, who played crucial roles in my life, but are no longer here for me to thank in person.

And of course, my endless thanks and much love to my family — Mum, Dad, and Dan — for supporting me through the past ten years. I absolutely could not have done this without you, and I cannot express how much I appreciate it.

Finalmente, quiero agradecer y dar mucho amor a mi guapi Nebaí. Me has ayudado mas que podrias saber, y te quiero mucho mas que podria decir. Muchisimas gracias por todo, y tengo muchas ganas de empezar la proxima etapa de nuestra vida. Te amito.

Declaration

I declare that, except where stated, all work presented in this thesis is my own. No part of this thesis has been submitted nor accepted for any other qualification or award at The University of Sheffield or elsewhere.

Much of the analyses, results, and discussions included in this work have already been published (with myself as first author) in academic journals, namely:

1. Holden et al. (2023), “Precise physical conditions for the warm gas outflows in the nearby active galaxy IC 5063”, 2023, MNRAS, 520(2), 1848–1871.

2. Holden & Tadhunter (2023), “Outflow densities and ionization mechanisms in the NLRs of the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151”, 2023, MNRAS, 524(1), 886–905.

3. Holden et al. (2024), “ALMA reveals a compact and massive molecular outflow driven by the young AGN in a nearby ULIRG”, 2024, MNRAS, 530(1), 446–456.

Thesis summary

Active galactic nuclei (AGN) are now routinely observed to accelerate outflows of gas, which are commonly thought to play an important role in galaxy evolution by heating and expelling material that is needed for star formation. Therefore, over the past twenty-five years, many observational studies have aimed to verify this situation by comparing observed outflow properties to the requirements and predictions of models of galaxy evolution. However, the true natures of outflows remain unclear due to major uncertainties in deriving key properties from observations. In this thesis, I present a series of detailed studies of nearby active galaxies that develop, verify, and use precise diagnostics of AGN-driven outflow properties to address these sources of uncertainty and robustly determine the impact of outflows on host galaxies.

I find that when one of the main sources of uncertainty — the electron density of outflowing gas — is accounted for, the kinetic powers of the most-commonly-observed outflow phase (warm-ionised gas) are significantly below the requirements of galaxy evolution models. However, multi-wavelength observations reveal that this phase constitutes a small fraction of the total outflowing mass, with the cooler neutral atomic and cold molecular phases dominating in terms of mass and kinetic power. Moreover, I present evidence for AGN-driven outflows being limited to the central regions of galaxies, indicating that outflows do not have a galaxy-wide impact. Finally, despite outflow ionisation/excitation conditions being commonly used to determine acceleration mechanisms, I demonstrate that the link between them is complex; using detailed multi-wavelength diagnostic techniques, I argue that, in the objects studied, AGN jets are the dominant outflow acceleration mechanism. Overall, this work demonstrates the careful considerations that must be made when quantifying the properties of AGN-driven outflows and determining their true role in galaxy evolution, and presents precise techniques that are crucial for this purpose.

Contents

1 Introduction **1**

1.1 Historical context 2

1.1.1 Early spectroscopic studies of AGN 2

1.1.2 The advent of radio astronomy 4

1.1.3 Narrow-line studies of active galaxies 6

1.1.4 AGN-driven outflows and galaxy evolution 10

1.2 AGN-driven outflows 14

1.2.1 Uncertainties regarding outflow energetics 15

1.2.2 Outflow kinematics and geometry 21

1.2.3 Comparisons to models of galaxy evolution 24

1.2.4 Outflow acceleration mechanisms 25

1.2.5 Taxonomy of AGN 34

1.3 Outstanding problems addressed by this thesis 37

2 Jet-driven warm gas outflows in the Seyfert 2 galaxy IC 5063 **41**

Chapter declaration 42

2.1 Chapter introduction 43

2.2 Observations and data reduction 44

2.2.1 Xshooter observations of IC 5063 44

2.2.2 Seeing estimates 46

2.2.3 Reduction of the Xshooter data 46

2.2.4 Aperture selection and extraction 47

2.2.5 Stellar continua modelling and subtraction 49

2.2.6 Emission-line fitting 50

2.3 Properties of the outflowing gas 55

2.3.1 Analysis of the UVB+VIS apertures 55

2.3.2 Analysis of the NIR apertures 73

2.4 Discussion 77

2.4.1 Placing the warm-ionised outflows at the NW lobe in a multi-phase context 77

2.4.2 Outflow acceleration and ionisation/excitation mechanisms in IC 5063 83

2.4.3 The use of transauroral-line diagnostics in AGN-driven outflows . . 89
2.5 Chapter conclusions 90
Chapter acknowledgements 91
Data availability 91

3 Outflow conditions and acceleration mechanisms for the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 93
Chapter declaration 94
3.1 Chapter introduction 95
3.1.1 NGC 1068 96
3.1.2 NGC 4151 97
3.1.3 Previous photoionisation modelling of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 . . 98
3.2 Observations and data reduction 98
3.2.1 Archival HST/STIS observations 98
3.2.2 Reduction of STIS data 99
3.2.3 Aperture selection and extraction 100
3.2.4 The contribution of stellar continua to the spectra 101
3.2.5 Fits to key emission lines 102
3.3 Analysis of the STIS spectra 104
3.3.1 Transauroral-line diagnostics 104
3.3.2 Ionisation states and mechanisms of the warm-ionised gas 107
3.3.3 Electron densities of the high-ionisation gas in NGC 1068 112
3.3.4 Energetics of the outflowing gas 114
3.4 Discussion 116
3.4.1 The outflow ionisation and acceleration mechanisms in the NLRs of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 116
3.4.2 The effect of ionisation mechanisms on density diagnostics 118
3.4.3 Comparison of the transauroral-line-derived electron densities to other techniques 122
3.4.4 The impact of the outflowing gas on the host galaxies 123
3.4.5 A tale of three Seyferts: NGC 1068, NGC 4151 and IC 5063 124
3.5 Chapter conclusions 127
Chapter acknowledgements 128
Data availability 128

4 A compact cold-molecular outflow in the ULIRG F13451+1232 131
Chapter declaration 132
4.1 Introduction 133
4.2 Observations and data reduction 134
4.3 Analysis and results 136

4.3.1 Moment maps 136
4.3.2 BBarolo modelling of the gas disk 137
4.3.3 Kinematics of the non-rotating gas 140
4.3.4 Comparison to the small-scale radio structure 140
4.3.5 Channel maps 143
4.3.6 Potential effects of continuum subtraction 144
4.3.7 Outflow energetics 145
4.4 Discussion 146
4.4.1 Interpreting the non-rotating gas as inflowing 146
4.4.2 The spatially-extended, intermediate-velocity gas 147
4.4.3 The compact, high-velocity nuclear outflow 148
4.5 Chapter conclusions 150
Chapter acknowledgements 151
Data availability 151

5 No evidence for galaxy-wide warm-ionised outflows in the ULIRG F13451+1232 153
Chapter declaration 154
5.1 Chapter introduction 155
5.2 Observations and data reduction 157
5.2.1 Archival VLT/MUSE-DEEP data 157
5.2.2 Further reduction of MUSE-DEEP data 157
5.2.3 Seeing estimates 158
5.3 Analysis and results 158
5.3.1 A Bayesian emission-line fitting routine 158
5.3.2 The effect of atmospheric seeing on outflow extents and kinematics 161
5.3.3 Energetics of the extended warm-ionised emission 169
5.4 Discussion 181
5.4.1 Comparison to models of galaxy evolution 181
5.4.2 Comparison to previous observational studies 182
5.4.3 The impact of beam-smearing on outflow spatial extents and kinematics 184
5.4.4 The impact of beam-smearing on mass outflow rates and kinetic powers 185
5.5 Chapter conclusions 186
Chapter acknowledgements 187
Data availability 187

6 Conclusions and future work 189
6.1 Thesis conclusions 190

6.1.1 Which outflow phase(s) is dominant in terms of energetics, and how are the different phases physically linked? 190
6.1.2 What are the true electron densities of the warm ionised outflow phase, and what is the impact on outflow masses and kinetic powers? 193
6.1.3 What are the spatial extents of AGN-driven outflows? 195
6.1.4 How do AGN accelerate outflows? 196
6.2 Future work 198
6.2.1 Detailed studies of active galaxies 198
6.2.2 Statistical studies of precise outflow properties 200
6.2.3 Improved comparisons between observational and theoretical work . 201
Chapter acknowledgements 202

Bibliography **215**

Abbreviations used in this work **217**

Definitions used in this work **219**

Appendices **223**

A Photoionisation modelling of the [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeIIλ4686/Hβ diagnostic diagram **225**

B Critical densities and ionisation energies for key diagnostic emission lines **229**

C Modelling the effect of shock-ionisation on the transauroral-line-ratio diagnostic grid **233**

List of Figures

1.1 Emission-line profiles for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 as presented by Seyfert (1943). 3

1.2 14.985 GHz radio map of the inner kiloparsecs of the Seyfert galaxy NGC 1068 (as presented by Wilson & Ulvestad 1982), showing a linear radio structure. 8

1.3 Schematic of the unified scheme of AGN. 10

1.4 Empirical scaling relation between supermassive black hole mass and galactic bulge stellar velocity dispersion, presented by Ferrarese & Merritt (2000). 12

1.5 Cumulative number of published AGN-driven outflow studies since the early 1970s, taken from Harrison et al. (2018). 13

1.6 Lines arising from different outflow phases in IC 5063 (Morganti et al., 2015), indicating a co-spatial, co-kinematic multi-phase outflow. 17

1.7 Variation of the [SII](6717/6731) emission-line flux ratio with electron density. 19

1.8 Examples of non-parametric percentile velocity shifts and widths for a simulated Hβ line. 23

1.9 Observed multi-phase outflow scaling relations between outflow energetics and host AGN bolometric luminosity, as presented by Fiore et al. (2017). 26

1.10 Snapshots of hydrodynamic simulations by Mukherjee et al. (2016) of a higher- and lower-power jet propagating through an ISM. 28

1.11 [SII]/Hα vs [OIII]/Hβ BPT (Baldwin et al., 1981; Kewley et al., 2006) diagram with shock and photoionisation modelling. 30

2.1 VLT/Xshooter slit position used for the observations the Seyfert 2 galaxy IC 5063, overlaid on optical and 17 GHz radio continuum imaging. . . 45

2.2 Two-dimensional long-slit spectra along the radio axis of IC 5063, with the positions of extracted apertures overlaid. 48

2.3 STARLIGHT stellar-synthesis fits to various key spectral features in Xshooter spectra of IC 5063. 51

2.4 [OIII] line profile models for the apertures extracted along the radio axis of Xshooter spectra of IC 5063. 53
2.5 [OIII]-model fits to key emission lines used in the analysis of Xshooter observations of IC 5063. 54
2.6 Velocity shifts of the warm-ionised gas along the radio structure of IC 5063. 57
2.7 Velocity widths of the warm-ionised gas along the radio structure of IC 5063. 57
2.8 Spatial distributions of the blue wings of the transauroral [OII] and [SII] lines, in addition to [OIII]λ5007 and Hβ lines along the radio axis of IC 5063. 59
2.9 Transauroral [OII] and [SII] line ratio diagram for IC 5063, showing both measured values and those predicted from photoionisation modelling. 62
2.10 Reddening values derived from the Balmer decrement plotted against values measured using the transauroral line technique. 67
2.11 HeIIλ4686/Hβ vs [OIII](5007/4363) diagnostic diagram for the warm ionised gas in IC 5063, including predicted values for photo- and shock-ionised gas. 70
2.12 Outflow coupling efficiencies for the Xshooter apertures of IC 5063, calculated for two cases: using the AGN bolometric luminosity, and for a jet of power $P_{\rm jet} = 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1} 72
2.13 Velocity profiles of for the [OIII]λ5007 and H$_2$1–0S(1)λ21218 lines at the position of the SE radio lobe of IC 5063. 74
2.14 [FeII]λ12570/Paβ vs H$_2\lambda$21218/Brγ NIR diagnostic diagram for the warm-ionised and warm-molecular NLR gas in IC 5063. 75
2.15 Two-dimensional position-velocity profile of the [OII]$\lambda\lambda$3726,3729 doublet along the radio axis of IC 5063, and corresponding 24.8 GHz continuum contours. 79
2.16 Velocity profile of the H$_2\lambda$21218 emission line at the location between the nucleus and outer extent of the NW radio lobe in IC 5063. 80
2.17 A schematic for the post-shock cooling sequence that could explain the observed locations, kinematics, and conditions of the various gas phases in IC 5063. 85
2.18 Spatial flux distributions of the [FeII]λ16400, [FeII]λ12570, H$_2\lambda$21218, Paβ, and HeIλ10830 emission lines for the outflows in IC 5063. 87

3.1 The slit positions of the archival HST/STIS observations plotted over archival [OIII] and radio-continuum imaging of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. 99
3.2 Long-slit spectra of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, with the positions and sizes of extracted apertures overlaid. 101
3.3 HST/STIS G430L grating spectrum for Aperture 2 of NGC 1068. 102

3.4 Transauroral [OII] and [SII] line ratio diagram for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, showing both measured values and those predicted from photoionisation modelling. 106

3.5 HeIIλ4686/Hβ vs [OIII]5007/[OIII]λ4363 diagnostic diagram for the warm-ionised gas in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, including modelled values for (radiation-bounded and matter-bounded) photo- and shock-ionised gas. 110

3.6 [NeV]3426/[NeIII]3869 vs HeII/Hβ diagnostic diagram for the warm-ionised gas in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, including modelled values for (radiation-bounded and matter-bounded) photo- and shock-ionised gas. 111

3.7 [FeVII](6087/3759) vs [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 diagnostic diagram for the highly-ionised gas in NGC 1068, along with grids produced from photoionisation modelling. 113

3.8 TR([SII])/Hβ vs TR([OII])/[OIII]λ5007 diagnostic diagram for the warm ionised gas in IC 5063, NGC 1068, and NGC 4151, along with grids produced from photo- and shock-ionisation modelling. 122

3.9 HeIIλ4686/Hβ vs [OIII]5007/[OIII]λ4363 diagnostic diagram for the warm ionised gas in IC 5063, NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, including modelled values for (radiation-bounded and matter-bounded) photo- and shock-ionised gas. 125

4.1 Moment 0, 1, and 2 maps for the central kiloparsecs of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 136

4.2 Moment 0, 1, and 2 maps (and residuals = data - model) for the BBarolo 3DFit model of the kiloparsec-scale disk in the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 139

4.3 CO(1–0) position-velocity (PV) diagrams for 1.00 × 0.05 arcsecond slices with PA = 248° and PA = 120°, centred on the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 141

4.4 **a)** Integrated CO(1–0) flux map of the nuclear outflow in F13451+1232, with VLBI 1266 MHz continuum imaging from Morganti et al. (2013a) showing the small-scale radio structure; **b)** CO(1–0) velocity profile of the nuclear outflow. 142

4.5 Velocity channel maps of the central ∼1 kpc of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 143

4.6 CO(1–0) velocity profiles of the nuclear outflow in the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 extracted from observations of differing array configurations (hence beam sizes). 144

5.1 Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 + [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 + continuum image of F13451+1232. 159

5.2 [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 line profile (and nuclear model fit) for the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 163

5.3 The spatial distribution of the peak flux of the [OIII] nuclear model, a two-dimensional Moffat profile fit to this distribution, and the residuals of this fit in the inner 7 arcseconds (15 kpc) of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 164

5.4 [OIII]λ5007 line profiles extracted from apertures at increasing radial distances north of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232, for cases in which beam smearing of nuclear emission is and is-not accounted for. . . . 165

5.5 Normalized fluxes in concentric apertures taken from **1)** the peak flux of the [OIII] nuclear model fits around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 and **2)** the [OIII] flux of a star in the FOV of the MUSE DEEP dataset. 167

5.6 Beam-smearing-corrected and non-beam-smearing-corrected W_{80} velocity-width maps of the central 6 × 6 arcsecond (13 × 13 kpc) region around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 168

5.7 Beam-smearing-corrected and non-beam-smearing-corrected flux-weighted velocity shift maps of the central 6 × 6 arcsecond (13 × 13 kpc) region around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 168

5.8 Continuum-subtracted Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 + [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 images of F13451+1232, with the locations and sizes of extracted apertures shown. 171

5.9 Fits to the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959, 5007 doublet, Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 blend, and [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 doublet in apertures extracted from MUSE DEEP data of F13451+1232 using the nuclear model + $N_{\rm g}$ Gaussian components and free-fitting approaches. 172

A.1 The HeIIλ4686/Hβ vs [OIII]λ5007/4363 diagnostic diagram with varying model parameters. 227

C.1 Transauroral-line-ratio grid for shock models at a fixed magnetic parameter and a range of shock velocities. 235

C.2 Transauroral-line-ratio grid for shock models of different magnetic parameters and shock velocities. 236

C.3 Transauroral-line-ratio grid for shock models of varying magnetic parameters and a range of shock velocities. 237

List of Tables

1.1 The gas phases of AGN-driven outflows that are considered in this thesis. . 16

2.1 Seeing estimates for the VLT/Xshooter observations of IC 5063. 46

2.2 Warm-ionised gas kinematics along the radio structure of IC 5063. 56

2.3 The spatial positions of the peak flux of the blue wings of the transauroral [OII] and [SII] lines, in addition to [OIII]λ5007 and Hβ lines . 59

2.4 Electron densities for the warm-ionised gas along the radio axis of IC 5063, measured with the transauroral line technique, the traditional [SII] and [OII] line ratios, and the [ArIV](4711/4740) ratio. 63

2.5 E(B−V) values for the warm-ionised gas along the radio axis of IC 5063, measured with the transauroral line technique and the Balmer decrement method. 64

2.6 Electron temperatures for the warm ionised gas along the radio axis of IC 5063, measured using the [OIII](5007+4959)/4363 line ratio. 68

2.7 Energetics for the warm ionised outflows in IC 5063. 71

2.8 Ratios of NIR H_2 and [FeII] emission lines to recombination lines for the outflows in IC 5063. 76

2.9 Masses, mass outflow rates, and coupling efficiencies for the various outflow phases in IC 5063, calculated with consistent methodology. 84

2.10 Measured centroids of Gaussian fits to the Spatial flux distributions of the [FeII]λ16400, [FeII]λ12570, $H_2\lambda$21218, Paβ, and HeIλ10830 emission lines for the outflows in IC 5063. 86

3.1 [OIII] model parameters and aperture distances for each of the apertures for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. 104

3.2 Electron densities, reddening values, and electron temperatures for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. 105

3.3 Outflow velocities, outflow masses, mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies for the apertures of the STIS spectra of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. 115

3.4 Bolometric luminosities, 1.4 GHz radio luminosities, jet powers (P_{jet}), jet orientations with respect to the disk (θ_{jet}), and ionisation mechanisms determined along the radio axes for the nearby Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068, NGC 4151, and IC 5063. 124

4.1 Parameters of the BBarolo 3DFit model of the kiloparsec-scale disk in the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. 138
4.2 CO(1–0) luminosities, masses, projected flux-weighted outflow velocities, aperture radii, projected mass flow rates ($\dot{M}_{\mathrm{flow,proj}}$), deprojected mass flow rates ($\dot{M}_{\mathrm{flow}}$), and deprojected energetics for the molecular gas components in the primary nucleus of F13451+1232, including for the compact nuclear outflow. 147

5.1 Parameters for the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda4959, 5007$ model derived from a circular aperture around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 in the MUSE-DEEP data. 163
5.2 Beam-smearing-corrected [OIII] kinematics (flux weighted velocity shift, intrinsic flux-weighted FWHM, percentile velocity, and non-parametric velocity width W_{80}), electron densities, masses, flow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies for the apertures extracted from the MUSE-DEEP datacube of F13451+1232. 179
5.3 Non-beam-smearing-corrected [OIII] kinematics (flux weighted velocity shift, intrinsic flux-weighted FWHM, percentile velocity, and non-parametric velocity width W_{80}), electron densities, masses, flow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies for the apertures extracted from the MUSE-DEEP datacube of F13451+1232. 180

B.1 Critical densities and ionisation energies at $T_e = 15,000$ K for several key diagnostic lines that trace the warm ionised outflow phase. 230

Chapter 1

Introduction

“Celestial architects,
the edifice reflects,
reminds us of who we are,
the map to the stars”

— Xoth, *Map to the Stars, Monument to the Ancients*

1.1 Historical context

1.1.1 Early spectroscopic studies of AGN

Spectroscopic studies of ‘spiral nebulae’ in the early 20th century provided early indications of the existence of active galactic nuclei (AGN). The first of these was performed by Edward Fath in 1909, using a spectrograph he designed and mounted on the 36-inch Crossley reflector at Lick Observatory, USA. Fath took spectra of a small sample of spiral nebulae and globular clusters, with the intention of establishing whether spiral nebulae were gaseous in nature or unresolved collections of stars. While most of the objects showed continuous spectra with absorption lines — characteristic of unresolved stellar populations — the spectrum of one object, NGC 1068, showed “both bright [emission] and absorption lines”, indicating the presence of both unresolved stellar populations and gaseous emission (Fath, 1909). Subsequent spectroscopic observations of the object by Vesto Slipher in 1913 and 1917 confirmed Fath’s results, and showed that the lines emitted by NGC 1068 were significantly broadened (Slipher 1917; see also Campbell & Moore 1918). Later, in 1926, Edwin Hubble noted that “the typical planetary spectrum, where Hβ is fainter than N_2[1] is found in the rare cases of apparently stellar nuclei of spirals; for instance, in NGC 1068, 4051, and 4151” (Hubble, 1926).

The first systematic investigation of spiral galaxies with such nuclei — of which only twelve were known at the time — was published two decades later by Carl Seyfert. In his seminal work (Seyfert, 1943)[2], Seyfert showed that the profiles of permitted (e.g. Hα, Hβ) and forbidden (e.g. [OIII], [NII], [OII]) emission lines differed between the nuclei of these galaxies: some (such as NGC 1068) showed narrow forbidden and permitted lines, while others (such as NGC 4151) showed narrow forbidden lines and broad permitted lines (Figure 1.1). Aside from suggesting that the broad line widths were due to velocity shifts within the objects, Seyfert did not propose an explanation for the observed line profiles, and this class of galaxy remained of minor interest to astronomers. Recognition of the importance of this work — and the status of AGN as a major focus of modern astrophysics — was instead the result of an entirely new field that burgeoned in the mid-20th century: radio astronomy.

---

[1] N_1 and N_2 were the symbols for *‘Nebulium’*, an element proposed to be responsible for various emission lines seen in nebulae before it was shown that they arose from the OIII, OII, and NII ions at relatively low densities (Bowen, 1927).

[2] Throughout much of the 20th Century, the term ‘Seyfert galaxy’ was used as a term for local active galaxies with high-excitation emission lines in their nuclei. Various definitions are used today; for the definition used in this thesis, see the Definitions section.

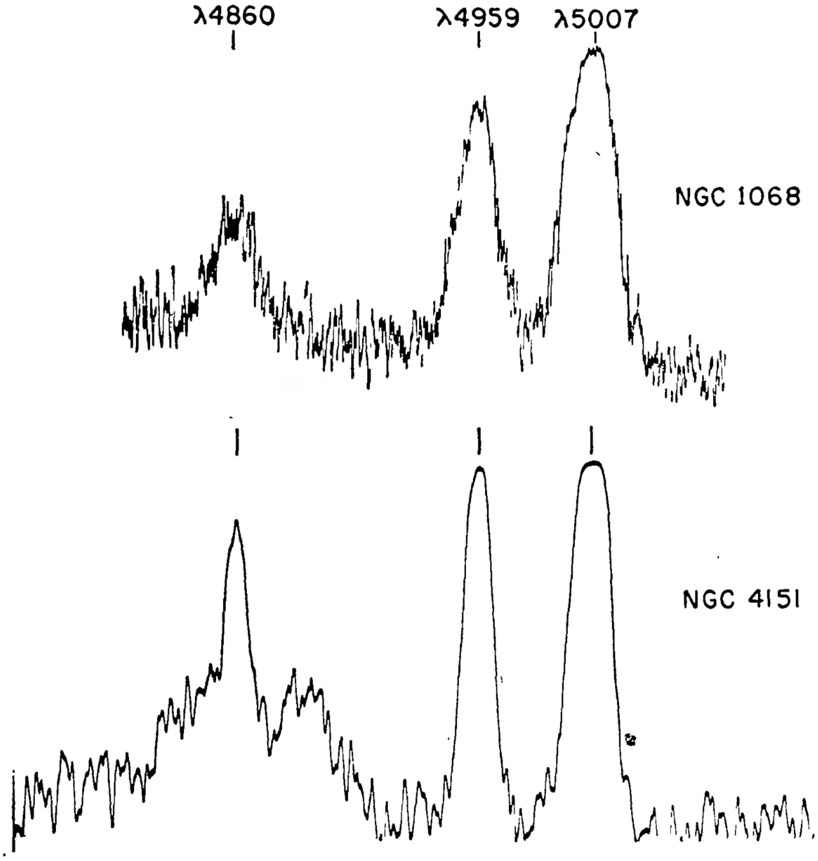


Figure 1.1: Hβ and [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959, 5007 emission line profiles for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, as presented by Seyfert (1943). A prominent broad component can be seen only in Hβ (a permitted line) in NGC 4151. *Image credit: Carl Seyfert (Seyfert 1943; edited by the present author).*

1.1.2 The advent of radio astronomy

While working as an engineer for Bell Telephone Laboratories in the early 1930s, Karl Jansky[3] investigated sources of noise affecting shortwave ($\lambda < 100$ m; $\nu > 3$ MHz), long-distance telephone communications. Starting in 1930, Jansky used a directional antenna that could rotate fully in azimuth, allowing him to determine the directions of different sources of noise. Working at a wavelength of 14.5 m (20.5 MHz), he detected transmissions from stations in South America and England, in addition to noise generated by both distant and local thunderstorms. Although the noise from the storms was dominant, Jansky was also able to detect another source that did not correspond to known weather events. The apparent direction of the peak of this noise changed with the time of day and year, and its source was unclear until Jansky consulted his friend Melvin Skellet, a PhD student in astronomy, who recognised that its position corresponded to the Galactic plane of the Milky Way.

Although Jansky had — for the first time in history — observed the night sky at a different wavelength to the optical, his results attracted little attention. A later press release led to wider recognition, after which he published papers on his so-called ‘star noise’ in *the Proceedings of the IRE* (Jansky, 1933a) and *Nature* (Jansky, 1933b). However, his responsibilities at Bell Laboratories took precedence, and he was unable to comprehensively investigate cosmic radio emission further.

While the astronomical community took effectively no notice of Jansky’s work, other radio engineers did. Perhaps most notable of these was Grote Reber, who built a steerable parabolic dish dedicated to studying cosmic radio emission and mapped the sky at various frequencies. Reber’s radio maps showed not only diffuse emission along the Galactic plane, but also several maxima (Reber, 1944), including one in the constellation Cygnus (the maximum in which would later be labelled Cygnus A).

Radio astronomy flourished after the conclusion of the Second World War as a result of an abundance of experienced radar technicians, radio experts, and former military equipment. Of particular interest to the early radio astronomy community was Cygnus A, which was identified as a discrete source during the war (Hey et al., 1946). Subsequent sea-cliff interferometric observations by J.G. Bolton & G.J. Stanley identified other discrete sources in addition to Cygnus A (see Kellerman & Bouton 2023, Chapter 3), and interest quickly grew in these ‘radio stars’. However, their natures were poorly understood, and the low astrometric precision of early radio observations made the identification of optical counterparts difficult.

Despite this, through the use of sea-cliff interferometry, Bolton et al. (1949) were able to achieve sufficiently precise radio-source positions to identify the optical counterparts of three of them: Taurus A was identified with the Crab Nebula (M1); Virgo A was identified with M87 (a large elliptical galaxy with an elongated structure[4]), and Centaurus A was identified with the elliptical galaxy NGC 5128. Further accurate radio-interferometric positions by Smith (1951) allowed Baade & Minkowski (1954) to identify the optical component of Cygnus A: a galaxy at a redshift of $z = 0.056$ presenting forbidden lines (such as [OIII], [OII], [NeV]) and Hα with relatively broad line widths ($\sim$400 km s^{-1}), similar to Seyfert nuclei. It thus became clear that many discrete radio sources were extragalactic, and the correspondingly large distances implied unprecedented luminosities. By the end of the 1950s, it was appreciated that 'radio galaxies' such as these should be detectable up to high redshifts — this provoked great interest among astronomers, since source number counts at the corresponding distances could discriminate between competing cosmological models.

---

[3] A detailed account of Jansky’s work and the history of radio astronomy, based on publications and private communications, is given by Kellerman & Bouton (2023), from which relevant details are given in this section.

Also at this time, spectroscopic follow-up observations of the radio source 3C 48 — a stellar-like object with faint nebulosity — revealed broad emission lines that did not correspond to any known atomic or ionic transition, and optical imaging showed excess ultraviolet (UV)-emission (see discussion in Shields 1999). Similar broad lines and UV-excesses were later associated with other radio sources, which were labelled Quasi-Stellar Sources (QSS) or Quasi-Stellar Objects (QSO); eventually, this terminology was shortened to 'quasars'[5]. The true nature of these objects was discovered when Maarten Schmidt performed optical follow-up observations of the radio source 3C 273, an accurate position and angular extent for which had been recently established by Hazard et al. (1963) during a lunar occultation. In optical imaging, 3C 273 appeared as a 13th-magnitude star, while the spectra revealed that the 'star' had broad lines at unfamiliar wavelengths, similar to those identified with 3C 48 previously. Noting a series of four emission lines of decreasing flux, Schmidt realised that the lines could be explained as the Balmer recombination series of hydrogen if they were redshifted by $z = 0.16$. This in turn allowed for the identification of the UV emission line Mg II λ2798 in both 3C 273 and 3C 48; the redshift of the latter was determined to be $z = 0.37$. These results were published in adjacent papers in the journal *Nature* (Hazard et al., 1963; Schmidt, 1963; Oke, 1963; Greenstein, 1963), and quasars were thus identified as active galaxies with spectra similar to those seen in Seyfert nuclei, albeit with higher luminosities.

However, it was not clear what the mechanism responsible for the extreme luminosities of quasars and Seyfert galaxies was, nor how it could be responsible for the observed spectra. An early attempt to understand this was made by Woltjer (1959) who, based on the observed fraction of spiral galaxies that have Seyfert-like nuclei, the fact that the nuclei are spatially-unresolved in imaging, and a virial argument involving observed line widths, estimated that the high luminosities of observed Seyfert nuclei were generated by a 10^{8-9} $M_\odot$ object in a compact volume (< 100 pc^{-3}). Five years later, Salpeter (1964) and Zel'Dovich (1964) proposed that this could be understood as accretion onto supermassive black holes (SMBHs), as a non-rotating SMBH could release $0.057c^2$ of energy per unit mass: sufficient to power the observed luminosities of quasars and Seyfert nuclei.

---

[4] The narrow, elongated structure in M87 was first identified at optical wavelengths by Curtis (1918), who noted "a curious straight ray" associated with the object, which is now recognised as an AGN jet. For the definition of AGN jets used in this thesis, see the Definitions section.

[5] The term 'quasar' was first used by Chiu (1964), however, it was first defined in scientific literature — along with the terms 'QSO' and 'QSS' — by Schmidt (1970), who defined them as being "objects of starlike appearance ... that exhibit redshifts much larger than those of ordinary stars". For the definition of the term 'Quasar' used throughout this thesis, see the Definitions section.

This argument was popularised by Lynden-Bell (1969), who postulated that 'dead quasars' (i.e. quiescent SMBHs) should be common in the nuclei of all galaxies, given the energy output of quasars seen at higher redshifts (corresponding to earlier cosmological times). Moreover, Lynden-Bell (1969) determined that the emission expected from accretion disks around active SMBHs could photoionise gas in galactic nuclei, leading to the spectra observed in quasars. Therefore, by the late 1960s, not only were the central AGN-engines of active galaxies (e.g. Seyferts and quasars) beginning to be understood, but it was appreciated that their unprecedented luminosities may impact their host galaxies, motivating studies in the following decades that sought to understand the nature of this impact.

1.1.3 Narrow-line studies of active galaxies

The connection between ionised gas and radio structures

An important characteristic of active galaxies, identified since the earliest spectroscopic observations (e.g. Slipher 1917; Campbell & Moore 1918; Seyfert 1943; Figure 1.1), is the presence of narrow (full width at half maximum (FWHM) < 1000 km s^{-1}) and broad (FWHM > 1000 km s^{-1}) emission-line profiles. Due to their associated velocities being a significant fraction of the speed of light, the broad lines received much attention in studies of active galaxies, while the narrow lines were of less interest (see discussion in Krolik & Vrtilek 1984).

While Seyfert (1943) recognised that narrow line broadening ($100 <$ FWHM < 1000 km s^{-1}) was due to the Doppler shifting of lines within the objects, the physical implication of this was first considered by Burbidge (1958), who noted that the line widths corresponded to velocities that were much higher than the galactic escape velocities and therefore "the interstellar gas in the nuclear regions must be constantly escaping from the galaxy as a whole". This was subsequently supported by a study of the inner regions ($r < 2$ kpc) of the archetypal Seyfert galaxy NGC 1068, which showed that the observed line widths implied velocities that are more than three times that of the escape velocity on these scales (Burbidge et al., 1959).

Higher-spatial-resolution optical spectroscopy at different spatial positions and position angles (PAs) allowed for the identification of discrete clouds responsible for the observed line broadening in active galaxies (particularly NGC 1068 and NGC 4151: e.g. Walker 1968a; Anderson 1970; Glaspey et al. 1976). These clouds were found to have velocity shifts in the range $100 < v < 1000\,\mathrm{km\,s^{-1}}$: higher than the escape velocity at their radii ($r < 500$ pc). This supported the idea of an 'expansion' of gas away from the nuclei, an interpretation that was refined by Heckman et al. (1981), who argued that observed asymmetries in the narrow-line profiles in a sample of 36 active galaxies were due to AGN-driven radial outflows of gas (see also Grandi 1977 and Heckman & Balick 1983).

Simultaneously, studies throughout the 1970s began to investigate the physical conditions (including temperatures, densities, reddenings, and compositions) of the narrow-line-emitting gas, with a particular focus on determining how it is ionised. The prevailing candidate ionisation mechanisms were photoionisation via radiation emitted by AGN accretion disks (e.g. MacAlpine 1972; Baldwin 1975; Shields & Oke 1975; Osterbrock & Koski 1976; Ferland et al. 1979) and astrophysical shock-waves propagating through the interstellar mediums (ISMs) of the host galaxies (e.g. Cox 1972; Koski & Osterbrock 1976; Fosbury et al. 1978; Penston & Fosbury 1978). Combined with the presence of outflowing gas, this indicated that AGN were having a significant impact on the central regions of galaxies.

Also in this time period, new radio observatories (such as the Westerbork Synthesis Telescope, the National Radio Astronomy Observatory 300-foot radio telescope, and the Mullard Radio Astronomy Observatory) were used to perform both large surveys of the local AGN population and detailed studies of individual objects. The radio surveys performed with these facilities found that galaxies with Seyfert nuclei had radio luminosities that were higher than those of normal (quiescent) spiral galaxies, but less than those of the 'radio galaxies' discovered in the decades prior (van der Kruit, 1973; Sramek & Tovmassian, 1975). The advent of higher-spatial-resolution radio observations in the 1980s, permitted by new facilities such as the Very Large Array (VLA) and Multi-Element Radio Linked Interferometer Network (MERLIN), revealed that the radio morphologies of Seyfert galaxies often consisted of two or more components, connected by fainter emission on arcsecond (kiloparsec) scales (e.g. Wilson & Willis 1980; Wilson & Ulvestad 1982; Pedlar et al. 1983, 1984; Ulvestad & Wilson 1984; Figure 1.2) — similar to what had previously been identified on much larger scales in powerful radio galaxies such as Cygnus A (Jennison & Latham, 1959). These double and triple radio structures were interpreted as synchrotron emission produced by AGN jets (Wilson & Willis, 1980): fast (up to tenths of the speed of light), collimated streams of plasma that are launched from AGN accretion disks along the spin axis of the central SMBH (see Rees 1984 for a contemporary review). In this scenario for Seyfert galaxies, the radio emission observed at the position of the optical nucleus (the core) originates from the central AGN engine, while the extended radio component(s) (the lobes) represent the termination point of the jet and/or prominent

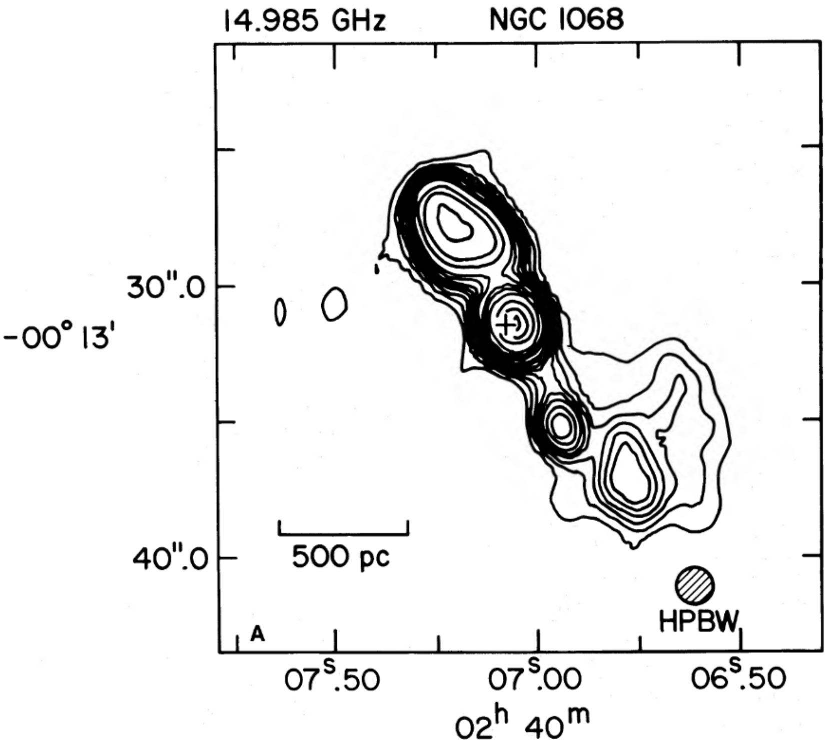


Figure 1.2: 14.985 GHz map of the inner kiloparsecs of the Seyfert galaxy NGC 1068, showing a linear, triple radio structure consisting of a core (coincident with the optical nucleus, marked by the cross) and two radio lobes. The contours are 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 15, 20, 30, 50, 70 and 90 per cent of 192.5 mJy beam^{-1}. *Image credit: Wilson & Ulvestad (1982).*

interactions of the jet with the ISM of the host galaxy (Wilson & Willis, 1980; Sanders, 1984).

Concurrently, multi-wavelength studies utilising both optical and radio observations discovered empirical correlations between the radio and narrow-line properties of Seyfert galaxies, notably between 1.4 GHz (21 cm) and [OIII] luminosity (de Bruyn & Wilson, 1978), and 1.4 GHz luminosity and [OIII] line width (Wilson & Willis, 1980). Furthermore, high-spatial-resolution observations revealed that in many cases, the major axes of linear radio structures and optical narrow-line emission were aligned (Ulvestad et al. 1981; see Table 2 in Wilson & Heckman 1985). This implied a physical relationship between the radio- and narrow-line-emitting material; although the nature of this connection was not clear, suggestions were made that plasma jets were interacting with the ISMs of host galaxies, ionising the gas and accelerating outflows (see Section 3 of Wilson & Heckman 1985).

The relationship between narrow-line-emitting gas and radio structures was first directly investigated by Whittle et al. (1988), who used spatially-resolved spectroscopic observations of 10 Seyfert galaxies that presented double or triple linear radio structures. It was found that, not only was the [OIII] and Hβ line emission strongly spatially associated with the radio structures, but their line profiles were particularly complex at the locations of bright radio emission. The derived narrow-line velocities were high ($150 < v < 1000$ km s^{-1}), with the highest velocities found at the position of the enhanced radio emission. This indicated that the gas was more kinematically disturbed at these locations, and thus that prominent AGN-driven outflows are associated with radio structures on kiloparsec-scales.

The unified scheme of AGN and ionisation cones

As seen in the spectra presented by Seyfert (1943) (Figure 1.1), there exists a dichotomy in AGN regarding the widths of permitted and narrow lines. Some objects, termed Seyfert 1s (Sey 1, later generalised to Type 1 AGN) present narrow forbidden lines and broad permitted lines, while others (Seyfert 2, or Sey 2; generalised to Type 2 AGN) show narrow forbidden and permitted lines (see Khachikian & Weedman 1971). The underlying mechanism responsible for this was confirmed by Antonucci & Miller (1985), who used spectropolarimetric measurements of the Sey 2 galaxy NGC 1068 to demonstrate the presence of polarised broad permitted lines. This indicated that the source of the broad permitted lines — known as the broad line region (BLR) — also existed in Type 2 AGN, but was obscured by a torus-like structure (which may be clumpy: Nenkova et al. 2002, 2008; see Section 2.3 of Netzer 2015), and confirmed that Type 1 and Type 2 AGN were intrinsically the same phenomenon, only viewed at different angles with respect to the observer (Figure 1.3).

Optical observations of the narrow line regions (NLRs; kiloparsec-scale regions of narrow-line emission) of Seyfert galaxies in the late 1980s and early 1990s revealed interesting morphologies: the narrow-line-emitting gas appeared to be distributed in conical shapes, the apexes of which corresponded to the position of active nuclei (Pogge 1988, 1989; Miller & Goodrich 1990a; Tadhunter et al. 1989; Cecil et al. 1990; Miller & Goodrich 1990b; Evans et al. 1991). In many cases, there was evidence of two cones lying in opposite directions along the same axis — known as a bicone — and in almost all cases the (bi)cones were aligned with the radio axes of the objects.

The launch of the Hubble Space Telescope (HST) in 1990[6] allowed optical studies of unprecedented spatial resolution, which showed that the NLR quiescent and outflowing gas structures were much more complex than indicated by earlier observations. While many authors argued, based on spatially-resolved gas kinematics and conditions, that outflows in Seyfert galaxies are driven via shocks induced in the ISM by radio jets (e.g. Taylor et al. 1992; Bower et al. 1995; Capetti et al. 1995a,b; Axon et al. 1998), others argued that radiation pressure from accretion disks also contributed to outflow acceleration (and

---

[6] A grounding error in the HST's primary mirror produced significant spherical aberration in observations until it was fixed during a service mission in 1993. Despite this, the telescope was still scientifically useful for studies of nearby AGN during this period.

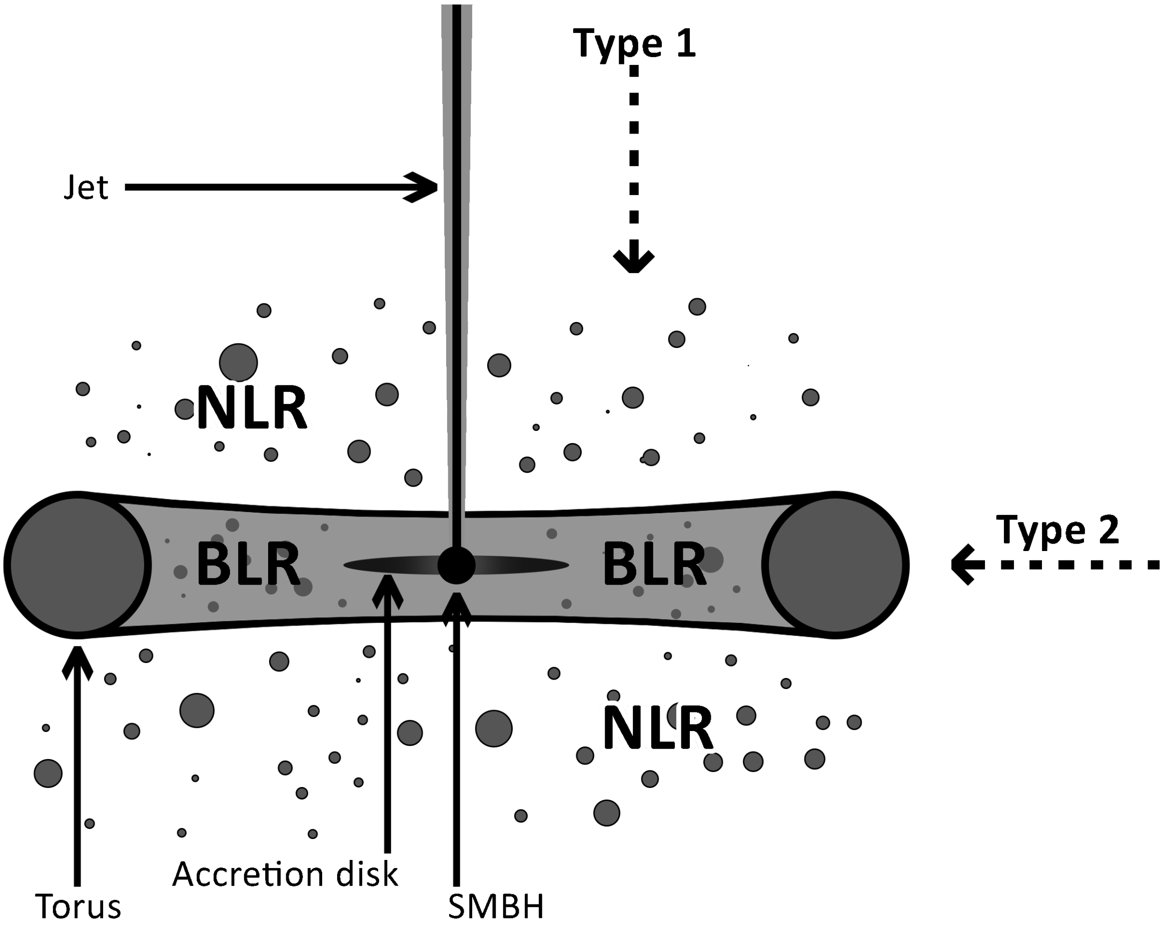


Figure 1.3: Schematic of the unified scheme of AGN. The central supermassive black hole (SMBH; $r \sim 10$–100 AU), accretion disk ($r \sim 1000$–$10{,}000$ AU), jet, and obscuring torus ($r \sim 0.1$–10 pc) are labelled with solid black arrows; the locations of the broad line region (BLR; $r \sim 100$–1000 AU) and narrow line region (NLR; $r \sim 0.1$–10 kpc) are also labelled. The dashed arrows show the lines of sight that result in an AGN being observed as Type 1 or Type 2. Not to scale.

is perhaps the dominant driving mechanism). In the latter scenario, this driving is done either by fast ($\sim$0.1 c) winds launched close to the nucleus (called nuclear winds) that shock the cold ISM on larger scales and accelerate outflows (e.g. Cecil et al. 1990), or by direct radiation pressure acting on the NLR gas (e.g. Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b; Crenshaw et al. 2000; Kaiser et al. 2000).

1.1.4 AGN-driven outflows and galaxy evolution

Early studies which interpreted complex narrow-line profiles in Seyfert galaxies as being due to 'expansion' (e.g. Walker 1968b; Anderson 1970; Glaspey et al. 1976), and later outflows of gas (e.g. Grandi 1977; Heckman et al. 1981), indicated that AGN were having an impact on the central kiloparsecs of galaxies. However, the first recognition that AGN-driven outflows may play an important role in how galaxies evolve was by Sanders et al.

(1988). Noting that ultra luminous infrared galaxies (ULIRGs; $L_{\rm IR} > 10^{12}$ $L_{\odot}$: Sanders et al. 1988; Sanders & Mirabel 1996) present merger-like morphologies and host bright nuclei, Sanders et al. (1988) proposed that these objects contained obscured quasar-like nuclei which drive high-mass gas outflows that remove or destroy the obscuring dust. In this scenario, ULIRGs transition into quasars, forming an evolutionary sequence.

However, the main impetus for studying AGN-driven outflows came in the mid-1990s, when empirical scaling relations between SMBH masses and host-galaxy bulge properties (luminosity, velocity dispersion, and stellar mass; Figure 1.4) were discovered (Kormendy & Richstone, 1995; Magorrian et al., 1998; Gebhardt et al., 2000; Ferrarese & Merritt, 2000). The form of these correlations could be readily explained by SMBHs and galactic bulges accreting the same material (i.e. gas inflows to the centres of galaxies), however, this could not explain their tightness — an additional mechanism was thought to be required. Outflows driven by AGN were first invoked to be this additional mechanism by Silk & Rees (1998), who created an analytic model that required a small fraction of AGN luminosity to couple to the ISMs of host galaxies, driving galaxy-wide outflows which set the tightness of the observed scaling relations. AGN-driven outflows subsequently became the basis of further analytic models that could explain the empirical SMBH-bulge scaling relations (e.g. Fabian 1999; King 2003).

In addition, AGN also began to be invoked to explain several other observed features of galaxies and their environments (see Cattaneo et al. 2009 for a contemporary review), such as AGN jets heating and preventing the cooling of highly-ionised, hot X-ray-emitting gas that is observed in and around galaxy clusters (McNamara & Nulsen, 2007; Gaspari et al., 2013) and the luminosity function of the local galaxy population (Benson et al., 2003). The collective impact that AGN are thought to have on their host galaxies is referred to as AGN feedback, which is now a crucial component of models of galaxy evolution (including detailed hydrodynamical simulations: e.g. Di Matteo et al. 2005; Springel et al. 2005; Hopkins & Elvis 2010; and cosmological simulations: e.g. Schaye et al. 2015; Davé et al. 2019; Zinger et al. 2020). While AGN-driven outflows are thought to be required to explain SMBH-bulge scaling relations, they are also now commonly considered to be an important aspect of AGN feedback in general, and therefore have become the focus of an increasing number of studies over the past thirty years (Figure 1.5).

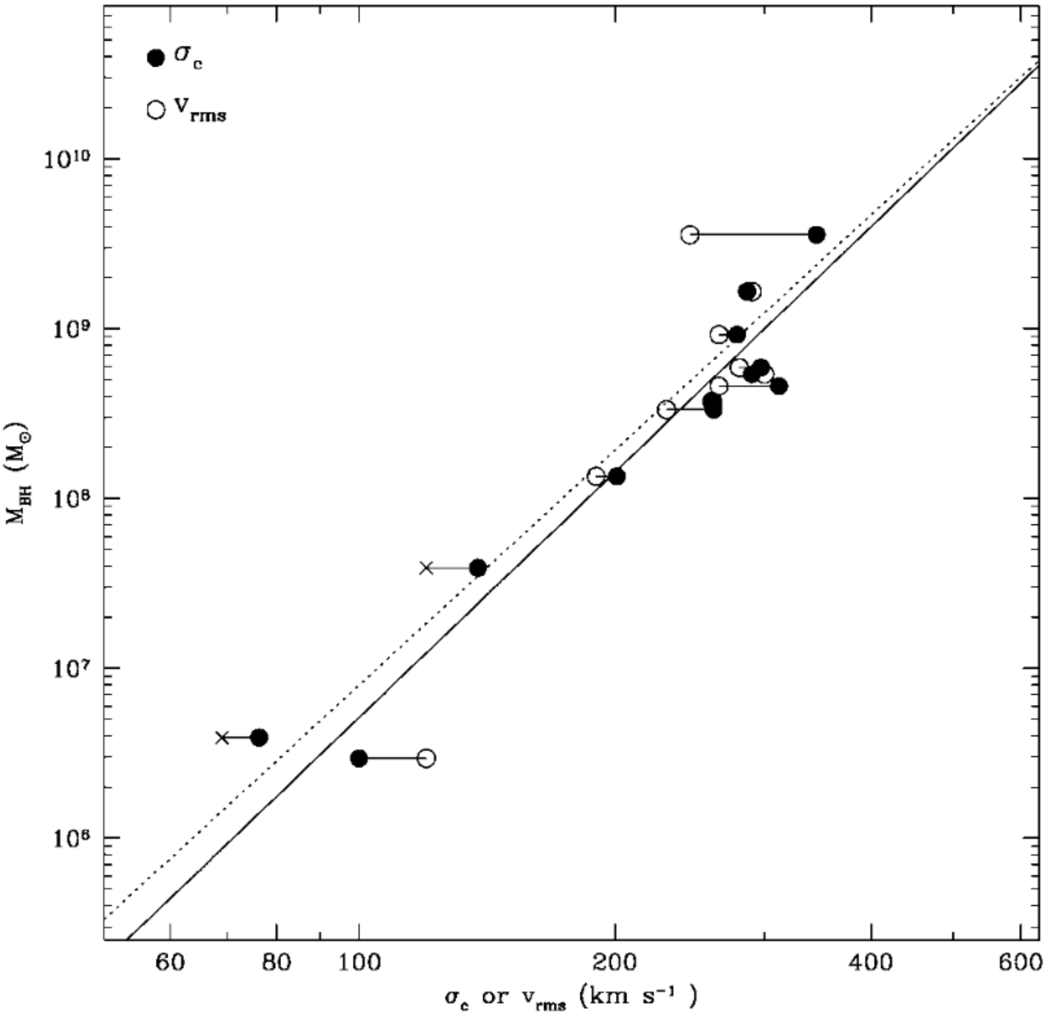


Figure 1.4: Empirical scaling relation between supermassive black hole mass and stellar velocity dispersion (σ_c: filled circles) or root-mean-square (rms) velocity (v_{rms}: hollow circles; crosses represent lower limits) as presented by Ferrarese & Merritt (2000). The dashed and solid lines represent the best linear fits. *Image credit: Ferrarese & Merritt (2000).*

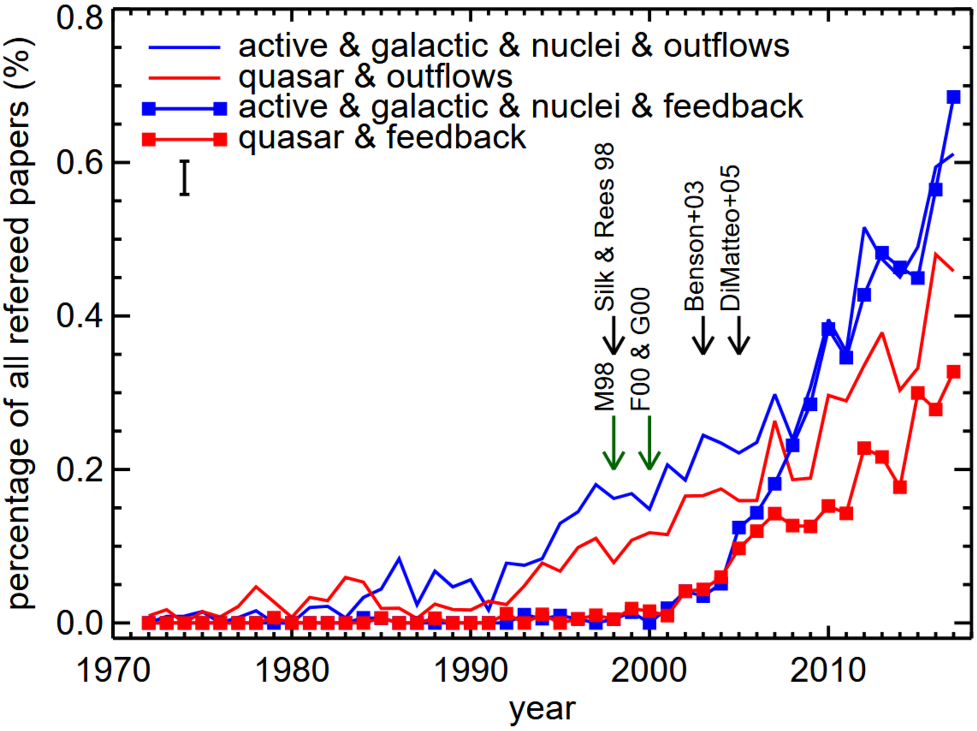


Figure 1.5: Percentage of peer-reviewed publications from 1970 to 2018 that contain the keywords given in the legend (top left) in their abstracts. The publication dates of key studies (M98: Magorrian et al. 1998; F00: Ferrarese & Merritt 2000; G00: Gebhardt et al. 2000; Benson et al. 2003; Di Matteo et al. 2005) which produced a significant increase in interest of AGN-driven outflows are marked with vertical arrows. *Image credit: Harrison et al. 2018.*

1.2 AGN-driven outflows

The first hydrodynamical simulation of the impact of AGN-driven outflows on galaxy evolution was performed by Di Matteo et al. (2005), who modelled a major galaxy merger with SMBHs as sink particles. These SMBHs injected thermal energy ($E_{\rm feed}$) into the ISM of the merger as

$$E_{\rm feed} = \epsilon_{\rm f} \eta_{\rm r} \dot{M}_{\rm BH} c^2 \tag{1.1}$$

where $\eta_{\rm r}$ is the radiative efficiency of the SMBH accretion disk, $\dot{M}_{\rm BH}$ is the accretion rate onto the SMBH, and c is the speed of light. Here, $\epsilon_{\rm f}$ is a free parameter known as the coupling efficiency (or coupling factor): the fraction of radiation coupled to the ISM of the host galaxy. In this model, the coupling of radiation to the ISM launches galaxy-wide ($r > 5$ kpc) outflows, heating and expelling gas needed to form stars, hence suppressing star formation.

The coupling efficiency in the Di Matteo et al. (2005) simulation was set to the value required ($\epsilon_{\rm f} = 0.05 = 5$ per cent) to reproduce the normalisation of the observed relation between SMBH mass and bulge stellar velocity dispersion (known as the M-σ relation; Figure 1.4). Subsequent theoretical work also invoked galaxy-wide, AGN-driven outflows, with each setting a different value of this free parameter to reproduce the normalisation of empirical relations (typically $0.5 < \epsilon_{\rm f} < 10$ per cent: Springel et al. 2005; Hopkins & Elvis 2010). In the 2010s, large-scale cosmological simulations incorporated a similar approach to their AGN-feedback prescriptions, requiring a fraction of energy produced by accreting SMBHs in galactic centres to be coupled to host galaxies (e.g. $\epsilon_{\rm f} = 0.15 = 15$ per cent for EAGLE and Horizon-AGN: Schaye et al. 2015; Dubois et al. 2016), restricting star formation and therefore reproducing the observed properties of the local galaxy population.

Motivated by these theoretical models, observational studies of AGN-driven outflows often interpret the coupling efficiency as being the ratio between outflow kinetic power ($\dot{E}_{\rm kin}$: kinetic energy per unit time) and AGN bolometric luminosity ($L_{\rm bol}$):

$$\epsilon_{\rm f} = \frac{\dot{E}_{\rm kin}}{L_{\rm bol}}. \tag{1.2}$$

Therefore, in attempts to verify the models — and hence the role of AGN-driven outflows in galaxy evolution — a large number of studies in the past twenty-five years have focused on measuring coupling efficiencies in this way and comparing them to the free parameter set by models. Many observational studies have derived coupling efficiencies that fall in the range required by theoretical work ($0.5 < \epsilon_{\rm f} < 10$ per cent: e.g. Liu et al. 2013; Harrison et al. 2014; Cicone et al. 2014; Fiore et al. 2017), however, there are several major sources of uncertainty associated with this approach which render its validity unclear.

Principally, observationally-derived outflow kinetic powers are not well constrained: due to many factors, commonly-determined values may be incorrect by several orders of magnitude. Furthermore, the validity of direct comparisons to theoretical models using coupling efficiencies is unclear, as is the robustness of interpretations that are made from such comparisons regarding the impacts of AGN-driven outflows on host galaxies (see discussion in Harrison et al. 2018); largely, this is because it is unclear exactly *how* AGN accelerate outflows. In the following sections, I review and explain these uncertainties.

1.2.1 Uncertainties regarding outflow energetics

The multi-phase nature of outflows

The ISM is observed in a range of gas phases: regimes of different temperatures and conditions, ranging from hot and highly-ionised to cold and molecular. Similarly, AGN-driven outflows have been observed in multiple phases, corresponding to distinct temperatures and compositions of the emitting gas (see Cicone et al. 2018 for a review). Different phases are observed with tracers at different wavelengths — Table 1.1 presents the phases considered in this thesis, and examples of their observational tracers.

Since the majority of studies use observations of only one phase (commonly the warm-ionised gas, due to it producing prominent optical emission lines), it is not clear which outflow phase is dominant in terms of mass and kinetic power. In a relatively small number of active galaxies, the properties of outflows in multiple phases have been quantified (e.g. Morganti et al. 2005; Holt et al. 2011; Tadhunter et al. 2014; Riffel et al. 2015; Feruglio et al. 2015; Morganti et al. 2016; Finlez et al. 2018; Fluetsch et al. 2019); in some objects, these phases have been seen to be co-spatial and co-kinematic, indicating that they form part of the same outflow (Figure 1.6: Tadhunter et al. 2014; Morganti et al. 2015).

While some studies present evidence that the cold molecular phase is dominant in terms of mass and kinetic power (i.e. Morganti et al. 2005; Cicone et al. 2014; García-Burillo et al. 2014), this has only been determined for a small number of galaxies. Therefore, since the majority of studies only focus on a single phase, it is imperative that the relative masses and powers of multiple phases are comprehensively determined to ensure that *total* outflow kinetic powers are not significantly underestimated.

Moreover, the physical relation between different outflow phases is not understood, nor is it clear how molecular gas can be accelerated to observed outflow velocities ($v > 500$ km s^{-1}) without being dissociated. Understanding this is crucial, as it is required to make quantitative predictions regarding multi-phase outflows. One suggestion is that the various phases in a given gas cloud are accelerated together directly by radiation pressure or cosmic rays (Booth et al., 2013; Costa et al., 2018; Hopkins et al., 2020), however, in this scenario, it is not clear why the molecules are not photo-disassociated. Other studies propose a solution to this by arguing that the colder, molecular phases

Phase	Temperature range	Observational tracers
Highly ionised	$> 10^6$ K	Hard X-ray ($E_\gamma > 6$ keV) absorption lines (e.g. Fe XXV, Fe XXVI); X-ray continuum
Warm ionised	10,000–30,000 K	UV, optical, near-infrared, and mid-infrared emission lines (e.g. [OIII]$\lambda\lambda 4959, 5007$, H$\beta$, Pa$\beta$, [SII]$\lambda\lambda 6717, 6731$, HeI, [O IV] 25.9 μm)
Warm molecular	~ 2000 K	Near-infrared roto-vibrational emission lines of H_2 (e.g. H_2(1–0)S(1) 2.212 μm, H_2(2–1)S(1) 2.247 μm)
Neutral atomic	100–2000 K	Radio emission lines (e.g. HI 21 cm line), optical NaID absorption lines (NaID$\lambda\lambda$5890,5896)
Cold molecular	10–300 K	Radio/sub-mm emission & absorption lines (e.g. CO(1–0), CO(2–1), HCN, OH)

Table 1.1: The gas phases of AGN-driven outflows that are considered in this thesis, their approximate temperatures, and examples of their observational tracers (wavelength regime and example spectral features).

are entrained in warmer gas, preventing molecule dissociation (Scannapieco & Brüggen, 2015; Gaspari & Skadowski, 2017; Gronke & Oh, 2020).

An alternative is that the outflow acceleration mechanism heats the gas to the hot ionised phase ($T > 10^6$ K), destroying the molecules in the process; as the gas cools post-acceleration, it forms the cooler phases *in-situ*, including the formation of molecules (Wang, 1995; Silich et al., 2003; Tadhunter et al., 2014; Zubovas & King, 2014; Costa et al., 2015; Thompson et al., 2016; Richings et al., 2021). A major problem with understanding this scenario is the complexity (and associated difficulty) of modelling molecule formation in the ISM: it is not clear if molecules can form in outflowing-gas conditions on the (highly uncertain) timescales required. In this context, it is interesting to note that recent modelling supports molecule formation and cooling being a sufficiently fast process in outflowing gas (Richings et al., 2021).

Overall, the mass and energy contributions of (and the physical relation between) different outflow phases are not clear — in order to elucidate this situation, detailed, multi-wavelength observations of multi-phase outflows and their acceleration mechanisms are required.

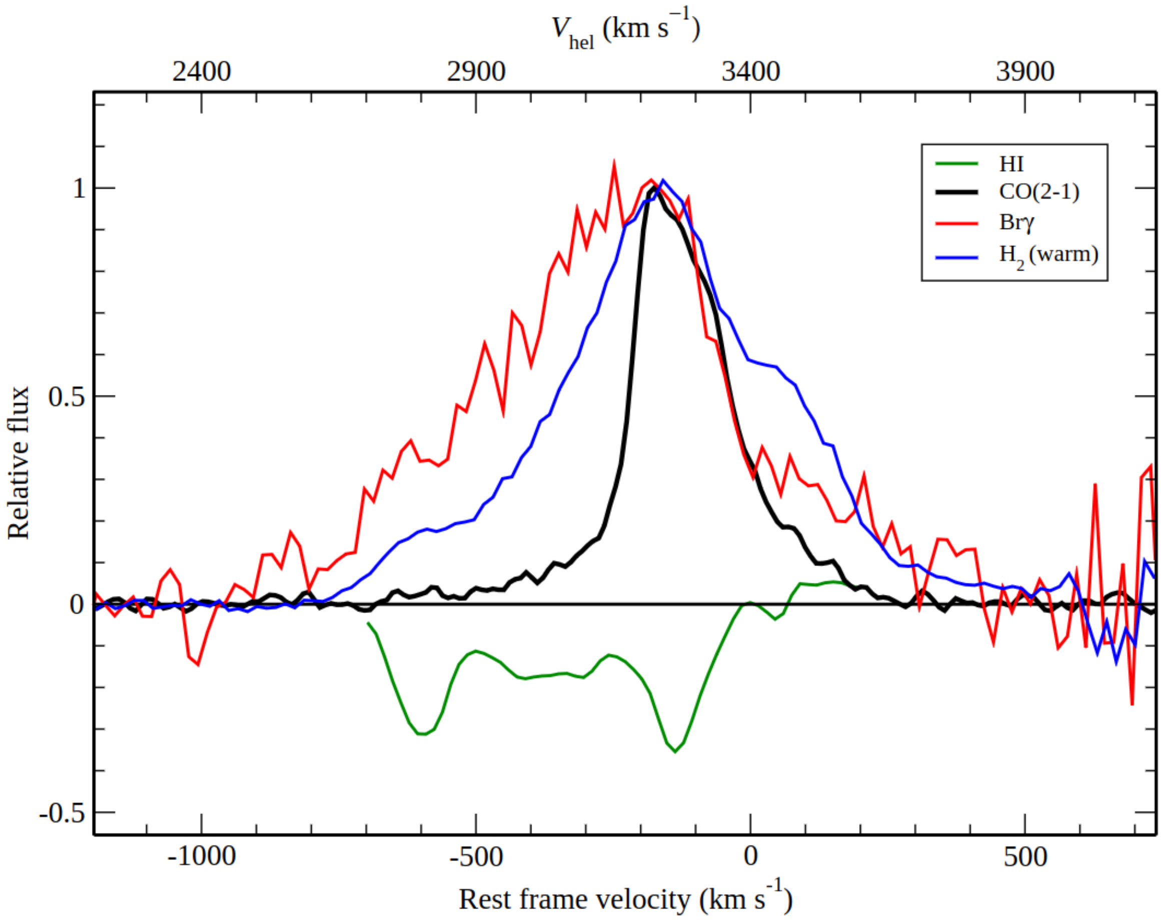


Figure 1.6: Line velocity profiles tracing different phases of outflowing gas at the same location in the active galaxy IC 5063. The red line shows the Brγ emission-line profile (warm ionised; Tadhunter et al. 2014), the blue line shows the H_2(1–0)S(1) 2.212 μm emission-line profile (warm molecular; Tadhunter et al. 2014), the green line shows the HI 21 cm absorption-line profile (neutral atomic; Morganti et al. 1998), and the black line shows the CO(2-1) emission-line profile (cold molecular; Morganti et al. 2015). Each phase presents outflowing (yet distinct) kinematics, potentially indicating that they are part of the same outflow. *Image credit: Morganti et al. 2015*.

Electron densities of warm-ionised outflows

The most commonly observed outflow phase is warm ionised gas, as many emission lines arising from this phase are present in optical spectra of AGN (Table 1.1). Therefore, many studies that compare outflow kinetic powers to those required by models of galaxy evolution only consider warm-ionised outflow energetics (masses, mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies: e.g. Liu et al. 2013; Rose et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2019). Typically, this is done by first calculating the warm-ionised outflow mass using the measured luminosity of a recombination line of hydrogen ($L(H)$) with

$$M_{\rm out,ion} = \frac{L(H) m_{\rm p}}{\alpha_{\rm H}^{\rm eff} h v_{\rm H} n_e}, \tag{1.3}$$

where $M_{\rm out,ion}$ is the mass of the outflowing warm-ionised gas, $m_{\rm p}$ is the proton mass, α_H^{eff} is the Case B recombination coefficient for the chosen recombination line of hydrogen, $v_{\rm H}$ is the frequency of the recombination line, and n_e is the electron density of the emitting gas. This is then used to calculate the mass passing through a given surface area per unit time, known as the mass outflow rate:

$$\dot{M}_{\rm out,ion} = A \cdot \frac{M_{\rm out,ion}\, v_{\rm out}}{R}, \tag{1.4}$$

where $v_{\rm out}$ is the outflow velocity, R is the outflow radius, and A is a constant that accounts for assumptions regarding outflow geometry and radial density profiles (see Section 2 of Veilleux et al. 2020). Finally, the outflow kinetic power is calculated using

$$\dot{E}_{\rm kin,ion} = \frac{1}{2}\dot{M}_{\rm out,ion}(v_{\rm out}^2 + 3\sigma^2), \tag{1.5}$$

where σ is the velocity dispersion ($\sigma \sim$ FWHM/2.355), which may be interpreted as the range of velocities present *within* a spatially-unresolved region of outflowing gas; a multiplicative factor of three is commonly used with this term to account for the velocity dispersion in three dimensions (see Rupke et al. 2005a). Typically, the coupling efficiency (taken to be the ratio of outflow kinetic power to the host AGN bolometric luminosity: Equation 1.2) is then determined and compared to the requirements of theoretical models — if the observed value is consistent with (or above) these requirements, then the interpretation is often that the outflows have a significant impact on the evolution of the host galaxy.

The largest source of uncertainty when calculating outflow energetics in this way is the electron density of the outflowing gas. Traditionally, the flux ratio of emission lines in a doublet arising from either the SII or OII ion is used (namely [SII](6717/6731) and [OII](3726/3729)): the lines involved in these ratios have similar (but different) critical densities[7], and so the ratios have a strong dependence on electron density (Figure 1.7)[8].

However, these traditional, commonly-used ratios are only sensitive up to electron densities of $n_e \sim 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3} — above this limit, both of the lines involved are collisionally suppressed, and the values of the ratios saturate. If, in reality, outflow densities are greater than $n_e \sim 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3}, then this technique will underestimate true values. Crucially, since outflow masses (Equation 1.3), mass outflow rates (Equation 1.4), kinetic powers (Equation 1.5), and coupling efficiencies (Equation 1.2) depend inversely on the

---

[7] The critical density of a transition is defined as the density at which the rate of collisional de-excitation from the upper energy level becomes approximately equal to the collisional excitation rate of electrons to the upper energy level (see Chapter 5 of Osterbrock & Ferland 2006).

[8] The [SII](6717/6731) and [OII](3726/3729) flux ratios also have a dependence on electron temperature. Therefore, when calculating electron densities with these ratios, electron temperatures are either measured using other line ratios (e.g. [OIII](5007+4959)/4363) or assumed to be those typical of the warm ionised phase (∼10,000 K); see Chapter 5 of Osterbrock & Ferland (2006).

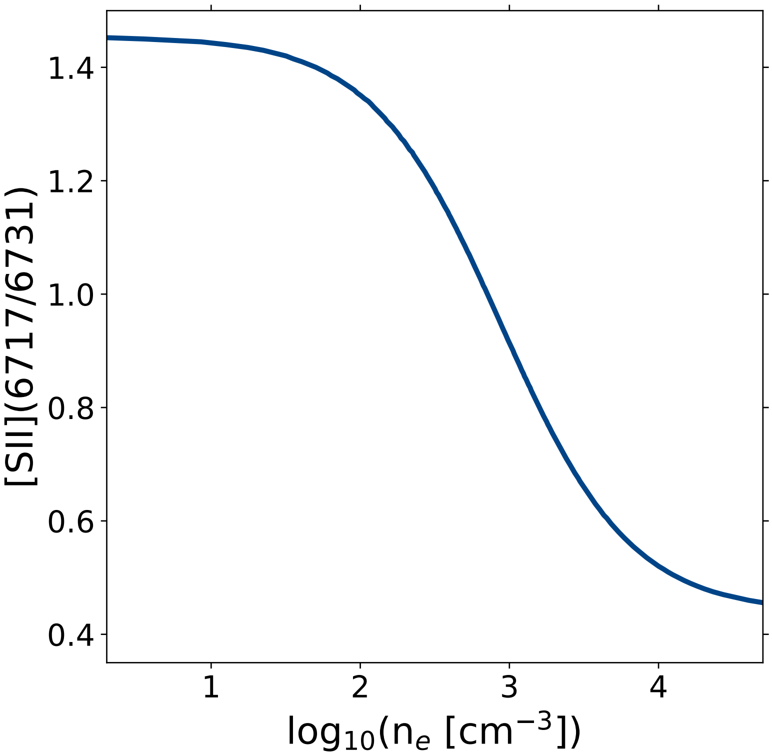


Figure 1.7: Variation of the traditional [SII](6717/6731) emission-line flux ratio with electron density, modelled with the PyNeb Python module (Luridiana et al., 2015) for an ionised gas of temperature $T_e = 10,000$ K. This commonly-used density diagnostic is only sensitive to densities in the range $2.0 < \log_{10}(n_e[\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 3.5$: above and below these limits, the curve becomes increasingly asymptotic, and the values derived from this technique saturate.

electron density, this means that these derived properties would be overestimated. Therefore, it is notable that many studies which determine high outflow kinetic powers (i.e. $\epsilon_{\mathrm{f}} > 0.5$ per cent) also estimate or assume low electron densities ($n_e < 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3}: e.g. Kraemer & Crenshaw 2000a; Nesvadba et al. 2006; Harrison et al. 2014; Fiore et al. 2017). Furthermore, the separation between the lines in the [SII] and [OII] doublets is small, and in the case of outflow kinematics — in which line widths are typically intermediate-to-high (FWHM > 500 km s^{-1}) — the lines are often blended. This introduces significant degeneracy in measuring the flux ratios, therefore preventing precise electron density determinations.

In the past decade, novel techniques of electron-density estimation have been developed which are sensitive to a wider range of values than the traditional [SII] and [OII] ratios. For example, Baron & Netzer (2019b) present a technique which uses the dimensionless ionisation parameter

$$U = \frac{Q}{4\pi r^2 c n_e}, \tag{1.6}$$

where Q is the number of ionising photons emitted by the AGN per second, and r is the radial distance of the gas outflow from the AGN. In this method, the ionisation parameter is determined using emission-line ratios, Q is derived from the bolometric luminosity of the AGN, and the outflow radial distance is determined from modelling the mid-infrared (MIR) spectral energy distribution (SED) of the AGN (see Baron & Netzer 2019a). Therefore, Equation 1.6 can be used to estimate the electron density, which Baron & Netzer (2019b) find to be in the range $3.0 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 6.2$ for a sample of 234 Type 2 AGN — several orders of magnitude above the upper density limit of the traditional [SII] and [OII] ratios. Similarly, complex, multi-ionisation-component (i.e. multiple values of U) photoionisation modelling that utilises the measured fluxes of many emission lines has produced a wide range of electron densities when applied to outflows in nearby active galaxies ($2.0 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 7.0$: Collins et al. 2009; Crenshaw et al. 2015; Revalski et al. 2021; see also Revalski et al. 2022).

Of particular note is a technique pioneered by Holt et al. (2011) using the [SII](4068 + 4076)/(6717 + 6731) and [OII](3726 + 3729)/(7319 + 7331) ratios, which involve the *total* fluxes of the traditional [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 and [OII]$\lambda\lambda$3726,3729 doublets in addition to the higher-critical-density transauroral (Boyce et al., 1933) [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4068,4076 and [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319,7331 doublets. By comparing the measured values of these ratios to predictions of photoionisation modelling, electron densities and reddenings can be derived simultaneously. Importantly, this technique is sensitive to a wider range of electron densities ($2.0 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 5.5$) than the traditional [SII](6717/6731) and [OII](3726/3729) ratios, but requires less-detailed observations (and is less computationally expensive) than the ionisation-parameter-based method presented by Baron & Netzer (2019b) and complex photoionisation modelling (Collins et al., 2009; Crenshaw et al., 2015; Revalski et al., 2021). Moreover, unlike the traditional [SII] and [OII] ratios, the transauroral-line method uses the *total* fluxes of emission-line doublets instead of the fluxes of individual lines *within* the doublets, obviating issues arising from degeneracy due to broad line widths.

In the past 13 years, the transauroral ratios have been used to measure gas densities in the range $3.0 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 5.5$ in active galaxies of different types (Holt et al., 2011; Rose et al., 2018; Santoro et al., 2018; Spence et al., 2018; Ramos Almeida et al., 2019; Santoro et al., 2020; Davies et al., 2020; Speranza et al., 2022). These densities are up to two orders of magnitude higher than could be measured with the traditional ratios, and, correspondingly, modest outflow kinetic powers and coupling efficiencies have been derived ($\epsilon_\mathrm{f} < 0.5$ per cent). However, these studies have used spatially-unresolved observations, often with a single aperture covering the outflow region. Consequently, it has been argued that the transauroral lines are emitted by different clouds than those that emit other key diagnostic lines such as [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 and Hβ, and therefore that the derived densities are not representative of the outflowing gas (Sun et al. 2017; but see discussions in Rose et al. 2018 and Spence et al. 2018). Since the outflow masses and kinetic powers resulting from transauroral-line-derived densities are much below those typically found for the warm ionised phase (and are potentially far below the values required by models of galaxy evolution), this situation needs to be investigated in detail to conclusively determine if the transauroral lines are valid tracers of outflowing gas.

A low-surface-brightness, high-mass, warm ionised outflow component

The techniques and studies described above for the warm ionised phase trace relatively dense ($n_e > 3.0$ cm^{-3}) gas in the central regions ($r < 2$ kpc) of active galaxies. While these studies find modest outflow masses and kinetic powers, it is possible that there also exists a tenuous ($n_e < 3.0$ cm^{-3}), low-surface-brightness, spatially-extended ($r > 5$ kpc) warm-ionised outflow component that the observations were not sensitive to. Spence et al. (2018) estimate that such a component could be ten times more massive than dense outflows in the centres of galaxies, despite only contributing 10 per cent to the luminosities of key emission lines; this may form the powerful, galaxy-wide component of the outflows invoked by models of AGN in galaxy evolution (Di Matteo et al., 2005; Springel et al., 2005; Schaye et al., 2015). Therefore, deep, spatially-resolved, galaxy-scale studies of active galaxies with known small-scale ($r < 2$ kpc) outflows need to be performed in order to identify any potential spatially-extended, low-surface brightness counterparts.

1.2.2 Outflow kinematics and geometry

Outflow kinematics

Determining accurate outflow kinematics is crucial, as the derived mass outflow rates (Equation 1.4) and kinetic powers (Equation 1.5) have square and cubic dependencies on velocity shifts (and dispersions), respectively. Kinematics are often derived in spectroscopic studies of AGN-driven outflows: as noted by Seyfert (1943), the line widths seen in the NLRs of nearby active galaxies are readily explainable by clouds of different velocities causing the Doppler-shifting of emission lines. In modern observational studies, prominent emission lines are used to determine kinematics — perhaps the most commonly used is the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet, which is bright in typical AGN spectra, does not present broad wings from the BLR (Section 1.1.3) and, with the exception of extreme cases, is not blended with other emission lines.

For a static cloud in a narrow line region, the dominant line-broadening effect would be Doppler motions of gas moving with a Maxwellian distribution of velocities, which is described by a Gaussian profile. Therefore, it is generally assumed that individual velocity components of a given emission-line profile follow a Gaussian distribution of wavelengths (or velocities). Consequently, many studies fit one or more Gaussian profiles (accounting for different velocity components) to outflow emission-line profiles to model the kinematics of the gas (e.g. Villar-Martín et al. 1999; Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b; Das et al. 2005; Holt et al. 2011; Mullaney et al. 2013; Rose et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2019) — often, the wavelength difference between the mean of a Gaussian component and the rest wavelength of the line is used to calculate velocity shift (v), and the width of the Gaussian component (either σ or FWHM) is taken as a measure of the distribution of velocities within the cloud.

However, there are challenges to robustly interpreting outflow line profiles in terms of kinematics, mainly regarding projection effects: broad, complex line profiles may be produced by an ensemble of clouds with a large internal velocity dispersion, or by a system of clouds that is unresolved to the observer and has a small local velocity dispersion, and for which the clouds are flowing with a wide range of angles relative to the observer's line of sight (LOS). In terms of kinematics, complex line profiles therefore present a degeneracy: both of the described cases could give rise to an identical line profile, but the derived outflow velocities will change significantly depending on the assumed scenario. In an attempt to break this degeneracy, some studies use non-parametric approaches to de-project outflow kinematics. An example of this is percentile velocities, which involve measuring the velocity that contains a certain percentage of the total line flux under the assumption that the outflow velocity is the same in all directions (and that the local velocity dispersion is small), and therefore the far wings of line profiles (the maximum projected velocities) represent clouds moving along the line of sight (e.g. Cano-Díaz et al. 2012; Harrison et al. 2014; Rose et al. 2018). In this approach, a velocity that contains 90 per cent of the line flux would be represented by v_{90}. Similarly, some studies define non-parametric line widths based on the difference between two percentile velocities, for example $W_{80} = v_{90} - v_{10}$ (e.g. Harrison et al. 2014; Venturi et al. 2021). An example of these non-parametric approaches to measuring outflow kinematics is shown for a mock emission-line profile in Figure 1.8.

The ideal approach to account for projection effects (and therefore determining robust kinematics) would be detailed modelling of NLR kinematics. For several nearby Seyfert galaxies, this has been done by fitting biconical, radial outflow models to kinematics derived from high-spatial-resolution HST spectra (Crenshaw & Kraemer, 2000b; Crenshaw et al., 2000; Das et al., 2005, 2006, 2007; Revalski et al., 2021). However, such an approach requires detailed, spatially-resolved observations (and so is restricted to bright, nearby galaxies), is time-expensive, and relies on assumptions regarding outflow acceleration mechanisms, which themselves are not clear. Therefore, care must be taken when deciding how to measure outflow kinematics, and the method used should be considered when making physical interpretations based on derived outflow kinematics and energetics.

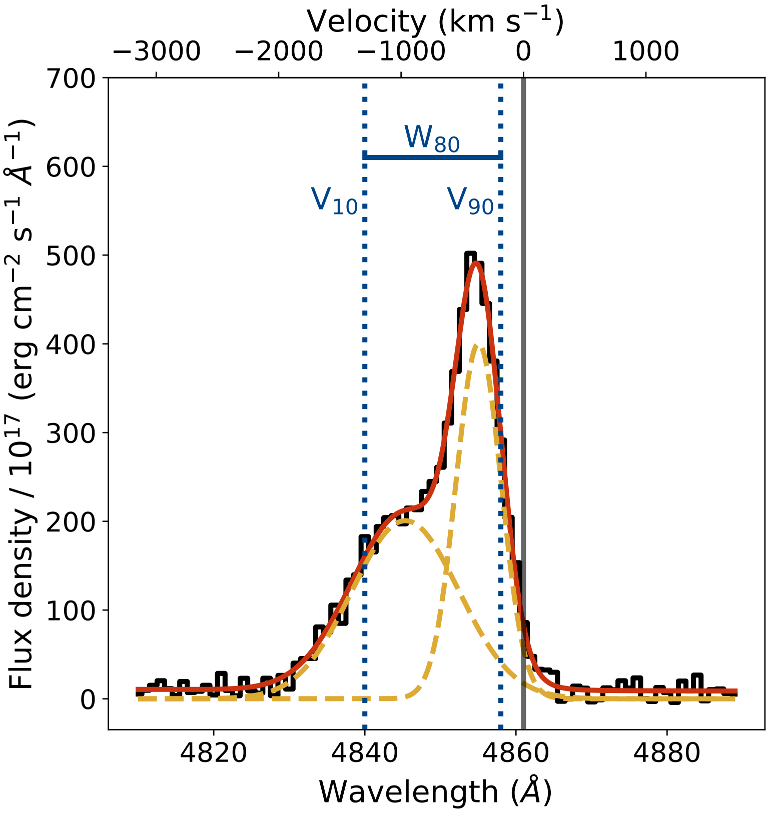


Figure 1.8: Examples of non-parametric percentile velocity shifts (v_{10}, v_{90}: vertical dotted blue lines) and width (W_{80}) for a simulated Hβ line profile. The black line shows the simulated Hβ emission, the solid red line shows the total fit, the dashed orange lines show the two individual Gaussian components required to fit the line profile, and the vertical solid grey line shows the rest wavelength of Hβ.

Outflow spatial extents

Models of galaxy evolution predict outflows that extend to galaxy-wide scales ($r > 5$ kpc: e.g. Silk & Rees 1998; Di Matteo et al. 2005; King 2010; Curtis & Sijacki 2016; Costa et al. 2018). In contradiction to this, studies of nearby active galaxies that use long-slit spectroscopic observations with a technique called spectroastrometry — which involves measuring the spatial centroid position of an emission line as a function of velocity along the slit (Bailey, 1998) — have found that warm-ionised outflows extend up to a few kiloparsecs (at maximum) from the central AGN (Carniani et al., 2015; Spence et al., 2016; Villar-Martín et al., 2016; Santoro et al., 2018, 2020), in agreement with the results of direct HST imaging (Fischer et al., 2018; Tadhunter et al., 2018) and spectroscopy (Das et al., 2005, 2006, 2007; Tadhunter et al., 2019). In contrast, some optical integral field unit (IFU) studies have found outflows to be galaxy-wide (Fu & Stockton, 2009; Westmoquette et al., 2012; Liu et al., 2013; Harrison et al., 2014; Wylezalek et al., 2017); since the observations used in these studies are ground-based, it has been suggested that the beam-smearing effects of atmospheric seeing artificially spread compact outflow emission from the central regions across the IFU field of view. This may have contributed to — or been entirely responsible for — the observed galaxy-wide outflow extents. Furthermore, Husemann et al. (2016) demonstrated that failure to account for beam smearing can result in overestimation of outflow kinetic powers by up to two orders of magnitude. Clearly, this situation needs to be investigated in detail, principally to determine the potential impact that atmospheric seeing can have on determinations of outflow spatial extents.

1.2.3 Comparisons to models of galaxy evolution

In addition to the described uncertainties involved in calculating observationally-derived outflow kinetic powers, it is not clear if direct comparisons to the requirements of theoretical models of galaxy evolution are valid, or if interpretations drawn from such comparisons are robust. In this context, I highlight that, despite many observational studies attempting to verify models by comparing measured coupling efficiencies to those used in models, this parameter is not a *predicted* quantity in such models: it is a free parameter that is set to reproduce the normalisation of the empirical SMBH-bulge scaling relations and properties of the local galaxy population.

Moreover, the AGN-feedback models used in cosmological simulations are not spatially resolved. One problem this can produce is numerical overcooling, which may be compensated for by increasing the required fraction of SMBH accretion power that is coupled to the ISM, potentially by orders of magnitude (Weinberger et al., 2017) — models that attempt to overcome this problem require a wide range of coupling efficiencies (0.04–30 per cent: Booth & Schaye 2009; Choi et al. 2012). In addition, outflows may radiate a significant fraction of their energy post-acceleration, or decelerate under gravity, meaning that observationally-derived coupling efficiencies may be significantly lower than would be measured immediately after the outflow was launched. Furthermore, given that typical outflow dynamical timescales (∼1–10 Myr) may be similar to those of AGN cycles (∼10–100 Myr, although possibly much shorter in some cases: see Morganti 2017 for a review), it is unclear whether or not a given observed outflow was launched during the current epoch of AGN activity (the bolometric luminosity of which is used in coupling efficiency calculations). As argued by Harrison et al. (2018), based on these arguments, it is not necessarily expected that coupling efficiency values required by models correspond to the measured ratio of outflow kinetic power to AGN bolometric luminosity, as is often assumed in observational outflow studies.

Therefore, direct comparisons of specific coupling efficiency values should be done with caution. Alternatively, *qualitatively* comparing outflow properties derived from detailed observations to those predicted by tailored simulations of outflows in different object types may be an insightful (and perhaps complementary) approach. Detailed observational studies can also be used to inform the physics of the tailored models and the feedback prescriptions of cosmological simulations.

1.2.4 Outflow acceleration mechanisms

A major barrier to robust comparisons of observations to theoretical models is that it is not clear how outflows are accelerated. AGN can launch outflows in two general ways: via radiation pressure from accretion disks, or via shocks induced in the ISM by jets. However, in many cases, both of these mechanisms can explain observed properties of the NLRs of local active galaxies, such as kinematics, spatial alignments between ionised gas and radio structures, and gas conditions (Ulvestad et al., 1981; Wilson & Heckman, 1985; Whittle et al., 1988; Cecil et al., 1990; Capetti et al., 1995a,b; Axon et al., 1998; Crenshaw & Kraemer, 2000b; Crenshaw et al., 2000; Das et al., 2005, 2006; Mukherjee et al., 2016, 2018; Meena et al., 2021). Furthermore, it is feasible that *both* mechanisms could be present in a given galaxy, with their relative contributions to outflow acceleration and NLR ionisation/excitation being unclear.

Radiatively-driven outflows

The high luminosities produced by AGN accretion disks may impart significant radiation pressure on surrounding gas (Castor et al., 1975; Abbott, 1982), accelerating it via line driving (bound-bound), continuum-opacity driving (bound-free), and Thompson scattering (free-free) (Arav et al., 1994; Murray et al., 1995; Proga et al., 1998, 2000). In addition, dust may increase the effectiveness of radiation-pressure driving on NLR gas at larger radii (i.e. where it is not vapourised by radiation: Dopita et al. 2002; Fabian et al. 2006). It has been proposed that these mechanisms can accelerate gas clouds in active galaxies to observed outflow velocities (up to several thousand kilometres per second; Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b; Crenshaw et al. 2000; King 2003; Das et al. 2005, 2006; Hopkins & Elvis 2010; King 2010; Müller-Sánchez et al. 2011; Meena et al. 2021).

Two main variations of radiative driving are often invoked to explain observed NLR kinematics: radiation-driven winds launched close to the accretion disk that shock and accelerate the ISM on larger scales (e.g. Elvis 2000; Proga et al. 2000; King 2003), and radiation pressure directly accelerating colder NLR gas on kiloparsec-scales *in situ* (e.g. Das et al. 2007; Fischer et al. 2017; Revalski et al. 2018; Meena et al. 2021, 2023). In an example of the former mechanism, Hopkins & Elvis (2010) propose that hot ($4 < \log_{10}(T[K]) < 6$), low-density ($n = 1$–$100\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$) gas close to the accretion disk ($r < 100$ pc) is radiatively accelerated to very high velocities ($v > 10^4\ \mathrm{km\ s}^{-1}$). As this high-velocity outflow impacts the colder, larger-scale ($r > 100$ pc) ISM, a series of shocks and dynamical instabilities cause it to mix with the colder gas, which produces an expansion in the direction perpendicular to the incident AGN radiation. The increased cross-section of the mixed cloud

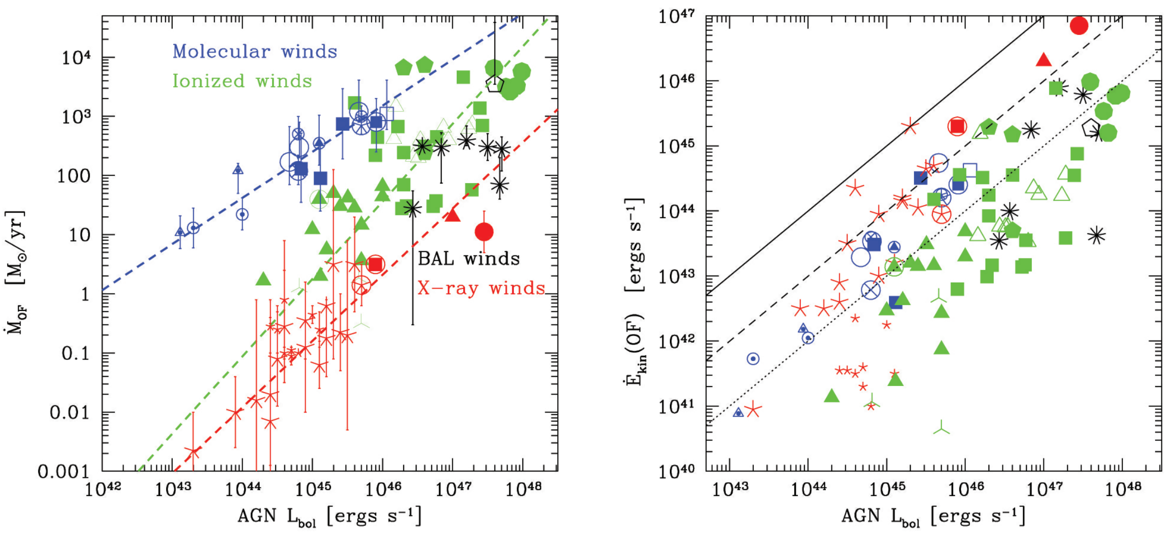


Figure 1.9: Scaling relations between observed multi-phase outflow energetics (mass outflow rate: left; kinetic power: right) and AGN bolometric luminosity, produced by Fiore et al. (2017). The red and black markers represent the energetics of highly-ionised X-ray and BAL (Broad Absorption Line; see review in Gibson et al. 2009) winds, green markers show energetics for warm-ionised outflows, and blue markers show the energetics of cold-molecular outflows. *Image credit: Fiore et al. (2017).*

then leads to efficient, direct radiative driving. Very high-velocity nuclear winds such as those invoked in this model have been observed in the highly ionised phase (Table 1.1) with X-ray absorption lines (Pounds et al., 2004; Lobban et al., 2011; Pounds & Vaughan, 2011; Tombesi et al., 2011), and other studies making use of multi-wavelength observations have argued direct support for the importance of highly-ionised winds in driving larger-scale outflows (Pounds & King, 2013; Feruglio et al., 2015).

Tailored dynamical modelling that considers the balance of acceleration by radiation pressure and gravitational deceleration can reproduce the spatially-resolved outflow kinematics that are observed in the NLRs of some nearby active galaxies, lending support to radiation pressure being an important driving mechanism in these objects (Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b; Crenshaw et al. 2000; Das et al. 2005; Fischer et al. 2017; Revalski et al. 2018; Meena et al. 2021). However, this requires high spatial- and spectral-resolution observations, and hence is limited to bright, nearby objects. Also, while this formalism can broadly explain the observed kinematics, in some cases, acceleration via shocks produced by jet-ISM interactions may be required (Das et al., 2006, 2007; Meena et al., 2023). Furthermore, for several of the objects modelled in this way (e.g. NGC 1068 and NGC 4151), jet-ISM interactions alone may be able to explain observed spatial coincidence between radio structures and extreme NLR kinematics (Capetti et al., 1995a,b; Axon et al., 1998; Das et al., 2006; May & Steiner, 2017; May et al., 2020), leaving the dominant acceleration mechanism unclear.

Additional support for radiatively-driven outflows being common in active galaxies may be provided by statistical studies of a large number of objects. In particular, Fiore et al. (2017) collated observationally-derived mass outflow rates and kinetic powers for outflows and winds in the highly ionised, warm ionised, and cold molecular phases, and found scaling relations between these properties and AGN bolometric luminosity (Figure 1.9). These relations may indicate that outflows in active galaxies are predominantly radiatively driven. However, it is unclear how observed mass outflow rates and kinetic powers of outflows driven by shocks from jet-ISM interactions would be expected to scale with bolometric luminosity. Furthermore, the uncertainties involved in deriving outflow energetics (Section 1.2.1) were not fully accounted for in producing these relations.

Jet-driven outflows

Feedback from AGN jets is commonly thought of in the context of powerful jets that extend far beyond the extents of host galaxies, such as those seen in Cygnus A (Blandford & Rees, 1974; Carilli et al., 1991) and M87 (Junor et al., 1999; Asada & Nakamura, 2012). These jets reach the intergalactic or intracluster medium (IGM; ICM) and maintain the high temperatures and highly ionised states of halo gas, thus preventing catastrophic cooling and accretion to galaxy centres (Binney & Tabor, 1995; Soker et al., 2001; Best et al., 2006; McNamara & Nulsen, 2007; Gaspari et al., 2013). On galaxy scales, these high-power jets are thought to pierce through the ISM without having a major impact or driving significant outflows (Mukherjee et al. 2016; see also Scheuer 1982; Hardee & Norman 1990). However, in the past two decades, theoretical work has demonstrated that lower-power jets ($P_{\mathrm{jet}} < 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}) may instead provide an important source of feedback on galactic scales, as they are confined to the host galaxy medium for a longer time and hence affect a larger volume of the ISM (Figure 1.10: Mukherjee et al. 2016; see also Sutherland & Bicknell 2007; Gaibler et al. 2011; Wagner & Bicknell 2011; Mukherjee et al. 2016, 2018). In this scenario, the jets drive significant shocks into the ISM, heating and accelerating the gas and dissociating molecules. Modelling of jet-ISM interactions that includes both shock-ionisation induced by jets and photoionisation produced by AGN accretion disks predicts that the modelled ISM is predominantly shock-ionised (Meenakshi et al., 2022a), however, this has not been directly observationally verified.

In addition to early outflow studies that found relations between disturbed NLR kinematics and radio structures (e.g. Wilson & Heckman 1985; Whittle et al. 1988), detailed observational studies have provided further evidence that jets drive outflows on galactic scales (e.g. Morganti et al. 1998, 2007; Nesvadba et al. 2008; Rosario et al. 2010a,c,b; Morganti et al. 2013a; Tadhunter et al. 2014; Mahony et al. 2016; May & Steiner 2017; Audibert et al. 2019; May et al. 2020; Venturi et al. 2021). Of particular note are hydrodynamical simulations of AGN with low-power jets that can reproduce

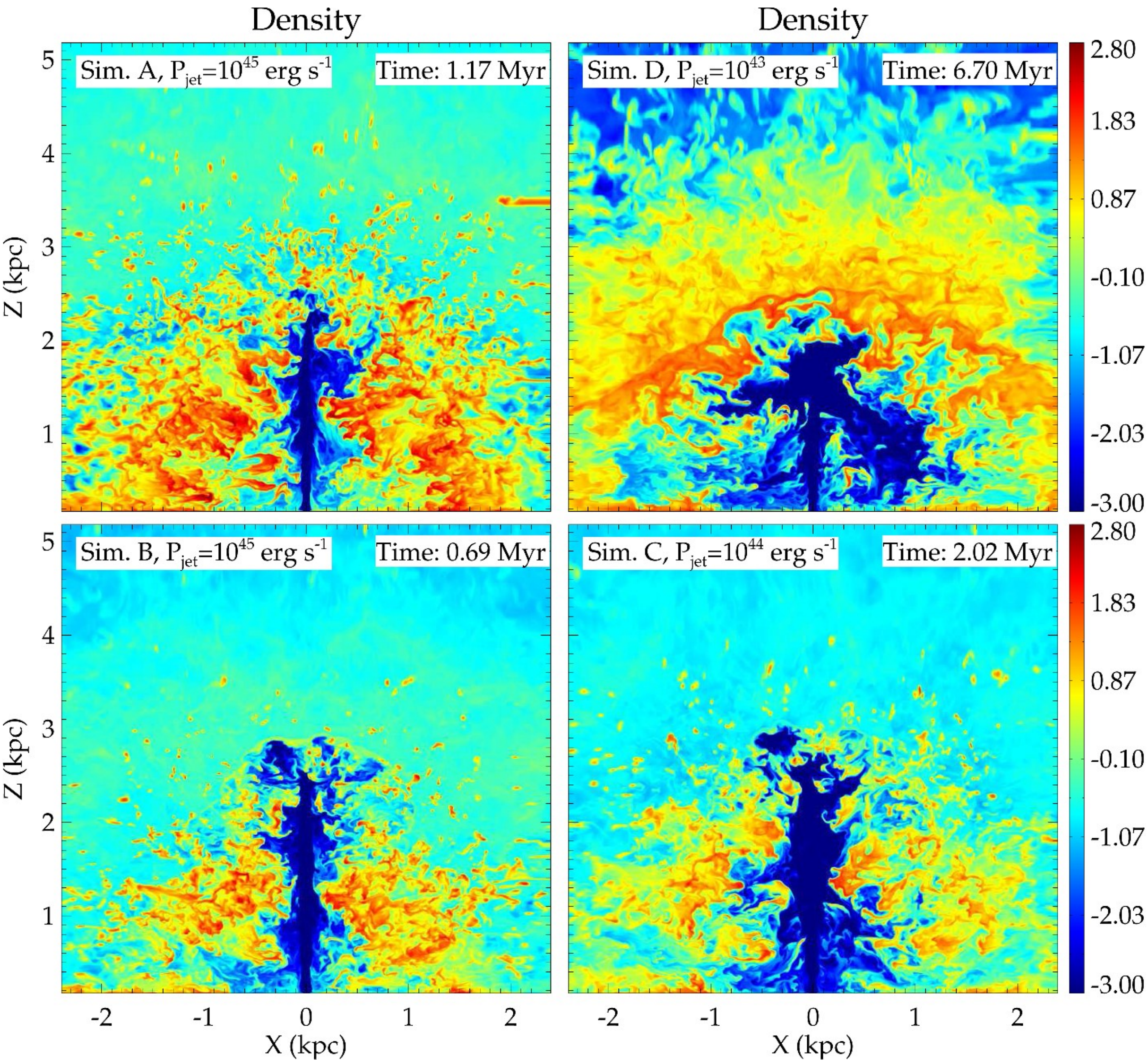


Figure 1.10: Gas density [cm^{-3}] in a two-dimensional plane for hydrodynamic simulations of jets of different powers ($P_{\text{jet}} = 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: left panels; $P_{\text{jet}} = 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1}: bottom-right panel; $P_{\text{jet}} = 10^{43}$ erg s^{-1}: top-right panel) propagating through the ISM at different times. For the highest-power-jet case, the simulation in the top-left panel (‘Sim. A’) considers an ISM that is twice as dense as the ISM considered in ‘Sim. B’ (bottom-left panel). In these models, the higher-power jets pierce through the ISM and escape confinement quickly, launching modest-mass outflows, while the lower-power jets remain confined for a longer time, cause more disturbance, and launch higher-mass outflows. *Image credit: Mukherjee et al. (2016).*

outflow properties derived from observational studies (Morganti et al., 2015; Mukherjee et al., 2018; Audibert et al., 2023).

In this context, it is interesting that a statistical study of a large sample of local ($z < 0.4$), optically-selected AGN by Mullaney et al. (2013) found the broadest [OIII] emission-line profiles (indicative of more-prominent outflows) in objects of intermediate radio luminosity ($23 < \log_{10}(L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}}[\mathrm{W\ Hz^{-1}}]) < 25$). Combined with the correlation between 1.4 GHz luminosity and [OIII] line width previously found for Seyfert galaxies by Whittle (1992b), and the increased [OIII] line widths seen at the locations of prominent radio knots in the NLRs of Seyfert galaxies (Whittle et al., 1988), there is now considerable evidence that jets are an important outflow acceleration mechanism.

Ionisation and excitation mechanisms as probes of acceleration

It is commonly assumed that different outflow acceleration mechanisms correspond to distinct gas ionisation or excitation mechanisms. For example, gas that has been directly radiatively-accelerated *in situ* will have been subject to a significant flux of photoradiation, therefore it is perhaps likely that at least the face of the cloud will be photoionised by the AGN. Conversely, material passing through a shock (driven into the ISM either by a fast nuclear wind or a jet) will be accelerated and heated to the hot ionised phase ($T > 10^6$ K), after which it will eventually cool to the warm ionised phase ($T \sim 10,000$ K) in which it can be observed with optical emission lines. Shock and photoionisation/excitation are expected to induce distinct physical conditions in the gas, for example in ionisation state and temperature (Fosbury et al., 1978; Binette et al., 1996; Villar-Martín et al., 1999); these conditions can be probed by a range of flux ratios of emission lines arising from species of different ionisation/excitation potentials, and the emissivities of which are dependent on gas conditions such as temperature and density. Therefore, it is common practice to produce diagnostic diagrams in which two (or more) emission-line ratios are plotted to define distinct regions of different gas conditions (and hence ionisation mechanisms) to probe this.

The most commonly used diagnostic diagrams are those first presented by Baldwin et al. (1981) and Veilleux & Osterbrock (1987) for the warm ionised phase, referred to as BPT diagrams: the lines involved in these diagrams ([OIII]λ5007, Hα, Hβ, [NII]λ6584, [OI]λ6300, [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731) are bright in typical AGN optical spectra. By plotting the line ratios of known objects (e.g. star-forming regions, Seyfert galaxies, and LINERs[9]) on these diagrams, empirical regions are defined (see Kewley et al. 2006). Typically, it is thought that if an object has line ratios consistent with one of these regions, the dominant ionisation mechanism will correspond to that which is known for the object(s) from which the region was defined (commonly assumed to be photoionisation for the Seyfert/AGN

---

[9] LINERs are a classification of galactic nuclei that display strong low-ionisation lines (such as [OI], [OII], [NII], and [SII]) in their spectra (Heckman, 1980)

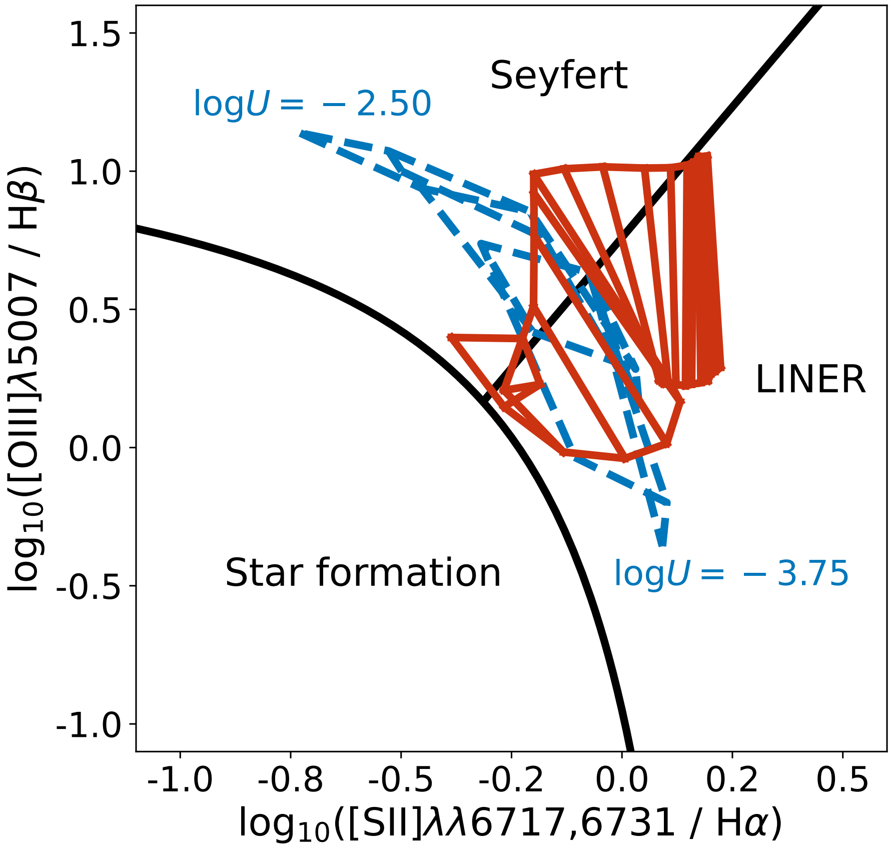


Figure 1.11: [SII]/Hα vs [OIII]/Hβ BPT diagram (Baldwin et al., 1981), showing three empirically-defined regions (Kewley et al., 2006) for Seyfert nuclei, star-forming regions, and LINERs, in addition to predictions of photoionisation (dashed blue grid) and pure shock-ionisation (solid red grid) modelling, which overlap significantly at the boundary between the Seyfert and LINER regions. The photoionisation models were generated using the Cloudy code (version C17.02: Ferland et al. 2017) for a radiation-bounded gas with varying ionisation parameter ($-3.75 < \log U < -2.50$; labelled) and electron density ($n_e = 10^2, 10^3, 10^4$ cm^{-3}), while the shock models are those generated using the Mappings III code by Allen et al. (2008) for shock velocities in the range $200 < v_{\rm shock} < 1000$ km s^{-1} and magnetic parameters of $B/\sqrt{n} = 2, 10$ μG cm$^{3/2}$.

region, and shocks for the LINER region). However, despite the BPT diagrams being used to distinguish between photoionisation and shock-ionisation in active galaxies (e.g. Mingozzi et al. 2019; Venturi et al. 2021, 2023; Revalski et al. 2021), ionisation modelling shows that the regions of photo- and shock-ionisation overlap considerably (Figure 1.11; Dopita & Sutherland 1995, 1996; Allen et al. 2008; Ji et al. 2020), preventing robust determinations of ionisation mechanisms for the warm ionised phase.

To provide further information about the conditions of the warm-ionised gas, and to better discriminate between photo- and shock-ionisation, Villar-Martín et al. (1999) created a diagnostic diagram plotting the [OIII](5007/4363) ratio against the He IIλ4686/Hβ ratio. The former ratio is dependent on the electron temperature of the emitting gas (shocked gas is expected to have higher temperatures: Fosbury et al. 1978), while the latter probes the presence of matter-bounded clouds, which may have similar temperatures to shocked gas (Binette et al., 1996). Therefore, the regions of photo- and shock-ionisation are more cleanly separated than in the typical BPT diagnostics. However, this diagram still only traces a single phase — the warm-ionised gas.

Near-infrared (NIR) studies have revealed relations between emission-line flux ratios that may be powerful ionisation/excitation diagnostics of the warm ionised *and* warm molecular phases. Larkin et al. (1998) first discovered a correlation between the NIR [FeII]λ12567/Paβ and H_2(1–0)S(1) 2.212 μm/Brγ ratios in LINERs, with higher values being associated with objects with known shocks. This correlation was subsequently confirmed, and empirical limits for different regions were refined using samples of star-forming galaxies (SFGs), LINERs, luminous infrared galaxies (LIRGs; $L_{IR} > 3.8 \times 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1}: Sanders & Mirabel 1996), and Seyfert galaxies, allowing the use of these ratios as a diagnostic diagram (Rodríguez-Ardila et al., 2005; Riffel et al., 2013a; Colina et al., 2015; Riffel et al., 2021). Since the H_2(1–0)S(1) 2.212 μm line arises from the warm molecular phase (Table 1.1), the H_2(1–0)S(1) 2.212 μm/Brγ ratio axis of this diagram may be interpreted as tracing the relative excitation of the warm-molecular gas, with higher values associated with shock-excited gas. The physical interpretation for higher values of the [FeII]λ12567/Paβ ratio is that iron is thought to be locked up in dust grains relatively easily: since dust grains are destroyed in shocks, iron is expected to be more abundant (and the [FeII]λ12567/Paβ ratio therefore higher) post-shock. Support for this idea is provided by observed enhancements in the [FeII]λ12567/[PII]λ11886 ratio: phosphorus is less easily locked up in dust grains, and therefore it is notable that Riffel et al. (2013b) found enhanced values of [FeII]λ12567/[PII]λ11886 at the location of enhanced [FeII]λ12567/Paβ along the radio axis of Seyfert 1 galaxy Markarian (Mrk) 79. This indicates that the [FeII]λ12567/Paβ ratio is itself sensitive to the presence of shocks, which is further supported by an observed correlation between [FeII]λ12567/Paβ and emission-line width (indicating that more-kinematically-disturbed gas has passed through a shock: Riffel et al. 2021).

Photo- and shock-ionisation modelling

Producing diagnostic diagrams with accurate regions for different ionisation mechanisms requires predicted emission-line-flux ratios from ionisation models of different types, principally photo- and shock-ionisation. However, there are important complexities and variations of these two main mechanisms that need to be carefully considered. For photoionisation models, there are two general ionised-cloud geometries: radiation-bounded and matter-bounded. In the former case, the ionised region of a given gas cloud (and therefore the ionisation front) is located well within the boundaries of the cloud itself, so that there exists a stratification consisting of fully-ionised, partially-ionised, and neutral-atomic gas within the cloud. For matter-bounded geometry, the outer boundary of the ionised region is the physical boundary of the cloud itself; the cloud is (almost) completely ionised. Therefore, compared to the radiation-bounded case, higher-ionisation emission lines are much stronger relative to lower-ionisation emission lines. Regarding shock-ionisation, modern models often consider two distinct ionisation sources: collisional ionisation as material passes through the shock, and the photoionisation of pre-shock gas by the approaching shock front (commonly referred to as the 'precursor' ionisation component). The relative ionisation contribution of these two components is often unclear, and depends strongly on the properties of the ISM and the shock(s). Hence, it is common practice to produce distinct regions for pure-shock (referred to throughout this thesis solely as 'shock') and precursor ionisation.

For gas densities that are typical for the NLR ($n \ll 10^{10}$ cm^{-3}), the photoionisation code CLOUDY (Ferland et al., 2017) can readily produce radiation-bounded models that predict accurate line ratios for a range of gas and photoionising-source properties. However, generating photoionisation models with a mix of matter- and radiation-bounded clouds (required to determine relative contributions to line fluxes) with CLOUDY is complex — a good supplement is to use the photoionisation models presented by Binette et al. (1996), which provide the predicted fluxes of many key diagnostic lines for different relative fractions of radiation- and matter-bounded clouds. Used together, CLOUDY and the models of Binette et al. (1996) can produce diagnostic-diagram photoionisation regions for both photoionised-cloud geometries.

Allen et al. (2008) used the MAPPINGS III ionisation code to produce a suite of emission-line-flux predictions for both pure-shock and precursor ionisation for varying ISM and shock parameters. However, a major drawback of these models is that they only consider one spatial-dimension, which does not properly allow for additional thermal instabilities and potential secondary shocks (see discussion in Allen et al. 2008). While this could potentially affect simulated absolute line fluxes, the predictions of these models are still sufficiently accurate for placing the regions of expected shock-ionisation on diagnostic diagrams.

In general, a major problem with using photo- and shock-ionisation models to predict line ratios for use in diagnostic diagrams is that the predicted ratios depend strongly on the properties of the ISM (e.g. gas densities and metallicities), photoionising sources (ionisation parameters, spectral indices), and shocks (e.g. shock speeds and magnetic fields). Therefore, constraining these parameters where possible is essential, either by direct estimation using other methods (e.g. ionisation parameters from the technique presented by Baron & Netzer 2019a and electron densities from the transauroral-line ratio technique of Holt et al. 2011) or assuming a range of reasonable values (such as magnetic parameters that are characteristic of the ISM: Allen et al. 2008; see Figure 1.11).

Uncertainties regarding outflow acceleration mechanisms

Overall, AGN-driven-outflow acceleration mechanisms are poorly understood, and are a matter of significant debate: there are many contradictions and claims of different mechanisms being dominant, even for individual objects (e.g. for NGC 1068: Axon et al. 1998; Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b; Das et al. 2005; Fischer et al. 2017; May & Steiner 2017; Revalski et al. 2021; Meena et al. 2023). Principally, this is because the relationship between acceleration mechanisms and outflow ionisation/excitation is not clear, nor is the connection between NLR gas properties and radio structures.

The kiloparsec-scale linear double or triple radio structures seen in Seyfert galaxies (e.g. Figure 1.2: Wilson & Ulvestad 1982; Wilson & Willis 1980; Pedlar et al. 1983, 1984; Ulvestad & Wilson 1984) are likely tracing synchrotron emission produced by shocks or radio plasma (Wilson & Willis, 1980; Ulvestad & Wilson, 1984). It is commonly argued that, based on the morphologies of these structures and the presence of small-scale radio knots close to the nucleus, these structures represent AGN jets propagating into the ISM (e.g. Wilson & Ulvestad 1982; Stanghellini et al. 2005; Rosario et al. 2010c; Riffel et al. 2013b; Jarvis et al. 2019; Williams et al. 2017; Girdhar et al. 2022). In contrast, other authors have argued that the synchrotron emission is produced by shocks that are induced when radiatively-driven winds (i.e. such as those invoked in modelling by Hopkins & Elvis 2010; see Section 1.2.4) impact the ISM, launching kpc-scale outflows in the process (Fischer et al. 2019; see also Fischer et al. 2023).

Regardless of the source of the shocks, it is not clear how well ionisation/excitation mechanisms correspond to radiative or shock-acceleration. While line ratios consistent with shock-ionisation/excitation indicate that the emitting material has passed through (and thus been accelerated by) a shock, photoionised gas does not necessarily imply radiative acceleration: it is possible that the material passed through a shock, cooled, and then was re-ionised by radiation from the AGN.

Determining precise diagnostics of outflow acceleration, ionisation/excitation, and the links between these is therefore essential: simulations of different mechanisms are now able to predict specific outflow properties (e.g. Richings et al. 2021; Meenakshi et al. 2022a,b; see Krause 2023 for a review), allowing detailed observational studies to directly test their assumptions regarding the underlying physics. Moreover, a complete understanding of outflow acceleration is needed to inform the sub-grid[10] physics of cosmological simulations, for which AGN feedback in the form of outflows is required to reproduce observed galaxy properties (Schaye et al., 2015; Dubois et al., 2016; Davé et al., 2019; Zinger et al., 2020).

---

[10] Many cosmological simulations divide the three-dimensional volume that they consider into a grid of cells; the spatial size of the cells effectively sets the spatial resolution of the simulation. ‘Sub-grid’ refers to processes in such simulations that take place on scales smaller than the cell size.

1.2.5 Taxonomy of AGN

Active galaxies of different types provide distinct, useful laboratories to investigate outflow properties and acceleration mechanisms. Here, I briefly summarise AGN classification (see Netzer 2015 and Tadhunter 2008, 2016 for reviews) and define the types of galaxies and AGN that are considered in this thesis.

Optical classifications

The term 'Seyfert' galaxy was originally used to refer to nearby active galaxies with nuclei that showed optical spectral features characteristic of planetary nebulae, indicating high ionisation. As described in Section 1.1.1, the systematic study of these objects began with the seminal work of Seyfert (1943); subsequent studies often adopted various definitions for the term based on properties such as optical and radio luminosities (Wilson & Willis, 1980), emission-line ratios (Baldwin et al., 1981), and line widths (Whittle, 1992a). In this thesis, I define Seyfert galaxies[11] to be galaxies with nuclei that present line ratios that are consistent with the AGN/Seyfert regions of the BPT diagrams (to separate them from LINERs and star-forming/HII galaxies: Baldwin et al. 1981; Kewley et al. 2006), line widths of FWHM > 200 km s^{-1}, and have bolometric luminosities of $L_{\mathrm{bol}} < 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1} (to distinguish them from quasars).

Although quasars were originally considered to be a distinct class of object (Section 1.1.2), it is now accepted that they are intrinsically the same phenomenon as Seyfert galaxies, only with higher optical luminosities; there likely exists a continuous scale of bolometric luminosity between the two classes. Therefore, here I define quasars (QSOs) to be objects with the same properties as Seyfert galaxies, except with higher bolometric luminosities ($L_{\mathrm{bol}} > 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}).

As discussed in Section 1.1.3, by the end of 1960s, it was appreciated that Seyfert galaxies present a dichotomy in the widths of their forbidden and permitted lines. Therefore, they were sub-classified into Seyfert 1s, which present narrow ($200 <$ FWHM < 1000 km s^{-1}) forbidden lines and broad (FWHM > 1000 km s^{-1}) permitted lines, and Seyfert 2s, which present narrow forbidden and permitted lines (Khachikian & Weedman, 1971). With the recognition that Seyfert galaxies and quasars are likely the same phenomenon, these classifications were extended to quasars (QSO1s and QSO2s), and later generalised to all AGN (Type 1 and Type 2). In the unified scheme of AGN (Figure 1.3), Type 1 and Type 2 AGN of a given class are the same intrinsic phenomenon, only viewed along different lines of sight.

Seyfert galaxies and quasars — as defined here — provide different regimes for probing AGN feedback in the inner regions of galaxies ($r < 5$ kpc). Owing to their higher bolometric luminosities, quasars are perhaps expected to impart greater radiation pressure on NLR gas (and/or drive stronger radiatively-driven winds) than Seyfert galaxies, and therefore photoionisation and radiative outflow-acceleration may be dominant. In contrast, the lower bolometric luminosities of Seyfert galaxies may mean that potential optical tracers of jet-ISM interactions are not obscured by dominant photoionisation that results from the intense radiation of the central AGN, and, based on previous NLR studies (e.g. Whittle 1992a; Axon et al. 1998; Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b; Das et al. 2007), it may be expected that they are more likely to host a mixture of jet- and radiation-driven outflows.

---

[11] Some classical Seyfert galaxies — notably NGC 1068, which is considered in Chapter 3 — have bolometric luminosities that are close to (and potentially above) the limit used in this definition.

Similar to the classification schemes for objects detected at optical wavelengths, the optical properties of radio galaxies (galaxies detected via their radio emission) are often separated into the Broad Line Radio Galaxy (BLRG; Type 1 AGN: Osterbrock et al. 1976; Grandi 1977) and Narrow Line Radio Galaxy (NLRG; Type 2 AGN: Costero & Osterbrock 1977) subclasses. However, objects of these classifications (collectively known as Strong Line Radio Galaxies, or SLRGs: e.g. Ramos Almeida et al. 2011) form only a subset of the radio-galaxy population: a significant fraction of radio galaxies instead present weak optical emission lines (known as Weak Line Radio Galaxies, or WLRGs: Hine & Longair 1979; Best & Heckman 2012). The SLRG and WLRG classes — defined by the [OIII]λ5007 equivalent width (e.g. $\mathrm{EW}_{[\mathrm{OIII}]} < 10$ Å for WLRGs: Tadhunter et al. 1998) — have considerable (but not complete) overlap with the commonly-used classifications of High Excitation Radio Galaxies (HERGs: Laing et al. 1994; Tadhunter et al. 1998; Best & Heckman 2012; see discussion in Tadhunter 2016) and Low Excitation Radio Galaxies (LERGs), respectively, which are defined based on measured emission-line ratios (e.g. Buttiglione et al. 2010).

Although not directly considered in this thesis, also of note is the LINER (Low Ionisation Nuclear Emission Region) classification (Heckman, 1980), comprising objects that display prominent low-ionisation lines (e.g. [OI], [OII], [NII], [SII]), but weak high-ionisation lines (e.g. [OIII]), in their spectra. It is not clear whether LINERs are a true class of AGN or if the observed ionisation is (at least in part) due to stellar radiation (Cid Fernandes et al., 2011; Singh et al., 2013; Coldwell et al., 2018; Frederick et al., 2019). As discussed earlier, emission-line widths and diagnostic diagrams making use of multiple emission-line ratios (such as the BPT diagnostics: e.g. Figure 1.11) can be used to distinguish between bonafide AGN and non-AGN LINERs.

Radio classifications

As a result of radio astronomy playing a prominent role in the development of AGN as an important field of modern astrophysics, there are also classification schemes based on object properties at radio frequencies (see Tadhunter 2016 for a comprehensive review). The earliest AGN detected and identified at radio wavelengths are luminous radio sources ($L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}} > 10^{25}$ W Hz^{-1}), and often have radio structures that extend far beyond their host galaxies (e.g. $r_{\mathrm{jet}} \sim 60$ kpc for Cygnus A: Carilli et al. 1991); the most-commonly-used radio classifications are the Fanaroff-Riley classes (Fanaroff & Riley, 1974), which separate such radio morphologies into 'edge-darkened' (FR I) and 'edge-brightened' (FR II; e.g. Cygnus A).

However, there also exist classes of luminous radio AGN that present complex radio structures on sub-galactic scales, the most important of which are compact steep spectrum (CSS) and gigahertz peaked spectrum (GPS) sources (see O'Dea 1998 and O'Dea & Saikia 2021 for reviews). The radio structures of CSS sources typically have radial extents of $r < 15$ kpc and have steep ($\alpha < -0.5$)[12] radio spectra, while those of GPS sources are typically sub-kpc-scale and peak at gigahertz frequencies (Kellermann & Pauliny-Toth, 1981; O'Dea, 1998; Callingham et al., 2015). The morphologies of these sources are often double or triple, similar to those seen in classical Seyfert galaxies (Figure 1.2: Wilson & Ulvestad 1982) and in radio galaxies on larger scales (FRII), indicative of jets. The compactness of the radio structures of CSS/GPS sources may be explainable if their jets are young and/or are being confined by the dense ISM (Bicknell et al., 1997; Stanghellini et al., 2005; O'Dea & Saikia, 2021), from which they eventually grow and subsequently evolve into larger-scale radio galaxies (Stanghellini et al., 2005; Morganti et al., 2007; Kukreti et al., 2023). This process would be expected to entail prominent jet-ISM interactions, and thus CSS/GPS sources host powerful outflows (e.g. Holt et al. 2008, 2011; Santoro et al. 2020).

Ultra luminous infrared galaxies

Finally, although not strictly a class of AGN, ultra luminous infrared galaxies (ULIRGs) are an important class of galaxy for studies of AGN-driven outflows. These are defined as galaxies with infrared luminosities above 10^{12} solar luminosities ($L_{5-500\,\mu\mathrm{m}} > 3.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: Sanders & Mirabel 1996). Almost all ($>$ 90 per cent: Veilleux et al. 2002) ULIRGs show morphological evidence for strong tidal interactions, and so it is thought that they represent the peaks of gas-rich major mergers. Therefore, they are considered to be the most rapidly evolving galaxies in the local Universe, and thus represent the situation modelled in hydrodynamical simulations which predict AGN triggered in mergers that launch galaxy-wide outflows (Di Matteo et al., 2005; Springel et al., 2005; Hopkins et al., 2008; Johansson et al., 2009). Indeed, a significant fraction ($\sim$40–70 per cent: Kim & Sanders 1998; Veilleux et al. 2002; Nardini et al. 2010; Alonso-Herrero et al. 2012) of ULIRGs host AGN. For these reasons, they are expected to host prominent outflows, which have been now observed in a range of gas phases (e.g. Rodríguez Zaurín et al. 2013; Spence et al. 2018; Rose et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2019; Lamperti et al. 2022).

---

[12] Radio continua are typically characterised by spectral indices (α), defined as $F_\nu \propto \nu^\alpha$, where F_ν is the monochromatic flux density at the frequency ν.

1.3 Outstanding problems addressed by this thesis

Overall, while significant progress has been made in understanding AGN-driven outflows over the past twenty-five years, their true properties, natures, and role in galaxy evolution are still largely unclear. Key outstanding questions include the following.

- Which outflow phase(s) is dominant in terms of mass and kinetic power, and how are the different phases physically linked?
- What are the true electron densities of the warm ionised outflow phase, and what is the impact on derived outflow kinetic powers?
- Are AGN-driven outflows truly galaxy-wide, as predicted by simulations of galaxy evolution?
- How are outflows accelerated by AGN, and what is the relationship between outflow excitation/ionisation mechanisms and acceleration mechanisms?

To address these important questions, in this thesis I present detailed studies of four nearby active galaxies, three of which are classified as Seyfert galaxies and the other a ULIRG/QSO/GPS source. The studies make use of deep, high-spatial-resolution, multi-wavelength observations that trace different gas phases — in addition to developing and utilising precise outflow diagnostic techniques — to robustly quantify outflow properties and interpret their impact on the host galaxies. The observations and analyses are presented in the chapters of this thesis as follows.

- In Chapter 2, I present a study based on high-spatial-resolution, wide-wavelength-coverage long-slit VLT/Xshooter spectroscopy of the kpc-scale radio structure of the nearby Sey 2 galaxy IC 5063, which is known to host prominent jet-driven outflows. The principal aims of this analysis were to determine robust spatially-resolved electron densities using the transauroral-line method (for the first time), verify the use of this method in studies of AGN-driven outflows, and place the resulting precise warm-ionised outflow properties in a multi-phase context using the wealth of previous observations of this object, therefore allowing an investigation into the relative importance of the various outflow phases and the physical link(s) between them. The work presented in this chapter is based on the 1st first-author publication of my PhD (Holden et al., 2023).
- Extending this analysis to other nearby active galaxies, in Chapter 3 I analyse HST/STIS spectroscopy of the inner few-hundred parsecs of the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. Using the transauroral-line technique, this data is used to measure spatially-resolved electron densities for these two objects, which

are then compared to the results of previous detailed photoionisation modelling to further verify this method. Moreover, the high-spatial-resolution STIS observations allow for the ionisation conditions of the gas to be determined; combining this with information regarding the radio structures in the NLRs, the link between ionisation and acceleration mechanisms is investigated, permitting a detailed study into the launching mechanism of the outflows. This analysis and subsequent results were first presented in the 2nd first-author publication of my PhD (Holden & Tadhunter, 2023).

- Chapter 4 presents an ALMA CO(1–0) study of the cold-molecular gas in the inner few kiloparsecs of the primary nucleus of the ULIRG/QSO/GPS source F13451+1232, an object which directly represents the situation considered in models of galaxy evolution. While compact ($r < 100$ pc) outflows have been detected in this object in various phases previously, there has not yet been a robust detection of molecular outflows — a potentially crucial phase. The ALMA CO(1–0) observations are used to search for molecular outflows, with the aim of completing the multi-phase information and thus allowing for the relative importance of the various phases to be established for an object of higher radio and bolometric luminosity than the Seyfert galaxies considered in prior chapters. Furthermore, the high spatial resolution of the ALMA observations allows for the spatial extents of molecular outflows to be determined (thus addressing a prediction of galaxy evolution models), and by combining them with archival VLBI observations, the outflow acceleration mechanism(s) are investigated. This chapter is based on the third 1st-author publication of my PhD (Holden et al., 2024).
- The techniques and analyses used in the previous three chapters are sensitive to relatively dense ($n_e > 10^3$ cm^{-3}) gas in the central kiloparsecs of galaxies. Therefore, to directly verify the true spatial extents of the warm ionised outflow phase, Chapter 5 presents a VLT/MUSE IFU study of F13451+1232 on galaxy-scales ($r > 5$ kpc) — an object which, according to models of galaxy evolution, would be expected to host prominent galaxy-wide outflows. Unlike previous, similar ground-based IFU studies of outflows in local AGN, the analysis of this chapter carefully accounts for the beam-smearing effects of atmospheric seeing, and quantifies its effect on key outflow properties including spatial extents, kinematics, mass outflow rates, and kinetic powers.
- Finally, in Chapter 6 I summarise the results of these chapters and present the conclusions of this thesis. Moreover, I discuss future work that can be undertaken in this field, in addition to important considerations that are required for further significant progress to be made in understanding the nature of AGN-driven outflows and their role in galaxy evolution.

Chapter 2

Jet-driven warm gas outflows in the Seyfert 2 galaxy IC 5063

"Born under a black sun,
malignant solar tides.
Infinite aeons, merge! Collide!
Spiralling down.

Celestial dagger,
terminate galaxies,
pierce through the heart of the void,
storm heaven,
ride, divide and conquer."

— Wode, *Celestial Dagger*

Chapter declaration

The data, analysis, results, and discussion presented in this chapter were reported in my first-author publication “Precise physical conditions for the warm gas outflows in the nearby active galaxy IC 5063” (Holden et al., 2023). The content of this chapter is based on that publication, which has been adapted into a suitable format for this thesis; all work is my own, except where clearly stated.

2.1 Chapter introduction

An important object for investigating multi-phase AGN-driven outflows is IC 5063: a nearby ($z = 0.01131$) early-type galaxy with a Seyfert 2 nucleus (Danziger et al., 1981; Inglis et al., 1993). The galaxy hosts a gaseous disk that is detected out to a radius of $r \sim 28$ kpc in HI 21 cm emission, is associated with prominent dust lanes, and may be the result of a merger (Morganti et al., 1998). The inner parts of this disk (within a few kiloparsecs of the nucleus) are also detected in cold (Morganti et al., 2015) and warm H_2 (Tadhunter et al., 2014) molecular gas emission. In addition, [OIII] emission lines from warm-ionised gas are detected in HST imaging along the edges of the dust lane to a radius of ∼10 kpc (Morganti et al., 1998). Importantly, IC 5063 has a radio luminosity at the upper end of the range for Seyfert galaxies ($L_{1.4\ \mathrm{GHz}} = 3 \times 10^{23}$ W Hz^{-1}), and the radio emission is concentrated in a triple-structure that is parallel to the dust lanes, consisting of a nucleus and two radio lobes ∼2 arcsec (∼0.5 kpc) on either side of the nucleus to the southeast (SE) and northwest (NW) (Figure 1.6).

As expected for an object of its 1.4 GHz luminosity (Section 1.2.4; Whittle et al. 1988; Whittle 1992b; Mullaney et al. 2013), past observations of IC 5063 have revealed fast ($v > 700$ km s^{-1}) outflows spatially associated with the NW radio lobe across a range of gas phases: warm ionised (Morganti et al., 2007; Sharp & Bland-Hawthorn, 2010; Congiu et al., 2017; Venturi et al., 2021); neutral (Morganti et al., 1998; Oosterloo et al., 2000); warm molecular (Tadhunter et al., 2014), and cold molecular (Morganti et al., 2013b, 2015; Dasyra et al., 2016; Oosterloo et al., 2017). In addition, IC 5063 has been the target of X-ray observations tracing hot ionised gas, which presents a biconical morphology with an axis similar to that of the radio structure (Vignali et al., 1997; Tazaki et al., 2011; Travascio et al., 2021).

IC 5063 is unusual in the sense that its radio structure lies in the plane of its disk (Morganti et al., 1998; Oosterloo et al., 2000; Morganti et al., 2015; Mukherjee et al., 2018). Considering that the outflows in the galaxy are spatially associated with the bright radio features, particularly at the NW radio lobe, it is thought that jet-ISM interactions are the main outflow acceleration mechanism, with these interactions being particularly strong due to jets propagating in the dense ISM of the disk (Tadhunter et al., 2014; Morganti et al., 2015). Hydrodynamic simulations by Mukherjee et al. (2018) explain the gas kinematics in IC 5063 by assuming that a relatively-low-power jet ($\mathrm{P_{jet}} = 10^{44-45}$ erg s^{-1}) percolates through the path of least resistance in the disk. As it does so, jet-ISM interactions accelerate gas perpendicular to the jet direction. This is supported by observations of a giant low-ionisation loop (Maksym et al., 2021) and enhanced [OIII] velocity width (Venturi et al., 2021) around the radio structure.

The properties described above make IC 5063 an ideal case study for addressing three of the main outstanding questions that are the focus of this thesis. First, its close proximity to Earth allows its NLR and outflows to be spatially resolved, permitting comparisons (and verification) of different electron-density diagnostics (particularly the transauroral-line method) — crucial for determining robust outflow kinetic powers for the warm ionised phase. Second, the jets propagating directly into the galaxy's disk are expected to produce prominent jet-ISM interactions — spatially-resolved observations of these interactions may reveal how the outflows are accelerated. Finally, the extensive previous multi-wavelength observations allow for results to be placed into a wider, multi-phase context, directly constraining the relative energetic contributions of the different phases and permitting an investigation into the physical link between them. For these reasons, IC 5063 was chosen to be the target of deep observations with the Very Large Telescope's (VLT) Xshooter spectrograph in 2018.

Throughout this chapter, I assume a cosmology of $H_0 = 70\,\mathrm{km\,s^{-1}\,Mpc^{-1}}$, $\Omega_\mathrm{m} = 0.3$ and $\Omega_\lambda = 0.7$. At the redshift of IC 5063 ($z = 0.01131$; Tadhunter et al. 2014), this corresponds to a luminosity distance of $D_\mathrm{L} = 48.9$ Mpc and an angular scale of 0.231 kpc/arcsec.

2.2 Observations and data reduction

2.2.1 Xshooter observations of IC 5063

IC 5063 was observed using VLT/Xshooter in service mode on the nights of the 13th and 16th June 2018 in four observing blocks (OBs) during photometric and dark sky conditions, as part of the ESO programme 0101.B0409(A) (PI: Tadhunter). The observations were performed in long-slit mode (slit length = 11 arcsec), with slit widths of 1.3 arcsec for the UVB arm (wavelength range: 3200–5600 Å) and 1.2 arcsec for the VIS (5500–10200 Å) and NIR (10200–24750 Å) arms. The slit was aligned along the galaxy's radio axis (PA = 115°), meaning that the radio hotspots (∼4 arcsec separation) were contained in the 11 arcsec slit length (see Figure 2.1). The data has a pixel scale of 0.16 arcsec/pixel for the UVB and VIS arms and 0.21 arcsec/pixel for the NIR arm. Separate sky exposures were taken by nodding off the target object with a 30-arcsecond spatial offset and using an ABBA observing pattern — this facilitated accurate sky subtraction during data reduction. Each observing block thus consisted of 6 exposures (3 on-object and 3 on-sky), with a total integrated object exposure time of 5400 s. In addition, standard calibration files (e.g. bias frames, dark frames and standard star observations) were provided along with the science data for use in data reduction.

In order to determine the instrumental broadening of the Xshooter observations, Gaussian profiles were fitted to the Galactic NaID absorption lines at 5890 Å and 5896 Å. Since the gas responsible for this absorption is quiescent (i.e non-outflowing) within the Milky Way, any broadening of these lines will be due entirely to the instrumental setup. From

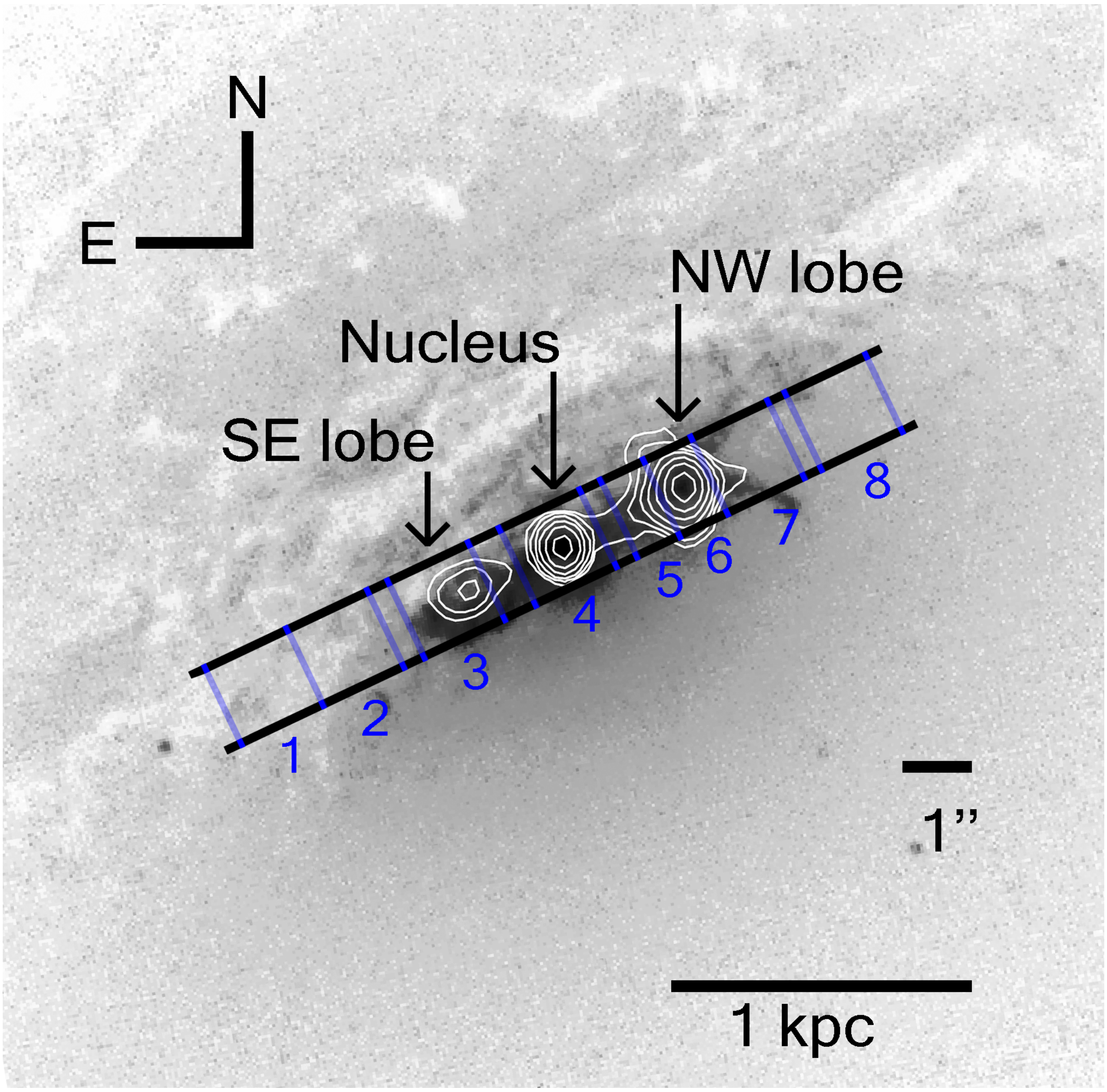


Figure 2.1: Archival HST/WFPC2 F606W optical image of the central ~3 kpc of IC 5063 (Cycle 4; SNAP:5479; PI Malkan), in addition to ATCA 17 GHz radio imaging (Morganti et al. 2007; shown as white contours). The slit is overlaid in black, with the borders of each aperture along the slit (Section 2.2.4; Figure 2.2) shown and labelled in blue. The northwest (NW) and southeast (SE) radio lobes are labelled, along with the nucleus. Note that the F606W filter admits strong [OIII] and Hα+[NII] emission lines, as well as continuum emission. In this negative image, the inner part of a large-scale dust lane can be seen as the lighter-toned filamentary structures to the north of the nucleus, whereas the inner emission-line structures appear as the darker grey or black features close to the nucleus. *Image credit: the alignment of the HST/WFPC2 optical image and the 17 GHz radio image was performed by Raffaella Morganti and Tom Oosterloo; the remaining preparation of the figure was done by myself.*

Observing Block	Max DIMM (arcsec)	Acq. Image (arcsec)
1	0.83	2.08±0.03
2	1.06	0.93±0.01
3	0.69	0.93±0.01
4	0.74	0.72±0.01

Table 2.1: Seeing estimates for each observing block of the VLT/Xshooter observations of IC 5063, taken on the nights of the 13th (Block 1) and 16th (blocks 2, 3 and 4) of June 2018. 'Max DIMM' is the maximum seeing recorded by the VLT observatory DIMM during the time frame of a given observing block, and 'Acq. Image' is the seeing measured by fitting one-dimensional Gaussian profiles to 1.2 arcsecond wide spatial slices centred on stars in the r$'$-band acquisition images.

the galactic NaID lines, an instrumental width of $\mathrm{FWHM_{inst}} = 0.825 \pm 0.016$ Å was measured, corresponding to a velocity resolution of 42.0 ± 0.8 km s^{-1} at 5900 Å. I note that I did not make use of the instrument's calibration lamps when measuring the instrumental broadening to avoid potential inaccuracies arising from telescope and instrument flexture at different pointings; residual sky lines were not used as they were (first-order) subtracted during the pipeline data-reduction process.

2.2.2 Seeing estimates

Estimates of the seeing during the four observing blocks were made by fitting one-dimensional Gaussian profiles[1] to the spatial slices of stars in the acquisition images taken with the Sloan r' filter for each observing block. The width of each spatial slice was 1.2 arcsec, taken to match the Xshooter slit widths (and thus provide a robust representation of the seeing expected for the longslit spectra). Seeing estimates were also taken from the Paranal DIMM (Differential Image Motion Monitor)[2] during the four observing blocks, as measured near zenith with a filter centred on ∼5000 Å. Seeing estimates measured from the acquisition images and the DIMM are given in Table 2.1.

2.2.3 Reduction of the Xshooter data

The European Southern Observatory's (ESO) pipeline for Xshooter data reduction, ESOREFLEX (version 2.11.0; Freudling et al. 2013), was used for the initial stage of data reduction. Used with the calibration data provided by ESO, this produced a single two-dimensional, bias-subtracted, flat-fielded, order-merged, wavelength-calibrated, and flux-calibrated long-slit spectrum for each Xshooter arm (UVB, VIS, NIR) in each observing block, giving a total of 12 spectra (one for each arm per block).

---

[1] While atmospheric seeing profiles are accurately described by a Moffat distribution (Moffat, 1969), a Gaussian profile is a sufficient approximation for the purposes of this chapter.

[2] DIMM seeing values were queried from `http://archive.eso.org/wdb/wdb/asm/dimm_paranal/form`

Residual bad pixels, cosmic rays and other cosmetic defects in each spectrum were cleaned via interpolation using the CLEAN command from the STARLINK FIGARO package (Currie et al., 2014). A second-order correction was then applied to the NIR data to improve the night-sky-line subtraction — this was done by taking the median of pixel rows near the edges of the slit (free of emission from the object) and subtracting the resulting spectrum from each pixel row of the entire slit.

Telluric correction of the VIS and NIR arm data to remove atmospheric absorption features was performed using ESO's MOLECFIT software (version 1.5.9: Smette et al. 2015; Kausch et al. 2015). Atmospheric models were created using fits to key telluric absorption features which were then used to create synthetic transmission spectra for the VIS and NIR data. The two-dimensional spectra were subsequently telluric-corrected by dividing them by the corresponding transmission spectrum. After verifying that they were spatially aligned, the cleaned, second-order-corrected (for the NIR arm), and telluric-corrected two-dimensional spectra for the four observing blocks were then median-combined using IRAF IMCOMBINE (Tody, 1986, 1993) into a single two-dimensional spectrum for each arm.

Extinction due to dust in the Milky Way galaxy was corrected using the Galactic extinction maps presented by Schlegel et al. (1998) and re-calibrated by Schlafly & Finkbeiner (2011) (hereafter S98 and SF11, respectively). The mean colour excess value in the direction of IC 5063 ($\mathrm{E(B-V)_{mean}} = 0.0526 \pm 0.0012$) from these maps was found using the NASA/IPAC Infrared Science Archive reddening lookup tool[3]; this value was used with the $R_\mathrm{v} = 3.1$ extinction law presented by Cardelli et al. (1989) (hereafter CCM89) to correct for Galactic extinction. The spectra were then shifted into the rest frame of IC 5063 using the IRAF DOPCOR command with the redshift of IC 5063 ($z = 0.01131$) measured by Tadhunter et al. (2014).

2.2.4 Aperture selection and extraction

The VLT/Xshooter observations reveal highly disturbed gas kinematics and complex line profiles in the regions coincident with the radio structure (Figure 2.2a), consistent with the observations presented by Morganti et al. (2007). The reduced and merged two-dimensional spectra for the UVB and VIS Xshooter arms were divided into apertures (groupings of pixel rows) covering important features of the inner regions of IC 5063. The apertures chosen for the UVB and VIS arms are shown in Figure 2.2b, with Aperture 4 covering the nucleus, and apertures 3, 5, 6 and 7 covering distinct kinematic regions along

---

[3] `https://irsa.ipac.caltech.edu/applications/DUST/`

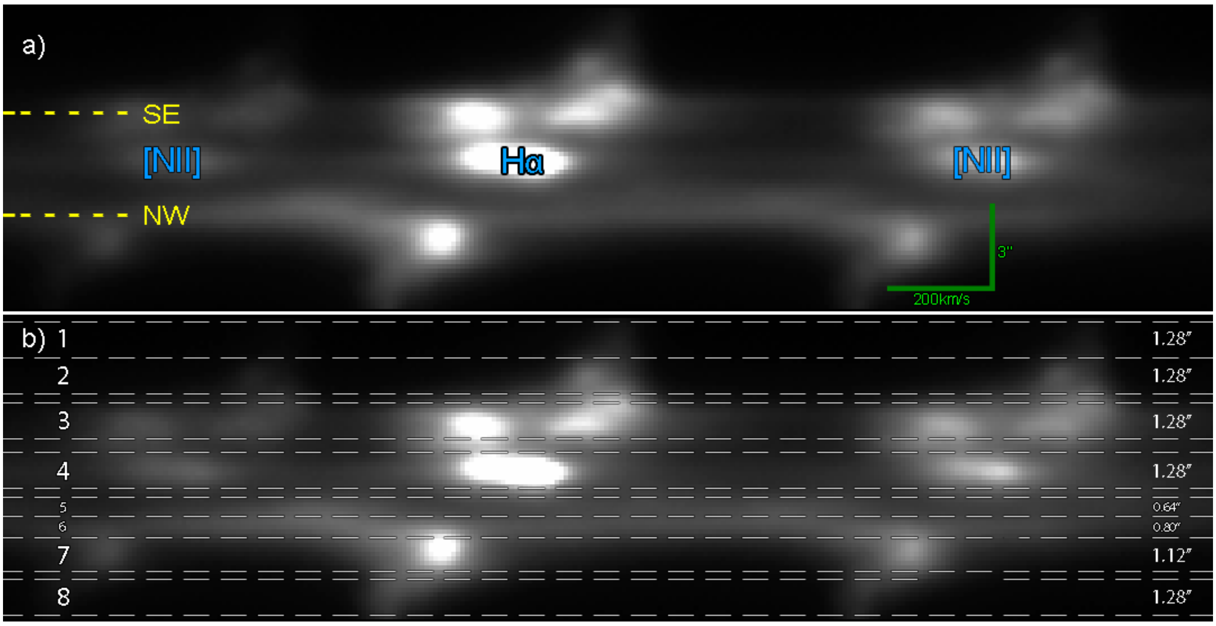


Figure 2.2: **a)**: Two-dimensional spectrum of the Hα+[NII] emission lines at ∼6560 Å in the VIS arm of the Xshooter data of IC 5063, showing the line profiles in the inner regions of the galaxy. The spectral axis is horizontal and the spatial axis is vertical; the velocity and spatial scales are shown as a labelled green axis. The centroids of the radio lobes — measured from 24.8 GHz radio continuum imaging presented by Morganti et al. (2007) — are shown as yellow dashed lines, and each lobe is labelled. **b)**: The same as in a), but with apertures selected for the UVB and VIS arms marked with white dashed lines and labelled as '1-8' on the left; the spatial width of each aperture in arcseconds is given on the right. Note that the Hα+[NII] blend is shown here for presentation purposes, as it clearly demonstrates the emission-line structure of forbidden ([NII]) and permitted (Hα) species.

the radio structure: Aperture 3 approximately covers the SE radio lobe, Aperture 5 covers a region of disturbed emission-line kinematics between the nucleus and the maximum extent of the NW lobe, and apertures 6 and 7 cover the NW radio lobe. Once the apertures were selected, the same pixel rows in both the UVB and VIS data were extracted and added to produce two one-dimensional spectra for each aperture (one UVB and one VIS); flux uncertainties were extracted and added in quadrature. Before extraction, Gaussian fitting of continua spatial-flux distributions in spectral regions that were free of line features at similar wavelengths in both the UVB and VIS arms was performed to ensure that the spectra in the two arms were closely spatially aligned. Due to slight differences in flux calibration, a small (∼5 per cent) correction was applied to the fluxes of the VIS data for each extracted aperture to make them consistent with the corresponding UVB aperture. This was done by measuring the average flux between 5440–5500 Å for the UVB arm and 5600–5660 Å for the VIS arm (chosen to avoid noise at the edges of the detectors)— the ratio of these average fluxes was then used as a correction factor to match the flux scales across both arms.

Finally, the extracted and corrected UVB and VIS one-dimensional spectra were combined to produce a single one-dimensional spectrum for each aperture, covering the full wavelength range of both arms. During this process, the spectra for both arms were resampled to a common wavelength grid with steps of $\Delta\lambda = 1$ Å using the SpectRes (Carnall, 2017), specutils (Earl et al., 2021) and Astropy (Astropy Collaboration et al., 2013, 2018) Python packages. $\Delta\lambda = 1$ Å was chosen for the resampling because this was the smallest wavelength step allowed by the base stellar templates used in the stellar continuum modelling (described in Section 2.2.5).

Because of the different spatial pixel scale of Xshooter's NIR arm relative to its UVB and VIS arms, the NIR data was considered separately. Apertures for the NIR data were derived from the UVB+VIS apertures by first fitting two Gaussian profiles to a spatial slice of the continuum near the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$5007,4959 doublet and taking the centroid of the narrowest to be the position of the continuum peak along the slit — the distances from the centre of each UVB+VIS aperture to this continuum peak were then calculated. The same procedure was used to identify the continuum peak in the NIR arm using a continuum slice adjacent to the near-infrared HeIλ10830 line. The ratio of the VIS+UVB pixel scale (0.16 arcsec/pixel) to the NIR pixel scale (0.21 arcsec/pixel) was then used to convert the aperture distances and widths from the UVB+VIS arm to the NIR arm. It should be noted that the spatial boundaries of the NIR apertures are not exactly the same as the UVB+VIS apertures due to the different pixel scales of the arms, the fact that the apertures are only a few pixels wide, uncertainties related to the Gaussian fits to the continuum spatial slices, and the fact that aperture spatial positions are only measured to an accuracy of 0.1 pixels.

2.2.5 Stellar continua modelling and subtraction

Following the selection, extraction, and correction of the UVB+VIS apertures, the underlying stellar continua in each were modelled and subtracted using the STARLIGHT stellar spectral synthesis code (version 4: Cid Fernandes et al. 2005; Mateus et al. 2006), making use of the STELIB empirical stellar templates (Le Borgne et al., 2003) and the stellar population synthesis model presented by Bruzual & Charlot (2003). This was done to ensure that measured emission-line fluxes used in the analysis were as accurate as possible and did not suffer from the effects of underlying stellar absorption.

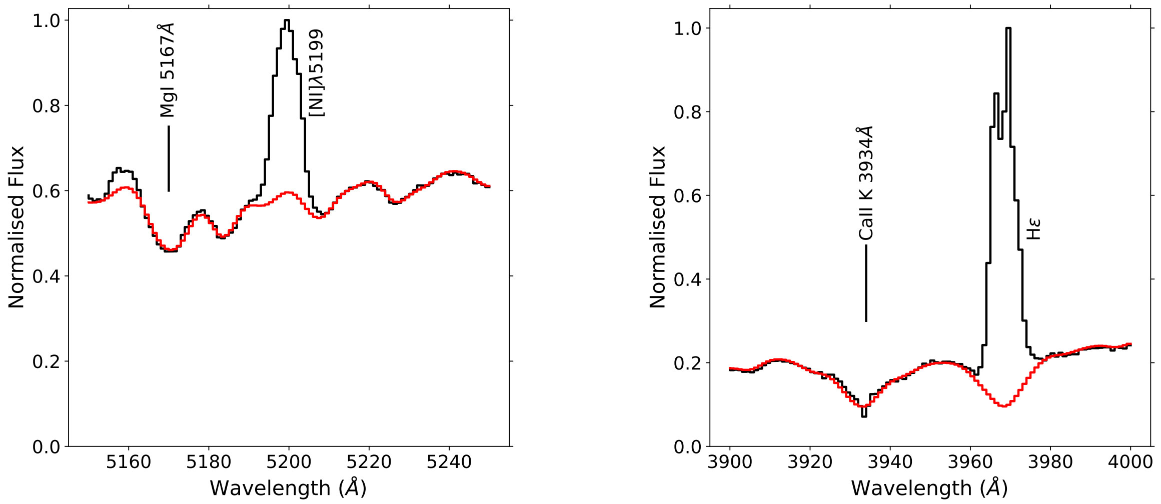
In order to ensure good fits to the stellar continua, any spectral features not associated with a stellar component (such as AGN emission lines and any residual telluric absorption) were excluded from the fitting process. The normalising region for the fits was chosen to be 4740–4780 Å; the total wavelength range covered in the STARLIGHT fits was 3220–8000 Å. The adequacy of the resulting fits was checked visually by closely inspecting key absorption features that do not suffer from emission-line contamination, such as the MgI absorption feature at 5167 Å (Figure 2.3a) and the CaII K absorption feature at 3934 Å (Figure 2.3b), as well as the fit to the overall continuum shape. After being deemed acceptable, the modelled stellar flux densities were subtracted from the observed flux densities in each aperture.

To further highlight the necessity of proper continuum subtraction, in Figure 2.3c I present the stellar continuum fits in the region of the Hγ and [OIII]λ4363 emission lines, and in Figure 2.3d I present the stellar continuum fits in the region of the HeII and [ArIV]$\lambda\lambda$4711, 4740 emission lines.

2.2.6 Emission-line fitting

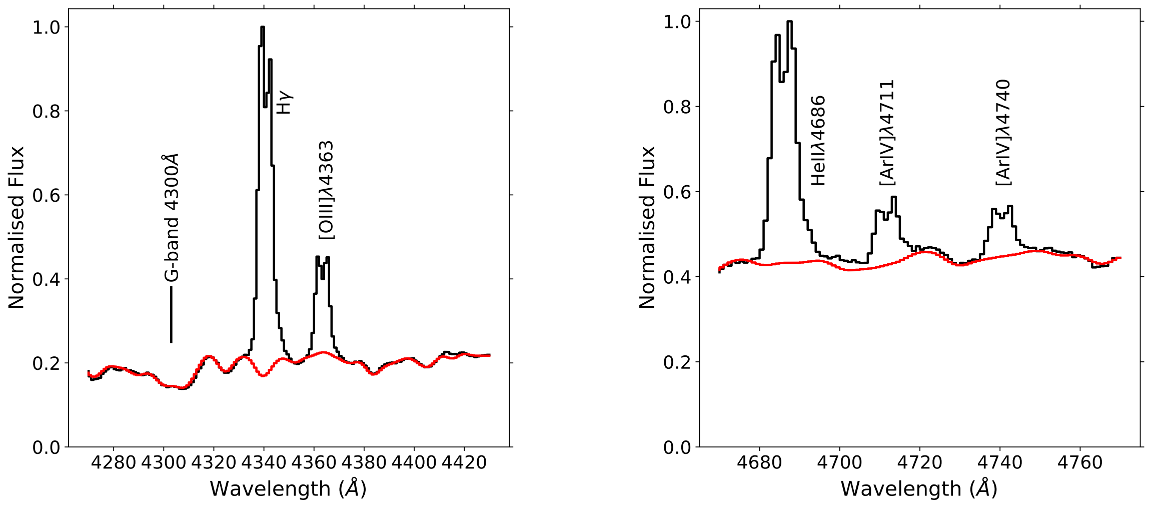
After stellar-continuum subtraction, the profiles of key emission lines in each aperture were fit with Gaussian profiles and a low-order-polynomial (to account for non-stellar continua in the UVB+VIS arms, and overall continuum structure in the NIR arm) using PYTHON scripts written with the NUMPY (Harris et al., 2020), PANDAS (pandas development team, 2020), ASTROPY, and SPECUTILS packages. In all cases, several Gaussian components were required to properly fit the emission-line profiles, however, to prevent overfitting, it was important to only use as few Gaussians as possible while still producing an adequate fit to the line profiles. Therefore, further Gaussian components were only added if they significantly reduced the mean-square residuals and χ^2 of the fit. Furthermore, a sum-of-squares f-test (Montgomery, 2012) was used to ensure that the relative decrease in residuals with each added Gaussian component was statistically significant (at the $\alpha =$ 0.01 significance level). This took into account the degrees of freedom of the total model when adding additional Gaussian components, preventing overfitting.

Emission-line-profile models for the combined UVB+VIS data were produced by first fitting the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet. Gaussian components were simultaneously fitted to both lines in the doublet, with each pair of Gaussian components having the same FWHM, and a wavelength separation (49.9 Å) and intensity ratio (1 : 2.99) defined by atomic physics (Osterbrock & Ferland, 2006). The resulting multiple-Gaussian-component fits to the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet are hereafter referred to as the '[OIII] models'; these are shown for each aperture in Figure 2.4. For each aperture, narrow (FWHM$_\mathrm{w}$ < 200 km s^{-1}: see Section 2.3.1) and broad (FWHM$_\mathrm{w}$ > 500 km s^{-1}) components of the [OIII] line profiles were identified. The former have kinematics consistent with gravitational (rotational) motions in the host galaxy (as deduced from large-scale HI 21 cm and CO kinematics: Morganti et al. 1998, 2015), and the latter are consistent with outflowing gas. The broad components have complex, often multi-peaked profiles that required fitting with a combination of Gaussian components of different widths. Note that the *individual* Gaussian components used to fit the broad components are not interpreted as physically-distinct



(a) The spectral region of the MgI 5167 Å absorption feature and the [NI]λ5199 emission line.

(b) The spectral region of the CaII K absorption feature at 3934 Å, and the Hε recombination line.



(c) The spectral region of the Hγ and [OIII]λ4363 emission lines; the fit to the G-band stellar absorption feature at $\sim$4300 Å can also be seen.

(d) The spectral region of the HeIIλ4686 and [ArIV]$\lambda\lambda$4711,4740 emission lines.

Figure 2.3: STARLIGHT fits (red solid line) to various features in the spectrum extracted from Aperture 3 of the Xshooter UVB+VIS data (solid black line); the emission and absorption lines shown in each plot are labelled. Complex stellar continuum structure, which may significantly affect the derived line fluxes, can be seen underneath emission lines in several cases, and contributes significantly to the profiles of the [ArIV] lines. Therefore, proper modelling and subtraction was necessary to ensure accurate measurements of line fluxes.

kinematic components — rather, they are required to account for the *total* flux in the broad part of the line profiles.

Whereas in most apertures the [OIII] profiles can be well-described by one total broad and one total narrow component (each modelled with more than one Gaussian component), Aperture 3 is an exception to this because there are two clearly separated 'narrow' components and a single broad component in the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 line profiles. In this case, the two narrow components are considered separately, and are labelled 'Narrow 1' (red-most) and 'Narrow 2' (blue-most). In apertures 4 and 5, the majority of the components are broad and heavily blended, and therefore only the total line fluxes (narrow + broad) are considered.

The [OIII] models were used to constrain the fits to the other UVB+VIS emission lines used in this analysis, namely Hβ, Hγ, [OIII]λ4363, [OII]λ3726,3729, [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319,7331, [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4068,4076, [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731, [ArIV]$\lambda\lambda$4711,4740 and HeIIλ4686 — the fits to these lines for Aperture 3 are shown in Figure 2.5. I note that fits for Hα and the [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6583 doublet were not produced for apertures with complex, broad emission-line profiles, as the lines were significantly blended and thus it was not possible to precisely measure their fluxes due to degeneracy issues. For all fits to the other lines, the intensity of each Gaussian component was allowed to vary, while the wavelength separations[4] and widths of the Gaussian components were fixed. For some of the weaker emission lines with much lower fluxes than the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet, the fainter Gaussian components were sometimes excluded from the fits since the line-profile features they accounted for were extremely faint relative to the continuum.

For the emission lines that were fitted, including the transauroral [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4068,4076 and [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319,7331 doublets, it was found that the [OIII] models describe their profiles well in all cases. In contrast, it was found that the [OIII] models do not describe emission lines in the NIR arm well, such as [FeII]λ12570, [FeII]λ16400, H$_2\lambda$21218, Paβ, Brγ and HeIλ10830. This is likely a result of the lack of stellar continua subtraction for the NIR data, which is due to the limited wavelength range of the STARLIGHT fits (3220–8000 Å), the lower cosmetic quality of the NIR spectra, and the difficulty in exactly matching the NIR apertures to the UVB+VIS apertures spatially. Therefore, each line in the NIR arm was fitted independently.

---

[4] When fitting the [OIII] models to other lines, the centroid wavelength of the brightest narrow component was allowed to vary by ±1 Å in order to provide a better fit within the limit of the $\Delta\lambda = 1$ Å resampling.

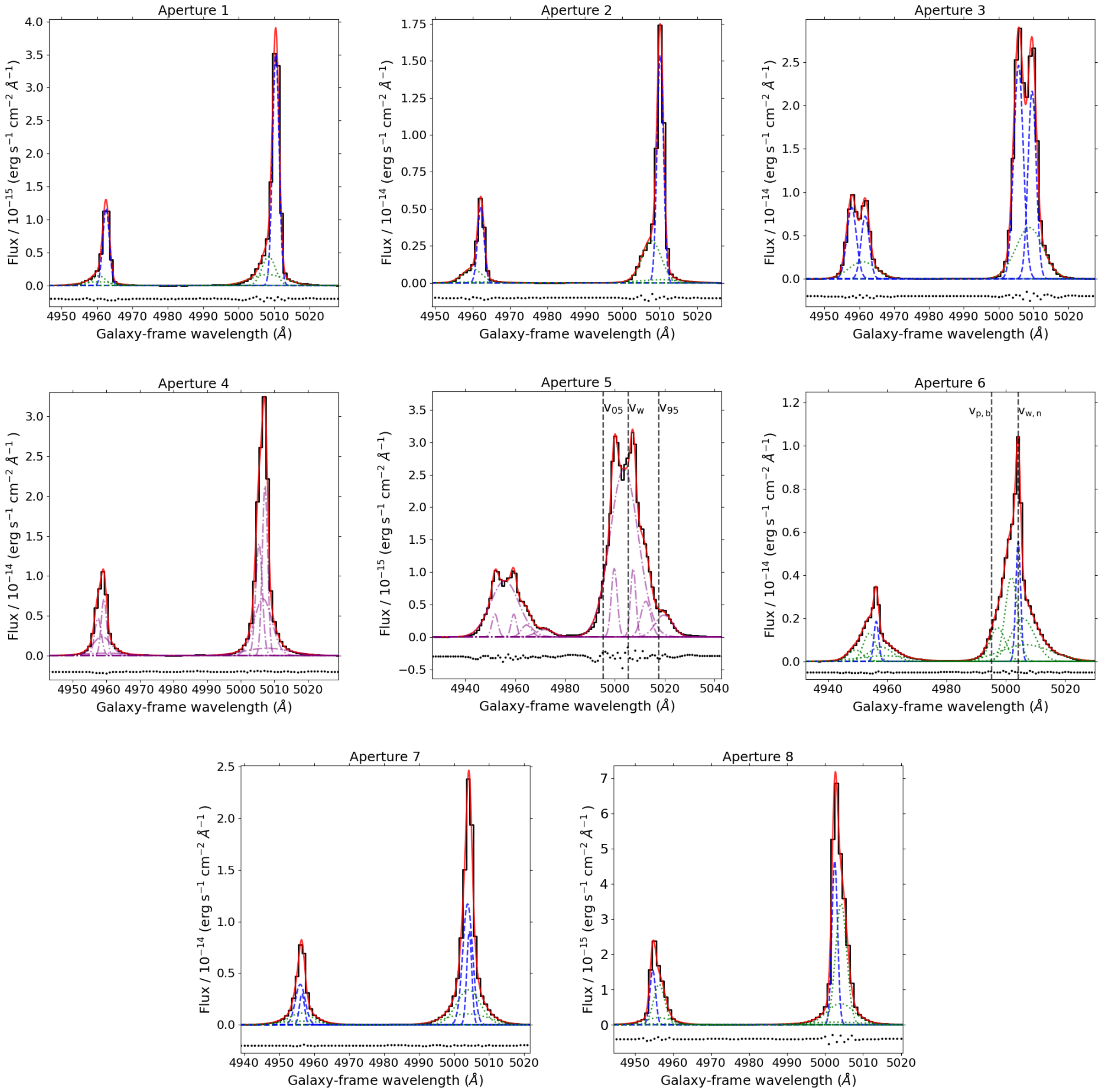


Figure 2.4: [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 rest-frame line profiles and models for the apertures covering the inner regions of IC 5063. The observed line profiles are shown in black, the overall fits to the profiles are shown as red solid lines, the Gaussian components comprising the total narrow component are shown as blue dashed lines, and the Gaussian components comprising the total broad component are shown as dotted green lines. Fitting residuals are shown as black dots below each line profile. In the cases of apertures 4 and 5, each Gaussian component is shown as a purple dash-dotted line, as there is no distinction made between broad and narrow. The wavelengths corresponding to the percentile (v_p; v_{05} and v_{95}) and the flux-weighted velocities (v_w) for Aperture 5 are shown as dashed grey lines. For Aperture 6, dashed grey lines mark the wavelengths of the percentile velocity of the broad component ($v_\mathrm{p,b}$) and flux-weighted velocity of the narrow component ($v_\mathrm{w,n}$) — these are used to calculate the outflow velocity (v_out = $v_\mathrm{p,b}$ - $v_\mathrm{w,n}$). Aperture 3 presents two clearly split narrow components, which are labelled 'Narrow 1' (red-most) and 'Narrow 2' (blue-most).

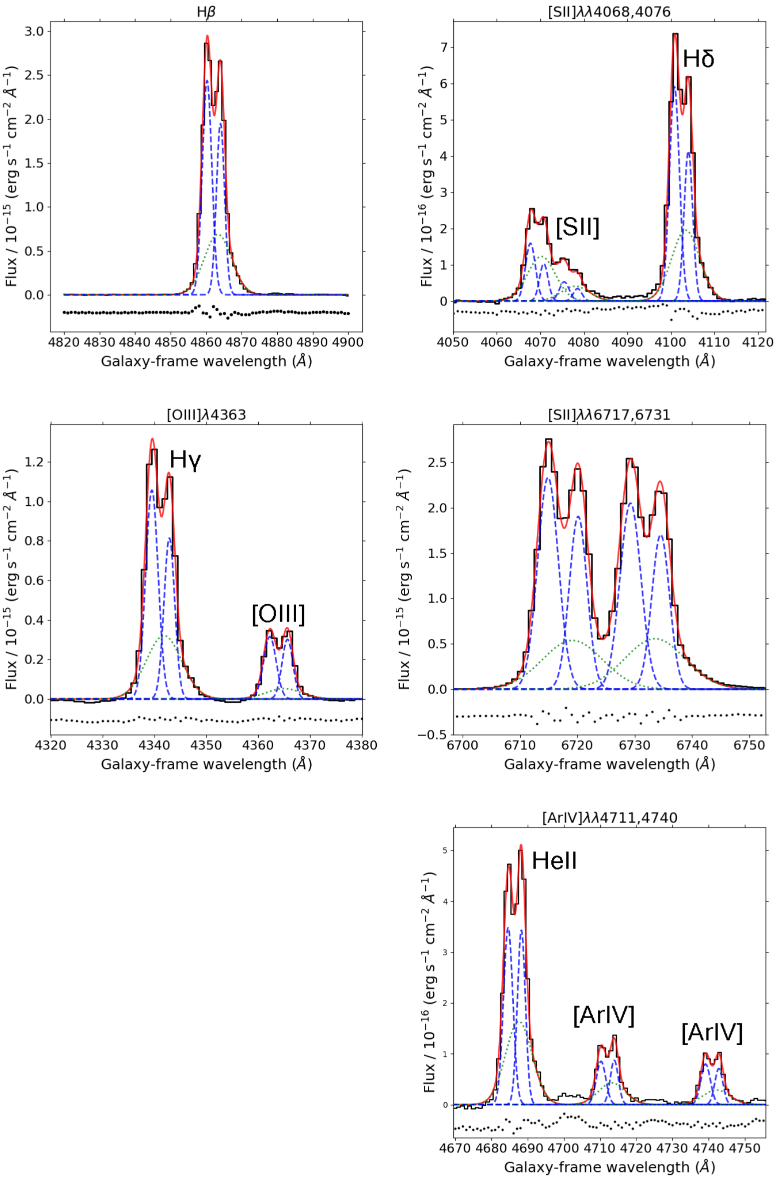


Figure 2.5: Fits to key diagnostic emission lines in Aperture 3 of the UVB+VIS spectra using the [OIII] model for Aperture 3 (shown in Figure 2.4). Where lines from multiple atoms are present, they are labelled by both atom and species. The diagnostic lines shown here are used in this chapter to derive key outflow properties.

2.3 Properties of the outflowing gas

2.3.1 Analysis of the UVB+VIS apertures

Velocity shifts and widths

The Doppler shifts and widths of broad and narrow components of the [OIII] models, relative to the lab wavelength[5] of [OIII]λ5007, were used to determine outflowing and quiescent (non-outflowing) gas kinematics. First, the instrumental broadening (as measured from the Galactic NaID lines) was subtracted from the width of each component in quadrature in order to produce the intrinsic line widths.

When deriving outflow kinematics, projection effects must be carefully considered (see Section 1.2.2). Therefore, two methods for estimating outflow velocity were used, giving 'minimal' and 'maximal' velocities, following the methodology presented by Rose et al. (2018). The first approach was to calculate flux-weighted mean velocity shifts and widths — this was done for the total broad and narrow components by weighting the centroid velocities and FWHM of each constituent Gaussian component by its total flux:

$$v_{\mathrm{w}} = \frac{\Sigma_i (F_i \times v_i)}{\Sigma_i F_i}, \text{ and} \tag{2.1}$$

$$\mathrm{FWHM_w} = \frac{\Sigma_i (F_i \times \mathrm{FWHM_i})}{\Sigma_i F_i}, \tag{2.2}$$

where F_{i}, $\mathrm{FWHM_i}$ and v_{i} are the fluxes, FWHMs and velocity shifts of the constituent Gaussian components, respectively. Velocity shifts were calculated using the wavelength shifts of a given centroid to the lab wavelength of [OIII]λ5007; for the broad components, this is likely to underestimate true outflow velocities.

Percentile velocities were also derived by using the far wings of the broad-component profiles, as described in Section 1.2.2. Here, it is assumed that all line broadening is due to different projections of velocity vectors along the line of sight, rather than intrinsic velocity dispersion in the gas in each volume element. In this case, the extended velocity wings represent gas moving directly along the line of sight, and potentially give a better estimate of the true outflow velocity. Therefore, velocity widths are not reported in this case. Percentile velocity shifts were determined for the broad components using the wavelength which contains either 5 or 95 per cent of the total flux of the line profile relative to the lab wavelength of [OIII]λ5007 (whichever velocity was greater, to ensure that outflow kinematics were not underestimated). Velocities derived in this way are labelled v_{p}. As an example, in Figure 2.4 both the percentile (v_{p}) and flux-weighted (v_{w}) velocity for the [OIII] profile of Aperture 5 are shown.

---

[5] Note that the Xshooter spectra were de-redshifted, as described in Section 2.2.3.

Component	Distance (arcsec)	Distance (kpc)	$v_{\rm p}$ (km s^{-1})	$v_{\rm w}$ (km s^{-1})	FWHM$_{\rm w}$ (km s^{-1})	$v_{\rm out}$ (km s^{-1})
AP1 Narrow	-4.72	-1.09	—	218±5	120±3	
AP2 Narrow	-3.44	-0.79	—	197±3	110±2	
AP3 Narrow 1	-1.84	-0.43	—	166±3	158±4	
AP3 Narrow 2	-1.84	-0.43	-202±2	-68±1	187±3	-233±4[a]
AP3 Broad	-1.84	-0.43	507±23	121±8	549±36	341±23
AP4 Total	0	0	264±41	-7±2	296±16	
AP5 Total	1.36	0.31	-699±173	-102±8	670±27	-699±173[b]
AP6 Narrow	2.08	0.48	—	-193±4	102±4	
AP6 Broad	2.08	0.48	-714±156	-198±15	614±58	-521±156
AP7 Narrow	3.04	0.70	—	-166±4	163±4	
AP7 Broad	3.04	0.70	-624±85	-166±13	627±57	-457±85
AP8 Narrow	4.48	1.03	—	-197±17	157±18	

[a] calculated using the flux-weighted velocities ($v_{\rm w}$) for AP3 Narrow 1 (quiescent gas) and AP3 Narrow 2 (in/out-flowing gas).
[b] the same as the percentile velocity ($v_{\rm p}$) since there is no corresponding narrow component.

Table 2.2: The kinematics for the broad and narrow components in each aperture, including the percentile velocities ($v_{\rm p}$; the velocity that contains 5 or 95 per cent of the flux of the emission-line profile), flux-weighted velocities ($v_{\rm w}$; determining used flux-weighted velocity averages), and corresponding flux-weighted velocity widths (FWHM$_{\rm w}$). The outflow velocity ($v_{\rm out}$) is taken to be the difference between the percentile velocity of the outflowing broad components and the flux-weighted velocity of the quiescent narrow components at each position. The distances from the centre of Aperture 4 (the nucleus) to the centre of the aperture for each component are also given in both arcseconds and kpc. For Aperture 3, 'Narrow 1' and 'Narrow 2' denote the two narrow components of the split line profile (see Figure 2.4), with 'Narrow 2' being the blue-most narrow component

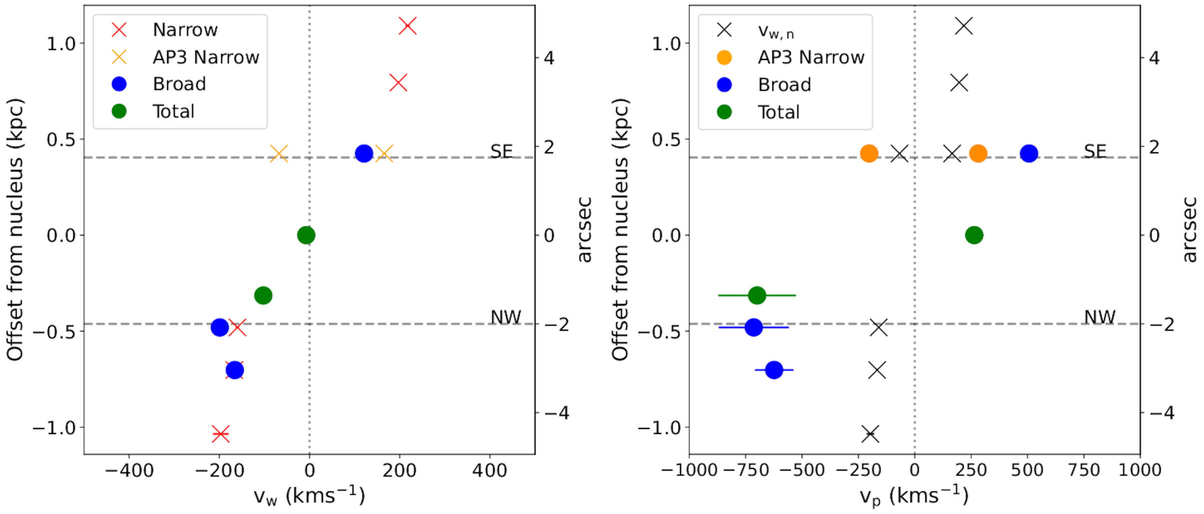


Figure 2.6: Velocity shifts for narrow (red crosses), broad (blue circles), and total (green circles) kinematic components in each aperture, shown spatially across the radio structure of IC 5063. The split narrow components in Aperture 3 are shown in orange. The spatial position of each component corresponds to the centre of the aperture in which it was measured. **Left**: flux-weighted velocities of the narrow and broad components — the narrow components are taken to represent the galaxy's quiescent rotating gas disk. **Right**: percentile velocity shifts (v_p) for the broad components, taken to represent outflowing gas, compared with the flux-weighted velocities of the narrow components ($v_{w,n}$, shown for reference as black crosses). The dashed grey lines mark the centroids of the NW and SE radio lobes, measured from 24.8 GHz continuum imaging presented by Morganti et al. (2007). A velocity shift of zero relative to the galaxy's rest frame is marked with a grey dotted line.

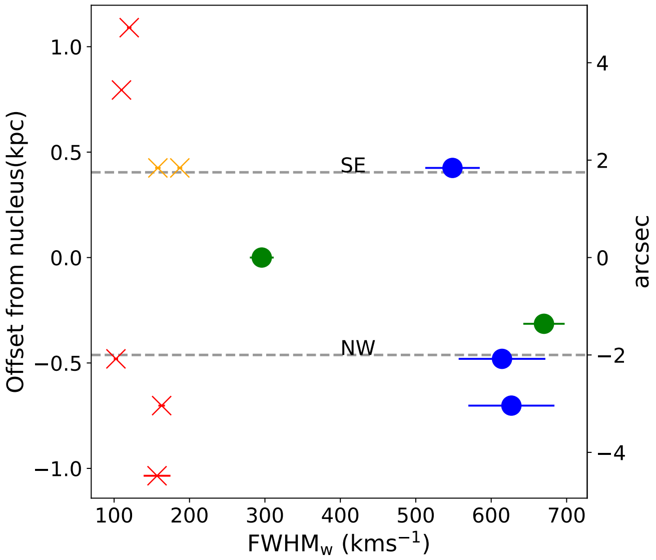


Figure 2.7: Flux-weighted velocity widths ($\mathrm{FWHM_w}$) as determined in the minimal velocity case, in which the measured velocity widths are assumed to be entirely due to local velocity dispersion within the outflow. The colour and marker scheme and dashed lines are the same as in Figure 2.6.

Figure 2.6 shows a position-velocity (PV) diagram of the percentile (v_{p}) and flux-weighted (v_{w}) velocity shifts, as measured in each aperture, and Figure 2.7 shows the flux-weighted velocity widths. In the flux-weighted case (v_{w}; right panel of Figure 2.6), the velocity shifts of the narrow components (with the exception of the blue-most narrow component in Aperture 3) appear to follow a rotation curve of amplitude ± 218 km s^{-1}, corresponding to the rotational motion of the galaxy's disk (as seen in HI 21 cm and CO observations: Morganti et al. 1998, 2015; Oosterloo et al. 2017). Deviations from this rotation curve can be seen in the percentile velocity shifts of the broad components and the total line profile in Aperture 5 (which is dominated by broad components), indicating that the broad components represent outflowing gas. Interestingly, this deviation is not seen in the flux-weighted case, indicating that the outflows are kinematically symmetric relative to the disk rotation.

One of the narrow components observed in the line profile of Aperture 3 ('AP3 Narrow 2') shows significant deviation ($v \sim 350$ km s^{-1}) from the rotation curve, indicating that it is a distinct kinematic component which may represent outflowing or inflowing gas.

From these kinematics, the broad components in apertures 3, 6 and 7, along with the 'AP3 Narrow 2' component and the total line profile of Aperture 5, are taken to represent outflowing gas. Note that the broad components in apertures 1, 2 and 8 are most likely due to spill-over from the broad profiles in the central apertures due to the beam-smearing effect of atmospheric seeing — not locally outflowing gas — and as such are not considered to represent outflows at these locations. Since the kinematics of the narrow components are consistent with quiescent gas in a rotating disk, the outflow velocity in each aperture was thus taken to be the difference between the percentile velocity (v_{p}) of the broad component (outflow) and the flux-weighted velocity (v_{w}) of the narrow component (quiescent) — an example of this for Aperture 6 is shown in Figure 2.4. For Aperture 5, where the majority of the components are broad and the narrow components (representing emission from the rotating disk) are heavily blended, the outflow velocity is taken to be the percentile velocity. The derived flux-weighted, percentile, and outflow velocities (in addition to the velocity widths) are given in Table 2.2.

Spatial distributions and kinematics of optical diagnostic lines

Previous studies that make use of the transauroral lines to derive electron densities have been spatially unresolved (e.g. Holt et al. 2011; Rose et al. 2018; Santoro et al. 2018; Spence et al. 2018; Santoro et al. 2020; Davies et al. 2020), and it has not yet been verified that the transauroral lines are emitted by the same clouds as other key diagnostic lines such as [OIII]λ5007 and Hβ (see discussion in Section 1.2.1). However, from the Xshooter spectra presented here, it is found that the [OIII] models provide good fits to the lines used in this analysis, including the transauroral [SII] and [OII] doublets (Figure 2.5). This

Emission Line	Centroid (pixels)	Centroid (arcsec)
[OIII]λ5007	12.3±0.1	1.97±0.02
Hβ	12.5±0.1	2.00±0.02
[OII]λ7319	11.9±0.1	1.90±0.02
[SII]λ4069	12.0±0.1	1.92±0.02

Table 2.3: Centroids of Gaussian fits to spatial slices between $-600 < v < -400$ km s^{-1} of the transauroral [OII] and [SII] emission lines, along with Hβ and [OIII]λ5007 (shown in Figure 2.8), relative to the spatial position of the continuum centre.

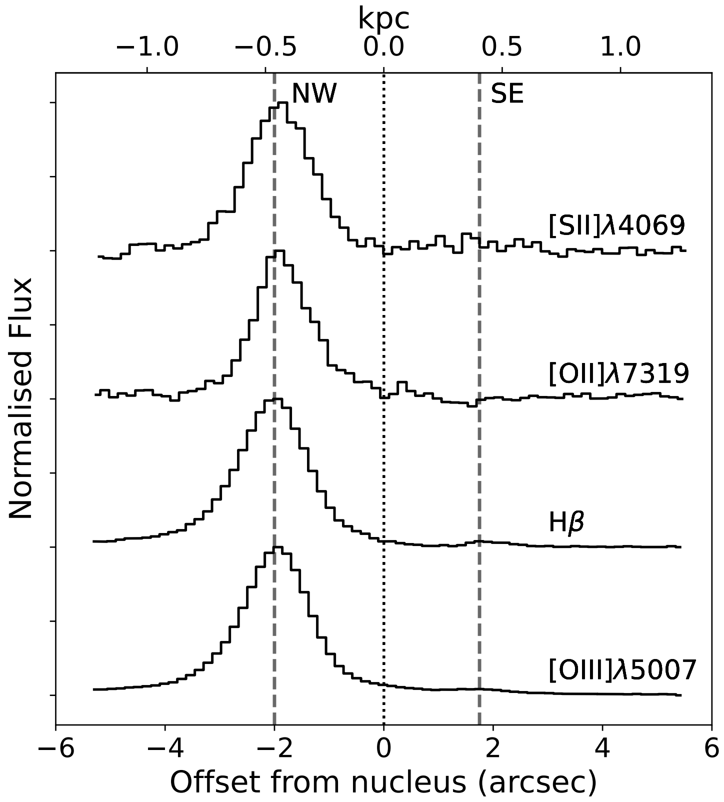


Figure 2.8: Spatial distributions of the blue wings ($-600 < v < -400$ km s^{-1}) of the transauroral [SII] and [OII] lines, Hβ, and [OIII]λ5007 emission lines. The spatial flux distribution of the transauroral lines can be seen to closely follow those of [OIII] and Hβ. The dotted line shows the position of the nucleus, and the dashed lines show the positions of the centroids of the NW and SE radio lobes, as measured from 24.8 GHz imaging presented by Morganti et al. (2007).

demonstrates that these lines have similar profiles and thus similar kinematics, potentially indicating that they are emitted by the same cloud systems. To verify this, spatial slices of the blue wings of several key emission lines in the velocity range $-600 < v < -400$ km s^{-1} were extracted from the two-dimensional spectra, avoiding any narrow components of the line profiles. Slices of continuum emission were also extracted, free from any emission lines, both blue-ward and red-ward of each emission line with slice widths of 20 Å. The two continuum slices were added and scaled to account for the different number of pixel columns extracted from the blue wing of each line — the average continuum slice was then subtracted from the blue wing. The spatial position of the nucleus at the wavelength of each line was determined using Gaussian fits to the continuum spatial slices, and the peak positions of the extended emission line structures were then measured relative to this estimated nucleus position using Gaussian fits. Spatial flux distributions produced in this way are presented in Figure 2.8, and the peak centroid positions of the extended line emission from the Gaussian fits are given in Table 2.3.

From this analysis, it can be seen that the spatial flux profiles for the transauroral [OII] and [SII] lines are similar to those of the [OIII]λ5007 and Hβ lines. Furthermore, the values of the fitted Gaussian centroids for the peak of each line are consistent within 0.6 pixels, a remarkable result given the known uncertainties from the Gaussian fitting process and the unknown systematic uncertainties from the continuum subtraction process, which will affect the lower-flux transauroral lines more than the brighter [OIII] and Hβ lines. In addition to the [OIII] models fitting the transauroral-line profiles well, this is taken as evidence that the transauroral lines are emitted in the same spatial locations as other key diagnostic lines. However, the possibility of the lines being emitted by different clouds within the same spatial apertures cannot be entirely ruled out.

Transauroral-line diagnostics

The high spectral resolution and wide wavelength coverage of the Xshooter observations allow the use of a technique first presented by Holt et al. (2011), which employs the traditional and transauroral [OII] and [SII] lines to simultaneously derive values for electron density and reddening. This is done by comparing the following emission-line-flux ratios to those expected from photoionisation modelling:

$$TR([OII]) = F(3726 + 3729)/F(7319 + 7331),$$
$$TR([SII]) = F(4068 + 4076)/F(6717 + 6731).$$

A major advantage of this technique is that the *total* line fluxes of the doublets are used for the ratios, instead of the flux ratios of lines *within* the doublets (as is the case for traditional techniques of electron-density estimation) which are sensitive to blending effects at larger line widths. The [OIII] models were used as bases for the fits to the lines involved in the TR([OII]) and TR([SII]) ratios. In order to avoid additional issues due to degeneracy and blending owing to the complex kinematics, further constraints to the fits for a given kinematic component were applied in several ways. First, the widths of lines in a doublet were forced to be equal, and the wavelength separations between them were set to be those defined by atomic physics. Second, the intensity ratios of doublet lines were constrained in the following ways in order to ensure that the fits were not unphysical.

- The ratios of the [OII]$\lambda\lambda$3726,3729, [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4049,4076, and [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 doublets were forced to be within the range of their theoretical values (Osterbrock & Ferland, 2006; Rose et al., 2018); if a measured intensity ratio was above or below this permitted range, it was forced to be the maximum or minimum allowed theoretical value, respectively.
- The intensity ratio of the [OII](7319/7330) ratio was set to be 1.24 because this ratio does not vary with density (Rose et al., 2018). Note that this doublet is actually two distinct doublets ([OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319,7320 and [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7330,7331); however, here they are modelled as single lines because their separation ($\sim$1 Å) is much lower than the widths of the narrowest kinematic components of the [OIII] models. Note that, while no broadening correction was made to account for the closely-spaced doublets, the [OIII] models still provided robust descriptions of the line profiles when considered as single lines (Figure 2.5).

The CLOUDY photoionisation code (version C17.02: Ferland et al. 2017) was used to create single-slab, plane-parallel, radiation-bounded, and solar-composition models of photo-ionised gas with no dust depletion. The central photoionising continuum followed a power-law of shape $F_v \propto v^{-\alpha}$ between 10 µm and 50 keV, with a spectral index of $\alpha = 1.5$. This is close to the average optical-to-X-ray spectral index measured in radio-quiet AGN (Zamorani et al., 1981; Miller et al., 2011), and is consistent with photoionisation modelling of the emission-line ratios of the extended and nuclear NLRs in various samples of AGN (e.g. Ferland & Netzer 1983, Robinson et al. 1987). Ionisation parameters (U) were estimated for each aperture using estimated [OIII]/Hβ and [NII]/Hα line ratios with the relation presented by Baron & Netzer (2019b): the resulting ionisation parameters were in the range $-2.90 < \log U < -2.45$. Therefore, $\log U = -2.75$ was chosen for use in the CLOUDY models. The electron density of the modelled gas was varied by 0.1 dex steps in the range $2.0 < \log_{10}(n_{\rm e}\ [\rm cm^{-3}]) < 5.0$, and the CCM89 reddening law was used with $R_{\rm v} = 3.1$ to redden these simulated TR ratios in order to create a grid with varying electron density and reddening. The resulting grid, along with the measured TR ratios in each aperture, is shown in Figure 2.9, and the densities derived from this method are presented in Table 2.4. I note that these values were determined using a finer grid than is shown in Figure 2.9.

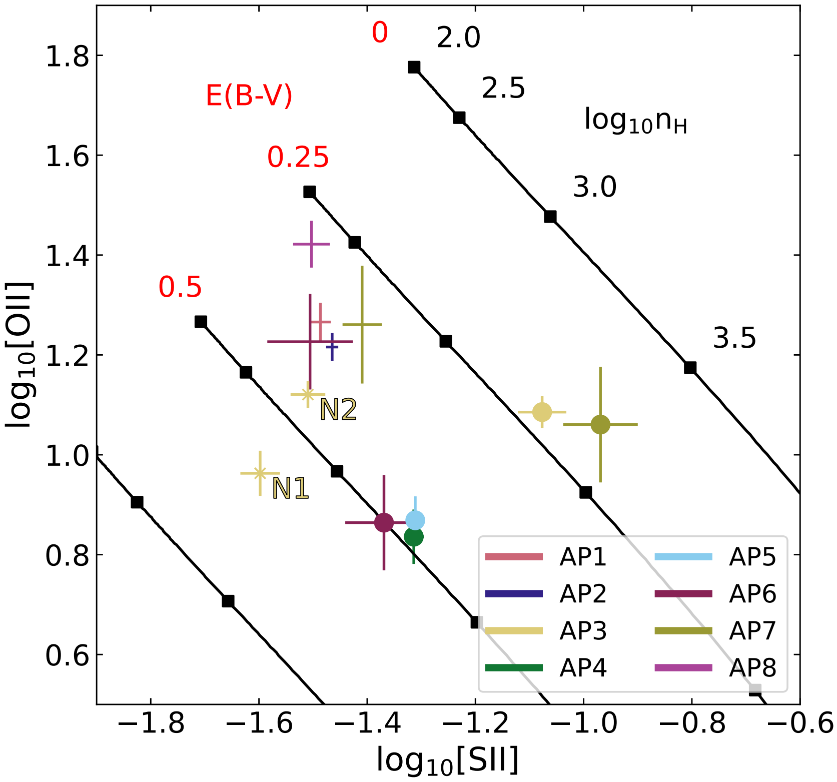


Figure 2.9: $\log_{10}$ values of TR line ratios measured for the total narrow (crosses) and broad (circles) components in each aperture. Values for the total line profiles, as measured in apertures 4 and 5, are also shown as circles. The two narrow components in Aperture 3 are marked as 'N1' and 'N2'. Overlaid is a grid of simulated TR line ratios created using the CLOUDY photoionisation code (version C17.02, Ferland et al. 2017) for different values of electron density and reddened using the CCM89 reddening law, indicated by the joined series of black squares.

Using the transauroral line ratios, it is found that the broad components have significantly higher ($> 3\sigma$) electron densities ($3.17 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 3.43$) than the narrow components ($2.12 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 2.59$) in all apertures where both are measured. In apertures 4 and 5 (where total line fluxes were used), the measured electron densities are consistent with those of the broad components in other apertures. Furthermore, in apertures where only a narrow component is measured (apertures 1, 2 and 8), densities similar to those of the narrow components in other apertures are found. The reddenings that are derived from the transauroral lines are moderately high ($0.17 < \mathrm{E(B-V)}_{TR} < 0.51$), with no clear distinction between the values for narrow and broad components.

Note that the position of the TR line-ratio grid generated from photoionisation modelling potentially depends on the ionisation parameter, ionising continuum spectral index and metallicity used in the model. Santoro et al. (2020) show that varying the

Component	$\log_{10}(n_{\mathrm{e}}\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])$ (TR)	$\log_{10}(n_{\mathrm{e}}\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])$ ([OII])	$\log_{10}(n_{\mathrm{e}}\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])$ ([SII])	$\log_{10}(n_{\mathrm{e}}\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])$ ([ArIV])
AP1 Narrow	$2.53^{+0.06}_{-0.07}$	< 2.13	$1.97^{+0.08}_{-0.10}$	$3.70^{-0.27}_{+0.24}$
AP2 Narrow	$2.65^{+0.03}_{-0.04}$	$2.02^{+0.11}_{-0.14}$	< 2.15	< 3.71
AP3 Narrow 1	$2.59^{+0.05}_{-0.05}$	—	—	—
AP3 Narrow 2	$2.55^{+0.03}_{-0.03}$	—	—	—
AP3 Broad	$3.30^{+0.05}_{-0.05}$	—	$2.84^{+0.09}_{-0.09}$	—
AP4 Total	$3.25^{+0.05}_{-0.05}$	—	—	$3.79^{+0.18}_{-0.19}$
AP5 Total	$3.23^{+0.04}_{-0.05}$	—	—	< 5.97
AP6 Narrow	$2.55^{+0.16}_{-0.20}$	—	—	—
AP6 Broad	$3.17^{+0.09}_{-0.09}$	—	—	—
AP7 Narrow	$2.69^{+0.15}_{-0.19}$	—	—	—
AP7 Broad	$3.43^{+0.09}_{-0.09}$	—	—	—
AP8 Narrow	$2.12^{+0.14}_{-0.12}$	$2.07^{+0.11}_{-0.12}$	$2.02^{+0.14}_{-0.17}$	<4.03

Table 2.4: Electron density values determined using the TR, traditional, and [ArIV] line ratios for the gas in IC 5063. 3σ upper limits are shown where the measured line ratio was not 3σ from the lower or upper limit of the traditional line ratios. It was not possible to determine values for electron density using the traditional and [ArIV] line ratios in every aperture due to line blending and low signal relative to the continuum — these cases are marked with a dash. Distances for each aperture are given in the same convention as Table 2.2.

Component	$E(B-V)_{\mathrm{TR}}$	$E(B-V)_{\mathrm{H\gamma/H\beta}}$
AP1 Narrow	$0.37^{+0.02}_{-0.03}$	0.331±0.010
AP2 Narrow	$0.38^{+0.02}_{-0.02}$	0.311±0.007
AP3 Narrow 1	—	—
AP3 Narrow 2	—	—
AP3 Broad	$0.22^{+0.03}_{-0.03}$	0.215±0.017
AP4 Total	$0.48^{+0.03}_{-0.03}$	0.507±0.026
AP5 Total	$0.46^{+0.02}_{-0.02}$	0.342±0.019
AP6 Narrow	$0.40^{+0.05}_{-0.05}$	0.172±0.029
AP6 Broad	$0.50^{+0.06}_{-0.05}$	0.399±0.062
AP7 Narrow	$0.33^{+0.06}_{-0.07}$	0.265±0.016
AP7 Broad	$0.17^{+0.22}_{-0.07}$	0.270±0.037
AP8 Narrow	$0.30^{+0.03}_{-0.03}$	0.270±0.029

Table 2.5: Reddening values (E(B−V)) for the warm-ionised gas in each aperture, determined using both the transauroral-line-ratios (TR) and the $H\gamma/H\beta$ ratios with Case B recombination theory and the CCM89 reddening law.

ionisation parameter in the range $-3.8 < \log U < -2$ and gas metallicities in the range $0.5\ Z_{\odot} < Z < 2\ Z_{\odot}$ with different SED shapes can change the derived electron density values by 0.1–0.7 dex and reddening values by 0.1–0.2 mag. However, for lower density clouds ($n_e < 10^4$ cm^{-3}) such as those measured here, the effect of varying these parameters on the electron density is reduced to 0.1–0.3 dex. This corresponds to a maximum factor of two in derived electron density, which is much less than the potential order-of-magnitude inaccuracy incurred by using lower-critical-density diagnostics for higher-density clouds, as well as uncertainties associated with line blending within the traditional doublets.

Traditional-line-ratio electron densities

In addition to the electron densities determined using the transauroral technique, the traditional [OII](3726/3729) and [SII](6716/6731) emission line ratios and the higher-critical-density, higher-ionisation [ArIV](4711/4740) ratio were used to provide independent estimates of electron density, allowing the different techniques to be compared. The fluxes of the lines in each doublet were constrained using the [OIII] models, as shown in Figure 2.5. It was not possible to fit certain doublets in some apertures due to line blending, and, in the case of the [ArIV] doublet, the low fluxes of the lines relative to the underlying stellar continua. Therefore, derived densities are not reported for these cases.

In order to ensure that the electron densities derived from the traditional ratios were accurate, it was required that the measured line ratios were 3σ away from the theoretical lower and upper ratio limits (Osterbrock & Ferland 2006: $0.41 <$ [OII](3729/3726) < 1.50, $0.30 <$ [SII](6717/6731) < 1.45; Wang et al. 2004: $0.117 <$ [ArIV](4711/4740)< 1.50). In several cases, the measured line ratios did not meet this criterion, as they were within 3σ of the ratio limit corresponding to low densities — in this scenario, upper density limits were determined instead by using the value of the ratio that was 3σ away from the measured value.

Where it was possible to make robust measurements of these ratios, the FIVEL script (Shaw & Dufour, 1995) was used to calculate values for electron density. Doing so required an estimate of the electron temperature, which was determined for each component in each aperture using the [OIII](4959 + 5007)/4363 ratio (Section 2.3.1). The electron densities determined using all techniques discussed are shown in Table 2.4.

Unfortunately, it was only possible to measure densities using all diagnostic methods for the narrow components in apertures 1, 2 and 8. In Aperture 8, all density estimates are consistent within the uncertainties, however, this is not the case for apertures 1 and 2, in which the TR ratios produce densities that are higher than those derived from the traditional [SII] and [OII] ratios, but lower than those from the [ArIV] ratio.

Considering the broad components, a traditional ratio ([SII]) can only be used to adequately measure an electron density in Aperture 3, where the value is significantly lower ($> 3\sigma$) than the density found using the transauroral lines. The difference in the densities determined using the traditional ratio and the transauroral lines is approximately a factor of three in this case, and therefore Aperture 3 presents the best evidence for the TR lines producing higher densities than a traditional ratio for outflowing gas. In Aperture 4, the [ArIV] ratio gives a higher density than the TR lines, however, this difference is not significant to 3σ; likewise, the [ArIV] density is higher than the value produced by the transauroral lines in Aperture 5, however, it should be noted that this is an upper limit.

Recombination-line reddenings

Determining precise values for reddening at different spatial positions is crucial for properly correcting the luminosities of emission lines which are used to determine outflow properties. In order to compare reddening values found using the transauroral-line technique to a more commonly used method, values for E(B−V) using the Balmer decrement were also determined. This was done by comparing the observed line flux ratio of the Hγ and Hβ recombination lines to the intrinsic ratio expected from Case B recombination theory (Osterbrock & Ferland, 2006) and the CCM89 reddening law. The Hα/Hβ ratios were not used to derive reddening values due to degeneracy issues related to blending between Hα and the [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6583 doublet.

The results from the two methods of reddening estimation are shown in Table 2.5, and are shown plotted against each other in Figure 2.10. It is found that the transauroral-line method gives slightly higher values than using the Hγ/Hβ ratio, however, the two methods are consistent within 3σ for all apertures except 2 and 5 (Table 2.5); both methods give a range of $0.17 <$ E(B−V) < 0.51.

The Hγ/Hβ ratio can be sensitive to small errors in the subtraction of the underlying stellar continuum: Rose et al. (2018) show that a 10 per cent decrease in this ratio corresponds to a 60 per cent increase in the derived E(B−V) value. Therefore, while reddening values were derived using both the transauroral- and Balmer-line techniques for comparison, the values derived from the transauroral-line technique were used to de-redden the UVB+VIS spectra in all further analysis.

Electron temperatures and gas ionisation mechanisms

Emission lines resulting from forbidden transitions of the O^{+2} ion were used to determine electron temperatures — this served as an initial probe of the ionisation mechanism of the outflowing and quiescent warm-ionised gas, since shock-ionised gas is expected to have a higher electron temperature than gas photoionised by AGN (Fosbury et al., 1978; Villar-Martín et al., 1999). Note that the standard BPT diagrams were not used to investigate the ionisation mechanisms of the gas because the shock and photoionisation models overlap considerably in these diagrams (Section 1.2.4, Figure 1.11; Rodríguez Zaurín et al.

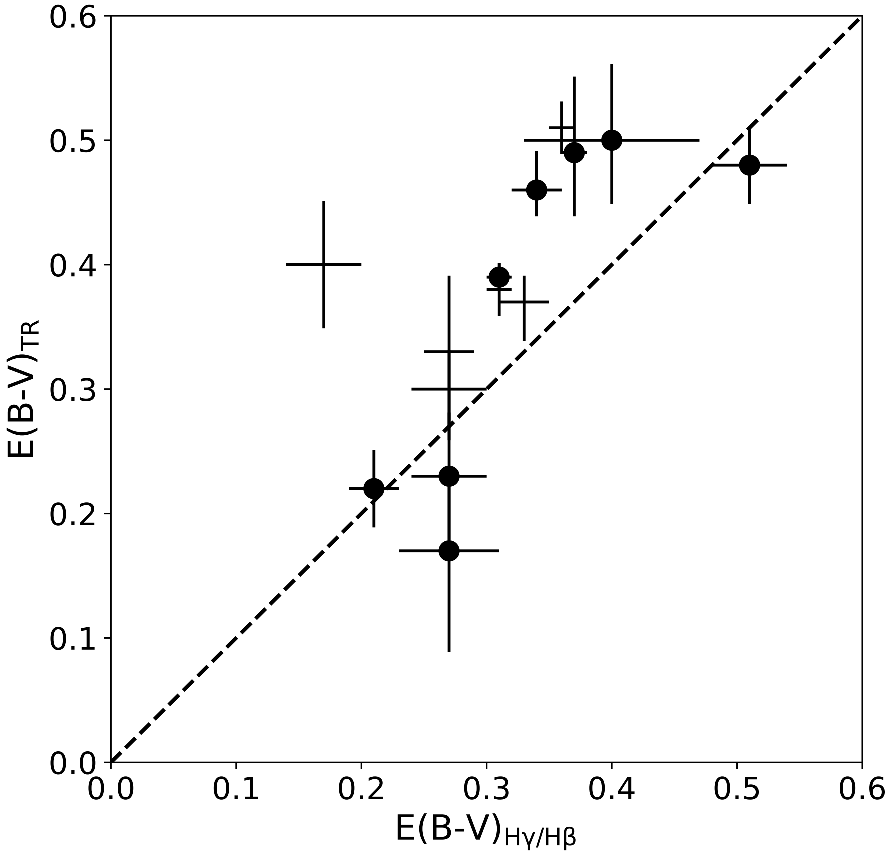


Figure 2.10: Reddening values derived from the Balmer decrement against values measured using the TR ratios. The black points represent the values measured in the various apertures and components, with broad components indicated by circles and narrow components by crosses, while the black dashed line shows the one-to-one relation.

2013; Santoro et al. 2018), and the line profiles of Hα and the [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6583 doublet are blended significantly in the apertures of interest. Electron temperatures were determined by using the extinction-corrected flux ratio [OIII](5007+4959)/4363 (using the [OIII] models to fit the lines) and transauroral-line-derived electron densities with the Lick Observatory FIVEL script. Values of electron temperature measured in this way for each kinematic component are presented in Table 2.6.

Using the [OIII](5007+4595)/4363 ratio, electron temperatures in the range $11500 < T_e < 14000$ K were found, with no clear distinction ($> 3\sigma$) between broad and narrow components except in Aperture 3, in which the two narrow components present higher electron temperatures than the broad component.

To facilitate further comparisons with AGN photoionisation and shock models, the [OIII](5007/4363) against HeIIλ4686/Hβ diagnostic diagram was produced (Figure 2.11). The advantage of this diagram is that, not only are the shock and AGN-photoionisation models more clearly separated than in BPT diagrams, but it allows determinations of the extent to which the presence of matter-bounded clouds may play a role (Villar-Martín

Component	Distance (arcsec)	Distance (kpc)	Temperature (K)
AP1 Narrow	-4.72	-1.21	11934^{+169}_{-207}
AP2 Narrow	-3.44	-0.88	13776^{+145}_{-96}
AP3 Narrow 1	-1.84	-0.47	14117^{+350}_{-293}
AP3 Narrow 2	-1.84	-0.47	13117^{+185}_{-228}
AP3 Broad	-1.84	-0.47	11564^{+204}_{-160}
AP4 Total	0	0	12578^{+44}_{-44}
AP5 Total	1.24	0.32	11810^{+208}_{-164}
AP6 Narrow	2.08	0.53	13921^{+802}_{-666}
AP6 Broad	2.08	0.53	12980^{+941}_{-664}
AP7 Narrow	3.04	0.78	11646^{+457}_{-401}
AP7 Broad	3.04	0.78	13680^{+586}_{-517}
AP8 Narrow	4.48	1.15	13537^{+287}_{-282}

Table 2.6: Electron temperatures of the gas for each component in each aperture, derived using the [OIII](5007+4959)/4363 line ratio. The distances for each aperture are the same as given in Table 2.2.

et al., 1999). The AGN-photoionisation models were those generated by CLOUDY, as described in Section 2.3.1, for a radiation-bounded, solar-composition (1 $Z_\odot$), dust-free gas with an electron density of $n_\mathrm{e} = 10^3$ cm^{-3} (based on the densities derived using the TR ratios) and a central ionising continuum that follows a power law of shape $F_\mathrm{v} \propto v^{-1.5}$. Note that the [OIII](5007/4363) and HeII4686/Hβ ratios depend on these parameters — the effects of varying them are quantified and discussed in Appendix A. The solar-composition shock models were taken from the library presented by Allen et al. (2008), which was created using the MAPPINGS III code. In Figure 2.11, measured line ratios are plotted on this diagram for each aperture in which outflows are detected, along with the modelled CLOUDY ratios for different ionisation parameters (in the range $-3.0 < \log U < -1.5$), and the pre-shock (precursor) and post-shock (pure-shock) models from MAPPINGS III for a pre-shock gas density of 100 cm^{-3}, magnetic fields of 1, 10 and 100 μG, and different shock velocities (ranging from 100–1000 km s^{-1}).

By comparing the measured line ratios to those from the AGN-photoionisation and shock models, it can be seen that AGN photoionisation is dominant for both the outflowing and non-outflowing gas along the radio axis of IC 5063. I highlight that, while pure AGN photoionisation requires a sub-solar metallicity ($\sim$0.5 $Z_\odot$) and higher ionisation parameters than are measured here to explain some of the measured ratios, a different assumed spectral index would also help improve consistency with the AGN photoionisation models (see Appendix A). Therefore, a plausible combination of these parameters exists that produces line ratios consistent with the measurements presented here. While some contribution from shocks cannot be ruled out, it should be noted that the [OIII](5007/4363) and HeIIλ4686/Hβ ratios do not discriminate between broad and narrow components in this case (unlike the case presented by Villar-Martín et al. 1999). Therefore, this is taken as evidence that both the quiescent and outflowing gas in the warm ionised phase are predominantly AGN-photoionised.

Moreover, moderate ($\sim$ 0.10–0.25) HeIIλ4686/Hβ ratios and low-to-moderate [OIII] temperatures ($60 <$ [OIII](5007/4363) < 120; $11500 < T < 14200$ K) are found for all components, both narrow and broad. These ratios rule out a major contribution from matter-bounded components (Binette et al., 1996).

Mass outflow rates and kinetic powers

In order to facilitate comparisons between the results presented here, models of galaxy evolution, and previous observations of the different gas phases in IC 5063, the derived properties of the outflows at different positions were used to derive mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies for the warm-ionised outflows along the radio axis of IC 5063.

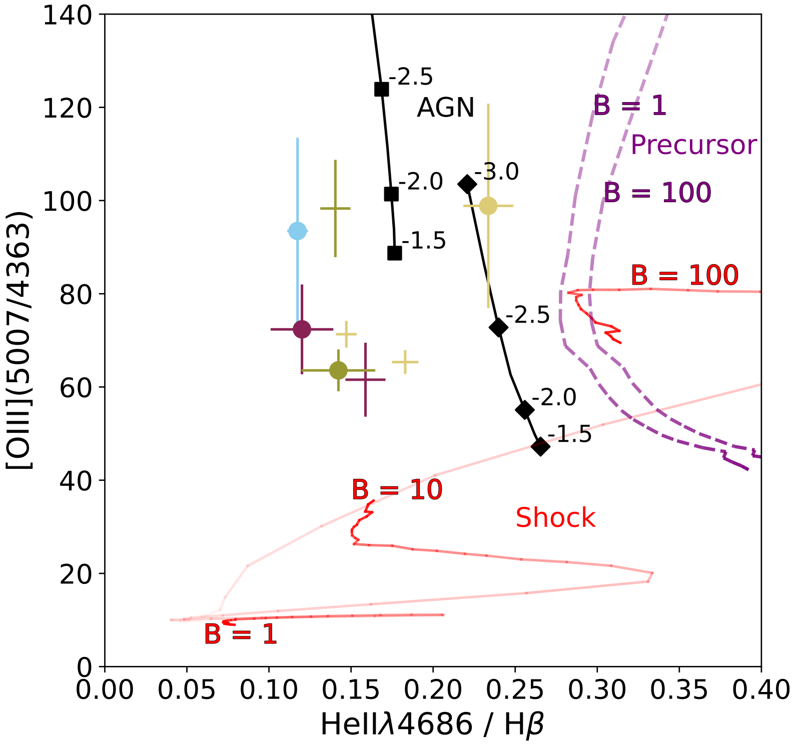


Figure 2.11: Measured HeIIλ4686/Hβ and [OIII](5007/4363) line ratios for the outflowing gas in the Xshooter apertures — the colour and marker scheme for each aperture is the same as in Figure 2.9. Also plotted are AGN photoionisation models (black markers and lines) for different ionisation parameters (labelled) and spectral indices (squares: $\alpha = 1.5$; diamonds: $\alpha = 1.0$) of solar composition (1 $Z_\odot$) gas of density $n_\mathrm{e} = 10^3$ cm^{-3}. Line ratios produced by shock-ionisation models taken from the MAPPINGS III library presented by Allen et al. (2008) for gas with a pre-shock electron density of 100 cm^{-3}, magnetic fields of 1, 10 and 100 μG, and shock velocities ranging from 100–1000 km s^{-1} are shown as purple dashed lines (pre-shock/precursor gas) and red solid lines (post-shock gas). Lower shock velocities are shown with fainter lines, and higher shock velocities are shown with darker lines.

The luminosities of the Hβ line for the broad component in each aperture were first calculated using

$$L(\mathrm{H}\beta) = F(\mathrm{H}\beta) \times 4\pi D_L^2, \tag{2.3}$$

where F(Hβ) is the reddening-corrected flux of the Hβ line (measured from Gaussian fits using the [OIII] models), and D_L is the luminosity distance of IC 5063.

These luminosities were then used to determine the mass of an outflow in a given aperture using Equation 1.3 with an assumed Case B recombination coefficient of $\alpha^{\mathrm{eff}}_{\mathrm{H}\beta} = 3.03 \times 10^{-14}$ cm^{-3} (for $n_e = 10^4$ cm^{-3} and $T_e = 10^4$ K) and electron densities derived from the TR ratios. Subsequently, the outflow masses derived in this way were used to produce mass outflow rate estimates for each aperture using Equation 1.4, where ΔR was taken

Component	$\dot{M}_{\rm out}$ (M$_{\odot}$yr^{-1})	$\dot{E}_{\rm kin}$ (erg s^{-1})	$\epsilon_{\rm f}$ (per cent)	$\epsilon'_{\rm f}$ (per cent)
AP3 Narrow 2	$1.2\pm0.1\times10^{-1}$	$2.0\pm0.2\times10^{39}$	$2.7\pm0.2\times10^{-4}$	$2.0\pm0.2\times10^{-3}$
AP3 Broad	$2.6\pm0.4\times10^{-2}$	$9.4\pm1.8\times10^{38}$	$1.2\pm0.2\times10^{-4}$	$9.4\pm1.8\times10^{-4}$
AP5 Total	$1.7\pm0.5\times10^{-1}$	$2.6\pm4.3\times10^{40}$	$3.4\pm1.9\times10^{-3}$	$2.6\pm1.5\times10^{-2}$
AP6 Broad	$1.8\pm0.7\times10^{-1}$	$1.6\pm1.1\times10^{40}$	$2.1\pm1.5\times10^{-3}$	$1.6\pm1.2\times10^{-2}$
AP7 Broad	$1.5\pm0.5\times10^{-2}$	$1.0\pm0.5\times10^{39}$	$1.3\pm0.6\times10^{-4}$	$1.0\pm0.5\times10^{-3}$

Table 2.7: Mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies for the kinematic components associated with an outflow. The coupling efficiencies presented here are calculated using the nuclear bolometric luminosity of IC 5063 given by Nicastro et al. (2003) ($\epsilon_{\rm f} = 7.6\times10^{44}$ erg s^{-1}), and for a jet power of P$_{\rm jet} = 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1} ($\epsilon'_{\rm f}$) as used in modelling by Mukherjee et al. (2018).

to be the width of a given aperture, and planar outflow geometry was assumed ($A = 1$). As discussed in Section 2.3.1, the outflow velocities ($v_{\rm out}$) were taken to be the difference between the percentile velocity ($v_{\rm p}$) of the broad component and the flux-weighted velocity ($v_{\rm w}$) of the narrow component in a given aperture (Table 2.2).

Kinetic powers were estimated by using these mass outflow rates and kinematics with Equation 1.5. I note that, since the outflow velocities were determined using percentile velocities (and it was assumed that the extremities of the emission-line wings represent the highest velocities along the LOS), the velocity width term of Equation 1.5 was not used (i.e. σ was set to be zero). Finally, the resulting outflow kinetic powers were then compared to AGN bolometric luminosity to give coupling efficiencies ($\epsilon_{\rm f}$) using Equation 1.2; the bolometric luminosity of IC 5063 was taken to be 7.6$\times10^{44}$ erg s^{-1} (Nicastro et al., 2003; Morganti et al., 2007). The resulting coupling efficiencies are presented in Figure 2.12 and Table 2.7.

Low mass outflow rates ($<$ 0.2 M$_{\odot}$ yr^{-1}) and coupling efficiencies ($\ll$ 0.5 per cent) are found in all apertures — much lower than those previously derived in some observational studies of samples of AGN (e.g. $\dot{M}_{\rm out}\sim$ 10–10,000 M$_{\odot}$yr^{-1}: Fiore et al. 2017) and those required in galaxy-evolution models ($\epsilon_{\rm f}\sim$ 0.5–10 per cent: e.g. Di Matteo et al. 2005; Hopkins & Elvis 2010). Furthermore, another set of coupling efficiencies was calculated (labelled $\epsilon'_{\rm f}$) by determining the ratio of outflow kinetic power to the minimal jet power used in modelling of the jet-ISM interactions in IC 5063 (P$_{\rm jet}$ = 10^{44} erg s^{-1}: Mukherjee et al. 2018). From this comparison, low values of $\epsilon'_{\rm f}$ ($<$ 0.001 per cent) were produced, indicating that the kinetic power of the outflows accounts for an extremely small fraction of the total jet power and thus demonstrating the feasibility of jet-ISM interactions being the outflow acceleration mechanism.

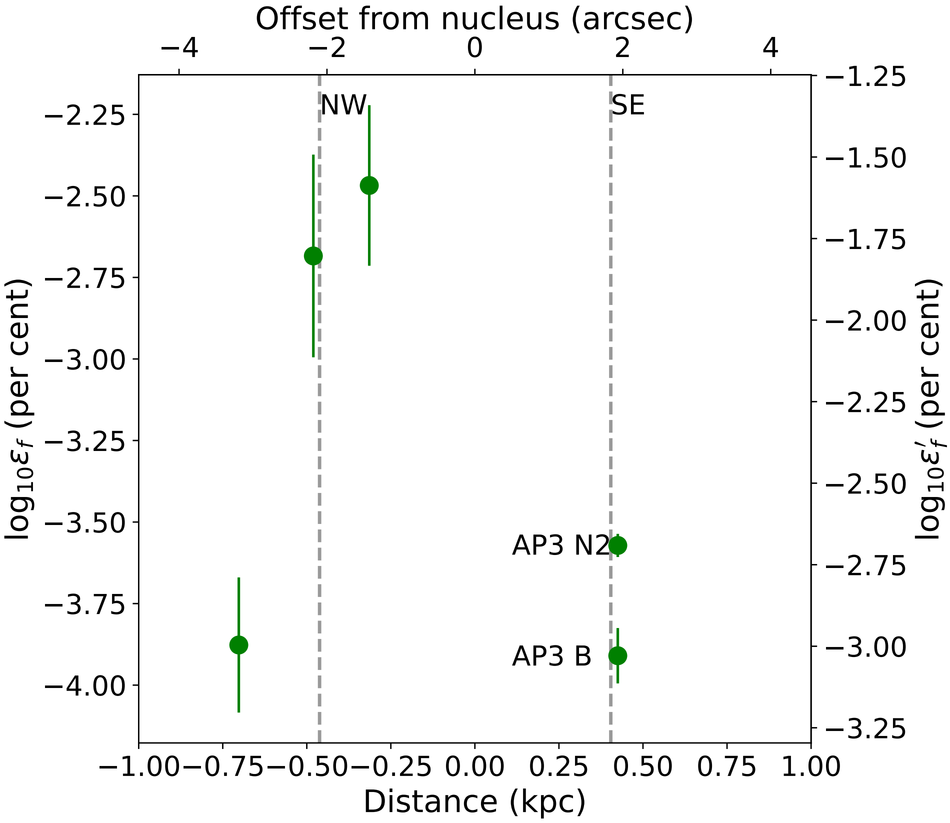


Figure 2.12: Percentage outflow coupling efficiencies in each aperture, calculated for two cases: using the nuclear bolometric luminosity of IC 5063 given by Nicastro et al. (2003) and Morganti et al. (2007) (ϵ_{f} = 7.6 × 10^{44} erg s^{-1}: left y-axis), and in the case that a jet of power $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{jet}} = 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1} (Mukherjee et al., 2018) is the main driving mechanism (ϵ'_{f}: right y-axis). The vertical dashed lines follow the same convention as Figure 2.6, and the two kinematically-blueshifted components found in Aperture 3 (AP3 Broad and AP3 Narrow 2) are labelled.

2.3.2 Analysis of the NIR apertures

In order to obtain independent information about the gas ionisation/excitation and, potentially, acceleration mechanisms, the NIR spectra of the Xshooter observations of IC 5063 were analysed separately.

First, it was found that the [OIII] models (Section 2.2.6) did not describe the NIR emission-line profiles well: in many cases, the profiles were visibly different to those found in the UVB and VIS arms. Moreover, lines corresponding to different ionisation states (e.g. [FeII] and Paβ) had differing line profiles within a given aperture. Therefore, unlike the UVB+VIS data, a line-profile model based on a single prominent emission line was not defined. Instead, each emission line was fit independently, and (as was done for the UVB+VIS spectra) Gaussian components were grouped into 'broad' (FWHM > 500 km s^{-1}) or 'narrow' (FWHM < 200 km s^{-1}) based on their line widths. Using the Gaussian fits produced in this way, the properties of several key, prominent emission lines in the NIR spectra were measured, namely [FeII]λ12570, [FeII]λ16400, Paβ, Brγ and HeIλ10830 — which trace the warm ionised phase — and $H_2$1–0S(1)λ21218, which traces the warm molecular phase.

The warm molecular gas phase

The $H_2\lambda$21218 emission line can be used to probe the warm molecular gas phase, and comparing its line profile to those of forbidden and recombination lines allows for an investigation of the different outflow phases present in each aperture (Tadhunter et al., 2014). Broad (FWHM ~ 500 km s^{-1}) components are seen in the $H_2\lambda$21218 profiles in all apertures where outflowing gas is detected in [OIII] emission (consistent with the NIR observations of Tadhunter et al. 2014). Interestingly, the blueshifted narrow component in Aperture 3 seen in the optical line profiles ('AP3 Narrow 2') is absent in the $H_2\lambda$21218 line profile (Figure 2.13), although it is present in the [FeII] and NIR recombination line profiles. This indicates that excited warm-molecular gas is not kinematically associated with the blueshifted component in Aperture 3.

Ionisation and excitation of the near-infrared [FeII], Paβ and H_2 lines

In order to supplement the investigation of the dominant outflow ionisation mechanism presented in Section 2.3.1, flux ratios of the [FeII]λ12570, [FeII]λ16400, and $H_2\lambda$21218 emission lines and NIR recombination lines (Rodríguez-Ardila et al., 2005; Riffel et al., 2013a; Colina et al., 2015; Riffel et al., 2021) were measured. In particular, I made use of the [FeII]λ12570/Paβ vs $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ diagnostic diagram (see discussion in Section 1.2.4) with the limits presented by Riffel et al. (2013a) and Riffel et al. (2021) that separate star-forming galaxies (SF), AGN and high line ratio (HLR) objects. The HLR region of the [FeII]λ12570/Paβ vs $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ diagram contains objects such as Su-

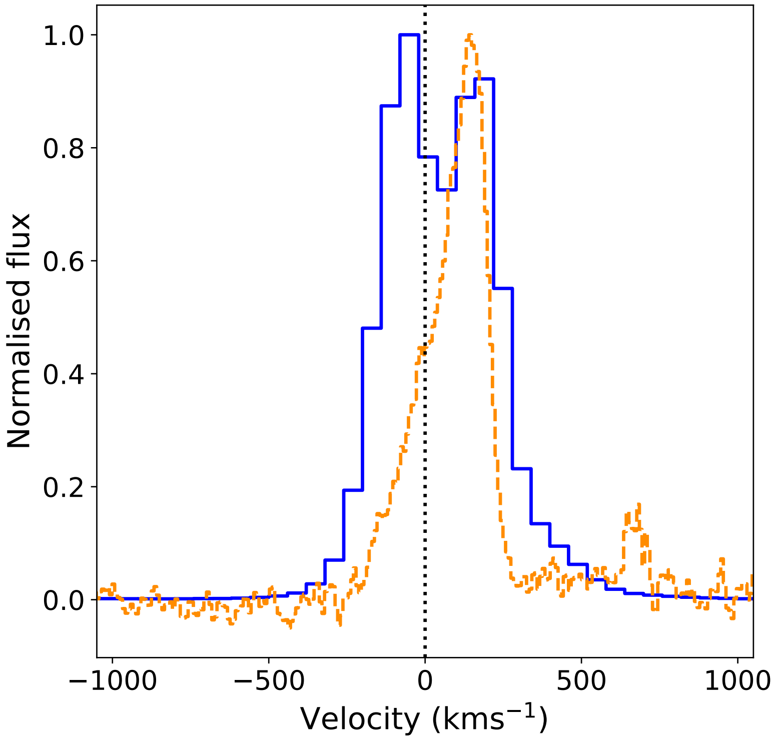


Figure 2.13: Velocity profiles for the [OIII]λ5007 (blue solid line) and $H_2$1–0S(1)λ21218 (orange dashed line) lines in Aperture 3. While a broad component — representing outflowing gas — is seen in both lines, the blueshifted narrow component seen in the [OIII] line profile ('AP3 Narrow 2'), emitted by the warm-ionised gas, is not present in the warm-molecular H_2 emission. Note that the [OIII]λ5007 line lies within the VIS Xshooter arm, and has been resampled to a wavelength step of 1Å/pixel.

pernova Remnants (SNRs) and Low Ionisation Nuclear-Emission line Regions (LINERs; Heckman 1980); objects for which photoionisation alone cannot explain the measured line ratios.

The line ratios of the different kinematic components in each aperture are shown plotted on this diagnostic diagram in Figure 2.14, and are listed in Table 2.8. It is striking that the broad components of the NIR emission line profiles have higher $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ ratios relative to the narrow components, with the broad components falling in the HLR region and the narrow components falling within the AGN region. Considering that the $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ ratio probes the excitation of the warm-molecular gas, this indicates that the narrow components of this phase are predominately AGN-excited, while the broad components have composite shock-AGN excitation. In contrast, there is no clear difference in the [FeII]λ12570/Paβ ratios of the broad and narrow components, indicating that the quiescent and outflowing warm-ionised gas is predominantly AGN-photoionised (consistent with the results of Section 2.3.1).

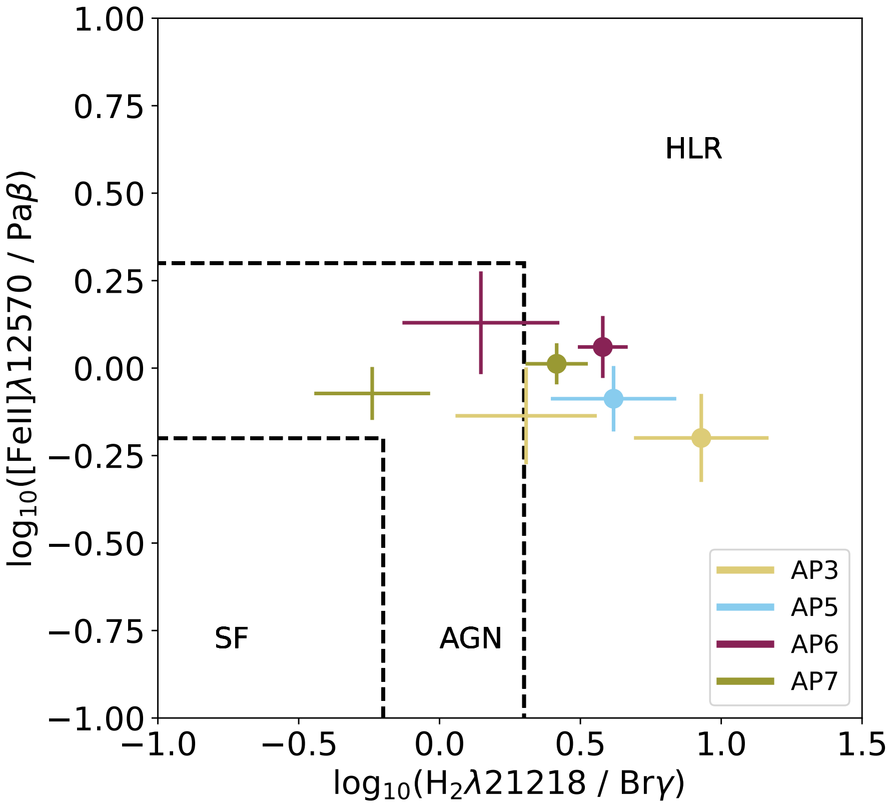


Figure 2.14: [FeII]λ12570/Paβ vs H$_2\lambda$21218/Brγ NIR diagnostic diagram for the warm-ionised and warm-molecular NLR gas in IC 5063 (crosses: narrow components; circles: broad components), with regions defined by Riffel et al. (2021): 'SF' denotes observed line ratios which are associated with ionisation/excitation from star formation; 'AGN' denotes line ratios which are associated with the central regions of AGN, and 'HLR' denotes values higher than those observed from AGN-photoionisation/excitation alone. It has been proposed that line ratios in the HLR region indicate a contribution from shock-excitation, either from supernovae (SNe) or jet-ISM interactions. For IC 5063, kinematic components associated with outflows fall within the HLR, with the quiescent components falling within the AGN region. The colour and marker scheme is the same as in Figure 2.9.

Component	$H_2\lambda21218/\mathrm{Br}\gamma$	$[\mathrm{FeII}]\lambda12570/\mathrm{Pa}\beta$	$[\mathrm{FeII}]\lambda16400/\mathrm{Br}\gamma$
AP3 Narrow 1	2.0±1.2	0.7±0.2	4.5±2.5
AP3 Broad	8.5±4.7	0.6±0.2	3.1±1.8
AP5 Total	4.2±2.1	0.8±0.2	5.8±3.2
AP6 Narrow	1.4±0.9	1.4±0.5	3.6±2.2
AP6 Broad	3.8±0.8	1.2±0.2	6.5±1.6
AP7 Narrow	0.6±0.3	0.9±0.2	5.3±1.3
AP7 Broad	2.6±0.7	1.0±0.1	4.1±1.2

Table 2.8: Ratios of NIR H_2 and [FeII] emission lines to recombination lines for the components that are taken to represent outflowing gas. These values are shown on the $[\mathrm{FeII}]\lambda12570/\mathrm{Pa}\beta$ vs $H_2\lambda21218/\mathrm{Br}\gamma$ diagnostic plot in Figure 2.14, which is used to investigate the excitation mechanisms of the outflowing gas.

2.4 Discussion

The results presented in Section 2.3 provide evidence for outflowing gas at the NW and SE radio lobes of IC 5063 — driven by jet-ISM interactions — in agreement with the findings of previous studies (e.g. Morganti et al. 2007; Tadhunter et al. 2014; Morganti et al. 2015). This section discusses the relationship between the different gas phases at the NW lobe in detail, investigates which outflow phase is dominant in terms of mass and kinetic power through comparison to previous observations, and proposes a physical relation between the different gas phases and components along the radio axis. Finally, the implications of these findings for the transauroral-line technique of deriving electron densities are discussed.

2.4.1 Placing the warm-ionised outflows at the NW lobe in a multi-phase context

Kinematics of the different gas phases

The [OIII] kinematics observed along the radio axis in IC 5063 are consistent with a combination of regular gravitational disk rotation (traced by the narrow components, with the exception of the 'Narrow 2' component in Aperture 3) and outflows of velocity $300 < v_{\text{out}} < 700$ km s^{-1} (traced by the broad components). As noted in previous work, the close association between highly-disturbed emission-line kinematics and the radio structure provides strong evidence that the warm-gas outflows are driven by the radio jet (e.g. Morganti et al. 2007, Tadhunter et al. 2014).

Kinematically, the results reported here for the warm ionised phase differ from what has previously been found for the cold-molecular gas. Here, extreme warm-ionised outflow kinematics are found at several positions along the radio axis, including the regions between the nucleus and the centroids of the radio lobes, whereas previous observations for the cold molecular phase — as traced by CO emission lines — find more extreme kinematics at the outer limit of NW lobe than elsewhere (Morganti et al., 2015; Oosterloo et al., 2017). In the two-dimensional Xshooter spectra for the warm-ionised gas (Figure 2.15), there are indeed high-velocity blue wings extending to $v \sim 1000$ km s^{-1} at the NW lobe, consistent with what is seen for the cold molecular phase. However, unlike the cold molecular phase, the warm-ionised gas profiles also have red wings extending to $v \sim 800$ km s^{-1} at the position of the SE lobe. Most strikingly, the most extended velocity wings of the warm ionised phase, redshifted up to a maximum velocity of $\sim$1500 km s^{-1} at zero intensity, are found at a location *between* the nucleus and the centroid of the NW lobe. The spatial centroid of this wing between $1000 < v < 1500$ km s^{-1}, as measured by Gaussian fits to the continuum-subtracted spatial flux profile (as in Section 2.3.1) of the

[NII]λ6583 line, lies 1.41 arcsec northwest of the continuum centroid, or ~0.6 arcseconds (0.14 kpc) closer to the nucleus than the centroid of the NW lobe.

The kinematics of the warm molecular phase, as traced with the $H_2\lambda21218$ emission, follow the warm-ionised kinematics. A blue velocity wing is seen to extend to $v \sim 1000$ km s^{-1} at the centroid of the NW lobe, and a red wing extends to $v > 1000$ km s^{-1} between this position and the nucleus (Figure 2.16). This feature may extend to higher velocities, potentially up to $v \sim 1500$ km s^{-1} (as seen in the warm-ionised gas), but blending with the continuum makes it difficult to determine the true velocity extent. These observed $H_2\lambda21218$ kinematics are also consistent with previous observations of the warm molecular phase by Tadhunter et al. (2014).

The kinematics observed in the warm ionised and molecular phases can be explained by an expanding hemispherical bow shock or bubble, the tip of which coincides with — or extends slightly beyond — the centroid of the NW lobe. Considering that this structure would be seen side-on, the highest velocity widths are expected closer to the nucleus than the centroid of the lobe due to projection effects (i.e. the gas moving along the observer's line of sight). This is consistent with the highest observed velocities being between the nucleus and the outer limit of the NW lobe. Likewise, lower projected velocities would be found at the centroid of the lobe (closer to the tip of the bow shock), as the outflowing gas there would be moving in a direction that is close to the plane of the sky. The Xshooter observations are also consistent with the kinematics seen in hydrodynamic modelling of IC 5063 for a jet of power $P_{\rm jet} = 10^{44-45}$ erg s^{-1} propagating through the disk, as presented by Mukherjee et al. (2018), where red- and blue-shifted line wings are seen at all locations where the radio source is interacting with the ISM in the galaxy's disk.

The difference in observed kinematics between the warm- and cold-molecular gas may be explained if the different molecular phases constitute a post-shock cooling sequence, as has been previously proposed to explain multi-phase outflow kinematics (see Section 1.2.1; Villar-Martín et al. 1999; Zubovas & King 2014; Tadhunter et al. 2014). In this scenario, the warm H_2 emission represents a transition phase, emitted as gas cools behind the shock through $T \sim 2000$ K, and has a constant mass and luminosity, assuming material passes through the shock at a constant rate. As the gas cools further, it enters the cold molecular phase, which emits the CO emission lines — this represents the end-state of the cooling sequence. Assuming that the conditions for cold-molecular gas formation are met, and the molecular gas is not destroyed by AGN radiation, the ratio of cold-molecular gas (traced by CO emission) to warm-molecular gas (traced by H_2 emission) will thus increase as a function of time. In this scenario, if the gas seen in projection in-between the nucleus and the maximum extent of the NW radio lobe has only just started to enter the shock, it is plausible that not enough gas has yet accumulated in the cold molecular phase to be detectable via its CO emission. In contrast, gas may have been entering the shock at the tip of the hemispherical bow shock (the maximum extent of the NW lobe) for longer,

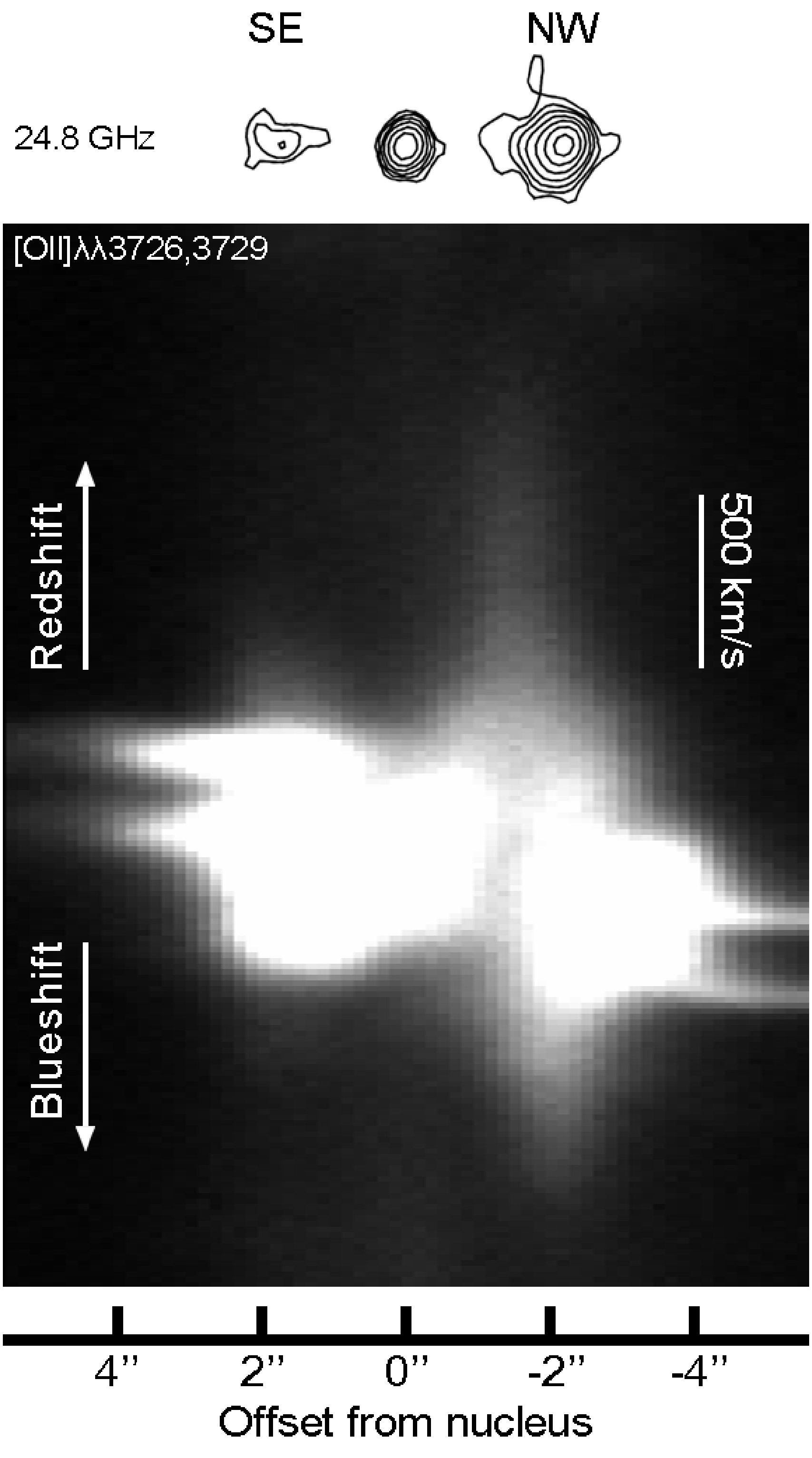


Figure 2.15: Two-dimensional position-velocity profile of the [OII]$\lambda\lambda$3726,3729 doublet. Here, the spatial direction is horizontal and the velocity (spectral) direction is vertical. Corresponding 24.8 GHz continuum imaging by Morganti et al. (2007) is shown above the profile, indicating the shape and extent of the radio structure. The velocity scale bar represents a shift of $v = 500$ km s^{-1}. Very broad velocity wings can be seen at several locations, including at the centroids of the SE and NW lobes, with the most extended being a $v \sim 1500$ km s^{-1} red wing between the nucleus and the centroid of the NW lobe.

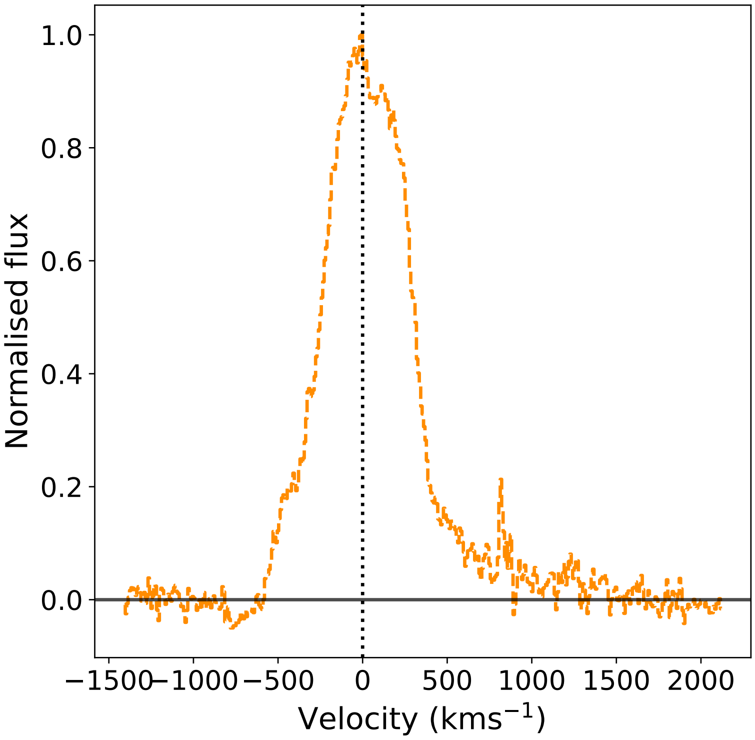


Figure 2.16: The velocity profile of the $H_2\lambda21218$ (dashed orange) line in the combined apertures 5 and 6, corresponding to the location between the nucleus and the outer extent of the NW radio lobe (Figure 2.2). The dotted black vertical line represents a velocity of 0 km s^{-1}, while the solid black horizontal line shows the continuum level. A red velocity wing extending to $v > 1000$ km s^{-1} can be seen, consistent with the kinematics of the warm ionised phase (Figure 2.15).

allowing more time for CO-emitting cold-molecular gas to accumulate. This would explain why disturbed kinematics are seen at the centroid of the NW radio lobe for all phases, but only the warmer phases show more extreme kinematics in between this location and the nucleus.

Energetics of the multi-phase outflows

In order to ensure that the mass outflow rates and kinetic powers of the previously-observed neutral atomic and cold molecular phases are consistent with the results presented here for the warm ionised phase — and to properly take into account results of the cold-molecular gas kinematics (Morganti et al., 2015; Oosterloo et al., 2017) — here, I recalculate values from past studies of IC 5063 with a consistent methodology.

First, the mass outflow rate of the neutral-atomic (HI) outflow at IC 5063's NW lobe was calculated using

$$\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 30 \cdot \frac{\Omega}{4\pi} \cdot \frac{r_*}{1~{\rm kpc}} \cdot \frac{N_{\rm H}}{10^{21}~{\rm cm}^{-2}} \cdot \frac{v_{\rm out}}{300} \tag{2.4}$$

from Morganti et al. (2005) (following the methodology given in Heckman 2002 and Rupke et al. 2002), where $N_{\rm H}$ is the column density of the gas and Ω is the solid angle through which the gas is flowing at a radius r_* with a velocity of $v_{\rm out}$. Using the values and assumptions given in Morganti et al. (2005) — namely that $\Omega = \pi$, $r_* = 0.4$ kpc, $N_{\rm H} = 10 \times 10^{21}$ cm^{-2}, and $v_{\rm out}$ = full width at zero intensity (FWZI)/2 = 350 km s^{-1} — a mass outflow rate of 35 M$_{\odot}$ yr^{-1} was determined.

An important assumption made here is that the gas is outflowing through a solid angle of π, which is highly uncertain. Moreover, taking $v_{\rm out}$ = FWZI/2 may underestimate the true outflow velocity in this case, since much of the blueshifted absorption in the HI 21 cm profile of the NW lobe in IC 5063 is concentrated close to the maximum blueshifted velocity (approximately $v = -700$ km s^{-1}), in contrast to the other objects considered by Morganti et al. (2005). Using $v_{\rm out}$ = 700 km s^{-1} rather than $v_{\rm out}$ = 350 km s^{-1} would result in a mass outflow rate that is a factor of two higher, and a coupling efficiency (see below) that is a factor of eight higher.

Next, the kinetic power of the HI outflow was calculated using the relation from Morganti et al. (2015):

$$\dot{E}_{\rm kin} = \frac{1}{2}\dot{M}_{\rm out}\left(v_{\rm out}^2 + \frac{v_{\rm turb}^2}{5.5}\right), \tag{2.5}$$

where $v_{\rm turb}^2$ is the velocity component representing the turbulence of the outflowing gas, taken in Morganti et al. (2015) to be the FWHM[6] of the CO(2-1) emission line that is associated with the outflow. Assuming that the CO and HI-emitting gas have similar kinematics, then $v_{\rm turb}$ = FWHM = 100 km s^{-1} (Morganti et al., 2015) is used along with the determined mass outflow rate calculated here ($\dot{M}_{\rm out}$ = 35 M$_{\odot}$ yr^{-1}) and the outflow velocity given by Morganti et al. (2005) ($v_{\rm out}$ = 350 km s^{-1}) — this results in a neutral HI outflow kinetic power of E$_{\rm kin}$ = 1.4×10^{42} erg s^{-1}. Comparing this to the estimated nuclear bolometric luminosity of IC 5063 (7.6×10^{44} erg s^{-1}: Nicastro et al. 2003; Morganti et al. 2007) using Equation 1.2, a coupling efficiency of $\epsilon_{\rm f}$ = 0.18 per cent is estimated for the neutral HI outflow at the NW radio lobe of IC 5063.

For the cold molecular phase, the estimated mass outflowing at the NW lobe was taken to be M$_{\rm out}$ = 1.3×10^6 M$_{\odot}$ (Oosterloo et al. 2017; assuming optically thin gas, an excitation temperature of $T_{\rm ex}$ = 29 K, and a CO-to-H$_2$ mass-conversion factor of $\alpha_{\rm CO}$ = 0.25 K km s^{-1} pc^2); the mass outflow rate was then calculated using a modified version of the relation given by Oosterloo et al. (2017) that is consistent with the method used in this chapter for the warm-ionised gas[7]

---

[6] Since the turbulence term in Equation 2.5 corresponds to the velocity dispersion (σ; see Equation 1.5), it is required that the FWHM value taken by Morganti et al. (2015) is divided by a factor of 5.5 ($\sigma^2 = ({\rm FWHM}/2.35)^2 \approx {\rm FWHM}^2/5.5$).

$$\dot{M}_{\rm out} = \frac{v_{\rm out} M_{\rm out}}{R}, \tag{2.6}$$

where R is the size of the outflow region. Taking $R = 0.5$ kpc, $v_{\rm out} = 300$ km s^{-1} (as in Oosterloo et al. 2017) and $M_{\rm out} = 1.3 \times 10^6$ M$_\odot$, a mass outflow rate of $\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 0.79$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1} is found.

Taking $\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 0.79$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}, $v_{\rm out} = 300$ km s^{-1}, and $v_{\rm turb}$ = FWHM = 100 km s^{-1} (Morganti et al., 2015), Equation 2.5 thus gives a kinetic power of 2.3×10^{40} erg s^{-1}. Subsequently, Equation 1.2 was used to calculate the coupling efficiency of the cold molecular phase to be $\epsilon_{\rm f} = 3.1 \times 10^{-3}$ per cent.

The true mass of the cold-molecular outflow is uncertain, and the value calculated here is likely a lower limit: the calculated outflow mass would be higher if the gas is assumed to be optically thick instead of optically thin. Assuming instead the highest excitation temperature observed by Oosterloo et al. (2017) ($T_{\rm ex} \sim 55$ K) would approximately double the estimated mass, and uncertainties regarding separating the outflowing and non-outflowing mass may mean that the true gas mass is a factor of a few higher than calculated here (see Oosterloo et al. 2017 for a detailed discussion).

Combining these results with those of the warm-ionised outflows presented in this chapter, outflow masses, mass outflow rates, and coupling efficiencies for the different outflow phases in IC 5063 are presented in Table 2.9; all coupling efficiencies ($\epsilon_{\rm f}$) have been calculated assuming a bolometric luminosity of $L_{\rm bol} = 7.6 \times 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1} (Nicastro et al., 2003; Morganti et al., 2007). The mass outflow rate derived for the warm-ionised gas at the NW lobe is higher than that for the warm-ionised gas found by Morganti et al. (2007) ($\dot{M}_{\rm ion} \sim 0.08$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}). This difference is likely due to the different outflow radii used: Morganti et al. (2007) used the distance of a given aperture from the nucleus (R) with Equation 1.4, whereas here the aperture width (ΔR) is instead used, which is smaller and thus produces higher outflow rates.

However, the derived mass outflow rates for the warm-ionised gas are still significantly lower than those of the neutral atomic (∼35 M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}) and cold molecular (∼0.8 M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}) phases. In addition, the coupling efficiency of the warm ionised phase ($\epsilon_{\rm f} = (2.7 \pm 1.7) \times 10^{-3}$ per cent) is much lower than that of the neutral atomic phase ($\epsilon_{\rm f} \approx 0.2$ per cent), but similar to that of the cold molecular phase ($\epsilon_{\rm f} \approx 3.1 \times 10^{-3}$ per cent), although as stated above, this is likely to be a lower limit. Overall, the mass and kinetic-power budgets of the outflows are dominated by the neutral phase, with the warm-ionised and cold-molecular gas making relatively minor contributions.

---

[7] The factor of three used by Oosterloo et al. (2017) is not used in mass outflow rate calculations of the warm ionised phase in this work, as this factor accounts for a spherical outflow geometry, which is not assumed here.

2.4.2 Outflow acceleration and ionisation/excitation mechanisms in IC 5063

Ionisation and excitation of the warm gas

If the outflows in IC 5063 are both accelerated and ionised by shocks induced by jet-ISM interactions, then it might be expected that the broad kinematic components would have higher electron temperatures than the quiescent narrow components (Fosbury et al., 1978; Villar-Martín et al., 1999). However, in this work, there is no clear evidence for higher electron temperatures associated with outflowing components (Table 2.6). Only Aperture 3 shows a significant ($> 3\sigma$) difference in temperature between kinematic components, with the broad component having a *lower* (instead of a higher) electron temperature. Furthermore, the electron temperatures measured for all components — probed with the [OIII](5007/4363) ratio — are consistent with pure AGN-photoionisation (Figure 2.11).

Further potential evidence regarding the natures of the ionisation/excitation mechanisms is provided by the [FeII]λ12570/Paβ vs $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ diagnostic diagram (Figure 2.14). The two ratios used in this diagram each probe a different gas phase: warm ionised and warm molecular, respectively. It is interesting that the measured values of the [FeII]λ12570/Paβ ratio are similar for the broad and narrow components — consistent with the [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeII4686/Hβ diagram (Figure 2.11) — indicating that both the quiescent and outflowing warm-ionised gas are predominantly AGN-photoionised (in agreement with the results of a previous investigation of the warm ionised-outflows in IC 5063 by Morganti et al. 2007). However, the $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ ratios, probing the excitation of the warm molecular phase, present a clear difference between broad and narrow components. Along this ratio axis, the quiescent gas falls within the region of the diagnostic diagram where AGN-photoexcitation is thought to be dominant (with perhaps some contribution from shocks: see Riffel et al. 2021), whereas the outflowing gas falls within the HLR region, within which AGN-photoexcitation alone cannot account for the high line ratios.

The physical relation between the different gas phases

Taken together, this investigation into the ionisation and excitation of the UVB+VIS and NIR lines in IC 5063 indicates that the quiescent and outflowing warm-ionised gas, along with the quiescent warm-molecular gas, are predominantly ionised/excited by the central AGN, while the outflowing warm-molecular gas has a significant contribution from shock excitation. This rules out the idea that only a post-shock cooling sequence is being

Phase	Location	M ($M_\odot$)	$\dot{M}_{\rm out}$ ($M_\odot$ yr^{-1})	$\epsilon_{\rm f}$ (per cent)	Reference
Warm ionised	NW Lobe	—	0.08	—	Morganti et al. (2007)
	Galaxy-wide [a]	$1.5^{+3.0}_{-0.9} \times 10^6$	—	—	Venturi et al. (2021)
	NW Lobe [b]	$(9.9\pm0.1) \times 10^4$	$(1.8\pm0.6) \times 10^{-1}$	$(2.7\pm1.7) \times 10^{-3}$	This work
	SE Lobe [c]	$(2.2\pm0.3) \times 10^4$	$(2.6\pm0.4) \times 10^{-2}$	$(1.2\pm0.2) \times 10^{-4}$	This work
Neutral HI	NW Lobe	—	3.5×10^1	1.8×10^{-1}	Morganti et al. (2005) [d]
Cold molecular	NW Lobe	1.3×10^6	7.9×10^{-1}	3.1×10^{-3}	Oosterloo et al. (2017) [d]

[a] For the gas with [OIII] W70 (85th minus 15th velocity percentile) > 300 km s^{-1} across all outflow regions.

[b] For the NW lobe, the outflow mass is the sum of the masses in apertures 5 and 6, whereas the mass outflow rate and coupling efficiency represent the average values for apertures 5 and 6 (see Table 2.7).

[c] Taken from the values for the broad component in Aperture 3.

[d] Values have been recalculated using consistent methodology with the values presented in Morganti et al. (2005) and Oosterloo et al. (2017), and are likely to be lower limits.

Table 2.9: Masses, mass outflow rates, and coupling efficiencies (for the nuclear bolometric case; see Section 2.3.1) for the different outflow phases in IC 5063, as reported in this work and recalculated using the results from previous observational studies.

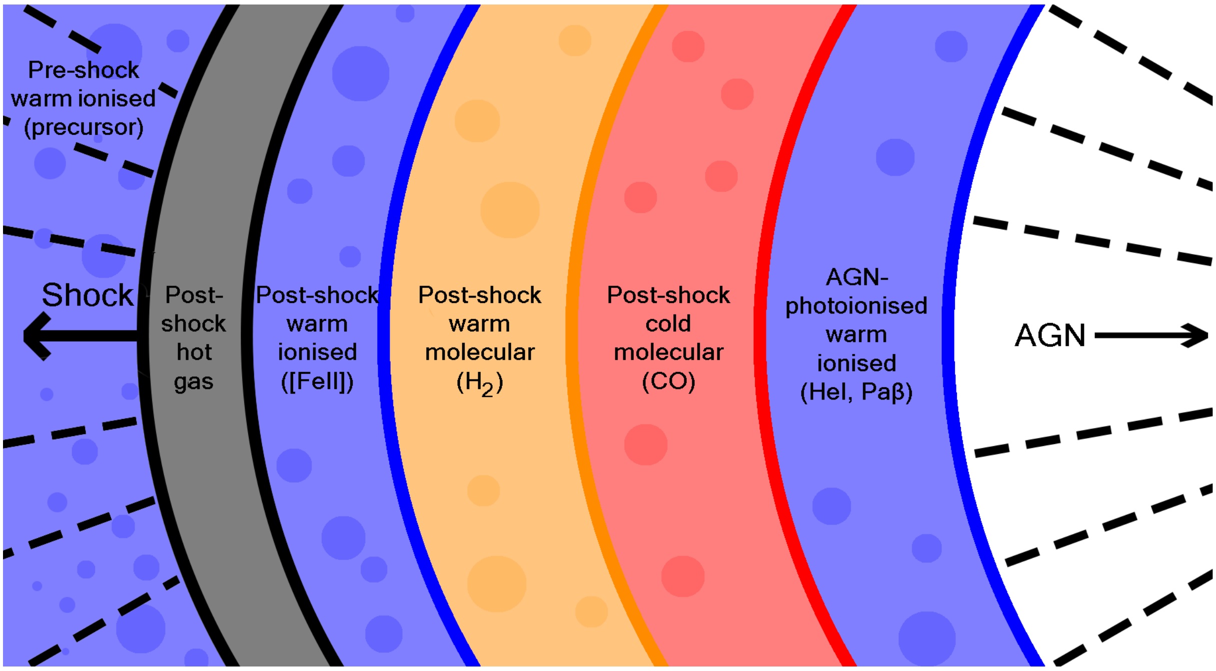

Pre-shock
warm ionised
(precursor)
Shock
Post-shock hot gas
Post-shock warm ionised ([FeII])
Post-shock warm molecular (H2)
Post-shock cold molecular (CO)
AGN-photoionised warm ionised (HeI, Paβ)
AGN

Figure 2.17: A schematic showing a possible stratification in the emission regions that could explain both the measured emission-line ratios (Figures 2.11 and 2.14) and the spatial distributions of the various emission lines (Figure 2.18 and Table 2.10) in IC 5063. The different phases (labelled) are shown as different coloured regions, and photoionising radiation is shown as black dashed lines. Note that this could represent the structure in individual clouds, or an ensemble of clouds. In this schematic, no attempt has been made to reflect the true relative sizes of the emission regions.

observed: in such a scenario, all the warm-ionised and warm-molecular gas in the outflow would be ionised by (and accelerated close to) the shock front, and the cold-molecular gas would represent the post-shock gas further from the shock front (and closer to the central AGN) that has cooled through the sequence.

Rather, a potential explanation for these results is that the cooled, post-shock gas closest to the AGN is photoionised by the AGN, resulting in an additional warm-ionised component which has post-shock kinematics and densities while being predominantly AGN-photoionised. In this scenario, presented in Figure 2.17, the post-shock cooled gas that is furthest from the shock front (and photoionised by the AGN) would shield the post-shock gas that is closer to the shock front. If this AGN-photoionised component had a higher luminosity than the immediate-post-shock warm-ionised gas, then it would contribute much more strongly to the emission-line ratios, leading to values consistent with AGN-photoionisation being observed. However, the warm molecular phase — which is only found cooling behind the shock — would show line ratios consistent with shock-excitation, in agreement with the ratios measured from the NIR data.

To investigate this situation further, spatial flux profiles of the integrated $-600 < v < -400$ km s^{-1} wings of several emission lines present in the NIR apertures ([FeII]$\lambda16400$, [FeII]$\lambda12570$, $H_2\lambda21218$, Paβ and HeI$\lambda10830$) were produced using

Emission Line	Centroid (pixels)	Centroid (arcsec)
HeIλ10830	8.5±0.2	2.11±0.05
Paβ	8.6±0.1	2.13±0.02
$H_2\lambda$21218	9.5±0.1	2.36±0.02
[FeII]λ12570	10.1±0.2	2.50±0.05
[FeII]λ16400	10.2±0.2	2.53±0.05

Table 2.10: Centroids of Gaussian fits to spatial slices between $-600 < v < -400$ km s^{-1} of emission lines in the NIR arm data (Figure 2.18), measured relative to the spatial centroid position of the local continuum. The lines trace distinct phases of gas, which is interpreted here as a cooling sequence (Figure 2.17).

the same method as in Section 2.3.1. Here, the [FeII], HeI and Paβ lines trace the warm ionised phase (however the [FeII] lines are expected to be particularly strong in regions associated with shocks: Dors et al. 2012 and Riffel et al. 2013a), while $H_2\lambda$21218 traces the warm molecular phase. The resulting plot is presented as Figure 2.18, which shows tentative evidence that the [FeII] emission peaks in flux the furthest away from the nucleus, the peak of $H_2\lambda$21218 emission lies inward of the [FeII] peak, and the HeI and Paβ emission peaks are the closest to the nucleus. This is supported by the centroid positions obtained by fitting Gaussian profiles to the spatial profiles (Table 2.10).

Given that the NW lobe is considered to be the location of the strongest shocks, this evidence for stratification in the emission regions supports the geometry presented in Figure 2.17: the [FeII] emission traces the warm-ionised gas near the shock front, the $H_2\lambda$21218 traces post-shock gas that has cooled to the warm molecular phase, and the HeI and Paβ emission traces the inner-most (AGN-photoionised) warm-ionised component. However, note that the measured [FeII]/Paβ ratios (Figure 2.14; Table 2.8) may not be consistent with this scenario: while the measured $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ ratios appear to be enhanced relative to what is expected from AGN-excitation, the [FeII]/Paβ ratios show no such relative enhancement. Further near-infrared observations of IC 5063's NW lobe, taken with an IFU at a higher spatial resolution, are therefore needed to investigate this situation and verify the cooling-sequence scenario proposed here.

Comparison to theoretical predictions of the dominant ionisation mechanism

Relativistic hydrodynamic simulations by Meenakshi et al. (2022a) model the relative contribution of AGN-photoionisation and jet-induced-shock collisional-ionisation for a 5.71×10^9 $M_\odot$ gas disk of radius 2 kpc — similar to the gas conditions and properties of IC 5063 — and find that shock-ionisation dominates the ionisation of the warm-ionised gas over AGN-photoionisation. This is inconsistent with the results presented here for

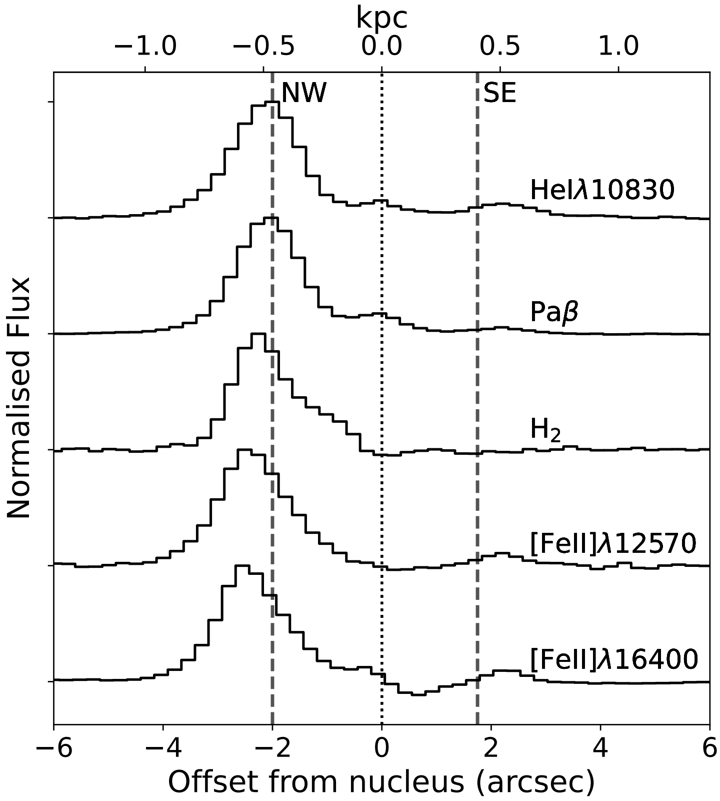


Figure 2.18: Spatial flux distributions of the $-600 < v < -400\,\mathrm{km\,s^{-1}}$ wings of the emission-line profiles for [FeII]λ16400, [FeII]λ12570, H_2λ21218, Paβ, and HeIλ10830, produced using the same methodology as described in Section 2.3.1. It can be tentatively seen that the [FeII] lines (most likely tracing shocked warm-ionised emission) are emitted the furthest from the nucleus — at the expected location of the shocks in the NW lobe — with the warm-molecular H_2λ21218 emission lying further inward, and the Paβ and HeIλ10830 emission lying closest to the nucleus. The centroids of Gaussian profiles fitted to these distributions are given in Table 2.10.

IC 5063, where AGN-photoionisation is found to be dominant. A potential reason for this discrepancy could be that the jet power in IC 5063 is, in reality, an order of magnitude lower ($P_{\mathrm{jet}}=10^{44-45}\,\mathrm{erg\,s^{-1}}$; Mukherjee et al. 2018) than assumed by Meenakshi et al. (2022a) ($P_{\mathrm{jet}}=10^{45}\,\mathrm{erg\,s^{-1}}$). Moreover, the resolution of the simulations may not be sufficiently high to accurately track the density structure and cooling of the post-shock gas. Further simulation work that is more precisely tailored to the situation in IC 5063 would allow this to be investigated in more detail, as would higher-resolution simulations of AGN and shock-ionisation for single clouds, which would allow a more accurate representation of the cooling of the warm gas.

Compression effects of the jet-induced shocks

As the outflows along the radio-axis in IC 5063 are likely to have been accelerated by jet-induced shocks, some evidence for shock-compression would be expected (Sutherland & Dopita, 2017). Using the TR ratios (Section 2.3.1), it is found that the narrow components at all positions have relatively-low electron densities in the range $2.10 < \log_{10}(n_e[\mathrm{TR}]\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}) < 2.75$, while outflow components have significantly higher electron densities of $3.1 < \log_{10}(n_e[\mathrm{TR}]\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}) < 3.45$. This indicates that the outflows have higher electron densities than the quiescent gas by approximately a factor of three or four, possibly as a result of compression effects of the jet-induced shocks. This is similar to the findings of other AGN-driven-outflow studies, which find that broader components typically have higher densities (Holt et al., 2011; Rose et al., 2018; Santoro et al., 2018, 2020), and is in line with what is expected for the immediate-post-shock gas due to the shock-jump conditions (a factor of four; Sutherland & Dopita 2017). However, the density contrast is much less than the factor of $\sim$100 which may be expected if the broad components originate from gas that has cooled in pressure equilibrium behind a fast shock (Sutherland & Dopita, 2017).

The nature of the blueshifted narrow [OIII] component seen in Aperture 3

As seen in previous observations of the warm ionised phase of IC 5063 (Morganti et al., 2007), a narrow kinematic component is identified at the position of the SE radio lobe that is blueshifted relative to the quiescent gas disk. Unlike the broad kinematic components associated with outflows, this component is narrow ($\mathrm{FWHM_w} < 200$ km s^{-1}) and has a lower electron density ($\log_{10} n_\mathrm{e} = 2.55 \pm 0.03$). Biconical outflows have been proposed to explain line splitting in active galaxies (Walker, 1968b; Cecil et al., 1990), but if this is the case here, it is unclear why one direction of the outflow is broad and dense (AP3 Broad) and the other is narrow and has a lower density (AP3 Narrow 2). Alternatively, since IC 5063 is thought to be a post-merger galaxy (Morganti et al., 1998), it would not be surprising to detect infalling and relatively-undisturbed low-density clumps of gas. Interestingly, H_2 emission that is kinematically associated with this component is not detected in Aperture 3, implying that it either does not contain molecular gas or that the warm-molecular gas is not being excited. This is consistent with VLT/ISAAC observations presented by Tadhunter et al. (2014), which show a blueshifted narrow component in the Brγ profile that is not present in the $H_2$1–0S(1) profile at the southeastern lobe. Furthermore, this component is not seen in cold-molecular PV diagrams (e.g. CO(1–0), CO(2–1), CO(3–2), HCO(4–3); Morganti et al. 2015; Oosterloo et al. 2017), implying a lack of cold-molecular gas. Therefore, infalling gas is the favoured explanation, and I propose that the situation for Aperture 3 is as follows: the broad component represents shock-accelerated outflowing gas, the red-most narrow component represents quiescent gas in IC 5063's disk, and the blue-most narrow component represents infalling gas (that lacks molecular-gas emission) as a result of the recent merger.

2.4.3 The use of transauroral-line diagnostics in AGN-driven outflows

This study marks the first time that the transauroral-line technique first presented by Holt et al. (2011) has been used to estimate electron density values for spatially-resolved outflow regions in an active galaxy. As previously discussed, a concern with this technique is that the transauroral [OII] and [SII] lines might be emitted by different clouds at different spatial positions to those emitting other important diagnostic lines. The work presented here shows that the transauroral lines have the same line profiles for the same kinematic components and are emitted at the same spatial positions as the high-ionisation optical forbidden and recombination lines (Figures 2.5 and 2.8), suggesting that they are emitted by the same cloud complexes. While it is not conclusively demonstrated in this work that the transauroral lines are emitted by the same clouds *within* the apertures (see discussions in Sun et al. 2017 and Rose et al. 2018), this does alleviate concerns regarding their use in spatially-unresolved studies of moderate-to-high redshift AGN.

In addition, the transauroral-line technique has been used alongside the traditional [OII] and [SII] line ratios and [ArIV] line ratio to show that this method gives electron densities that are slightly higher than (if not comparable to) those given by the traditional line ratios, but lower than those given by the [ArIV] ratio. Wang et al. (2004) found that the [ArIV] technique provides much higher electron densities in observations of ionised nebulae than the traditional ratios; the findings presented here support this and place the transauroral-line technique in between these two methods in terms of derived densities.

Further detailed studies making use of the transauroral-line ratios alongside other methods of electron-density estimation are needed. However, this work highlights the necessity of careful consideration of the technique used to derive electron densities: the traditional [OII] and [SII] lines may underestimate the electron density of warm-ionised outflowing gas, while the [ArIV] ratio may overestimate it. This, in part, may be due to the [ArIV] ratio probing higher-ionisation gas than the traditional and transauroral [OII] and [SII] techniques. Since the [OIII] lines represent higher-ionisation gas than the [OII] and [SII] lines, then the findings reported here indicate that the density of the [OIII]-emitting gas may be higher than probed by the [OII] and [SII] lines. It is unclear how this relates to the density of the Hβ-emitting gas, although it could mean that true mass outflow rates (thus kinetic powers and coupling efficiencies) are even lower than estimated here, and much lower than typically derived using densities estimated with the traditional [SII] and [OII] ratios. A more detailed investigation of this situation is undertaken in Chapter 3.

The high electron densities ($n_e > 10^3$ cm^{-3}) found for the outflowing components using the TR ratios are above those typically assumed by past studies for warm-ionised outflows in active galaxies (10^2–10^3 cm^{-3}: e.g. Liu et al. 2013; Harrison et al. 2014; Fiore et al. 2017), and are above the previously-measured maximum density of $n_e \sim 10^3$ cm^{-3} for the warm-ionised gas along radio axis of IC 5063, as derived from MUSE observations by Mingozzi et al. (2019) (see also Venturi et al. 2021). Conversely, the findings of this chapter support the results of other studies that report high electron densities for warm-ionised outflows, including those that also use transauroral lines (e.g. Holt et al. 2011; Rose et al. 2018; Santoro et al. 2018; Spence et al. 2018; Baron & Netzer 2019b; Davies et al. 2020). This highlights the importance of properly estimating values of electron density, and indicates that values determined solely using traditional techniques may be too low, and resulting kinetic powers too high.

Overall, these results show the validity of using the transauroral [SII] and [OII] lines in measuring the electron densities and reddening values of AGN-driven outflows: they have the advantages of higher critical densities (relative to the traditional [SII] and [OII] ratios), do not suffer from line blending issues, and are more prominent in galaxy spectra than the [ArIV] doublet.

2.5 Chapter conclusions

Wide-wavelength-coverage, high spectral and spatial resolution Xshooter observations of the nearby active galaxy IC 5063 have permitted, for the first time, electron density measurements of spatially-resolved AGN-driven outflows using the transauroral [SII] and [OII] lines. The wealth of previous observations of the different gas phases of these outflows has allowed the subsequently-derived warm-ionised outflow properties to be placed in a multi-phase context. In addition, the ionisation and excitation mechanisms of the outflows have been investigated for an object which shows clear jet-ISM interactions. This detailed study has found the following.

- The transauroral lines are emitted in the same spatial positions and with the same line profiles as other high-ionisation optical lines which are commonly used for outflow diagnostics, indicating that they are emitted by the same cloud complexes. This alleviates concerns regarding the use of transauroral lines in spatially-unresolved studies of moderate-to-high redshift AGN.
- In the case of IC 5063, there is tentative evidence that electron densities determined using the transauroral lines are higher than those determined from the commonly-used traditional [SII] and [OII] line ratios, and less than those produced using the higher-ionisation [ArIV](4711/4740) ratio. Given the implication for derived outflow kinetic powers if electron density is underestimated, this highlights that the transauroral lines should play an important role in future studies of AGN-driven outflows.

- The outflowing warm-ionised gas in IC 5063 has a higher density than the quiescent gas, potentially as a result of compression effects of jet-induced shocks. However, the outflow densities may be below those expected if the post-shock gas is cooling in pressure equilibrium.
- The kinetic powers for the warm ionised phase are much below those required by galaxy evolution models. However, when compared to previous observations of cooler phases, it appears that this phase constitutes only a small fraction of the total outflowing mass; the neutral atomic phase dominates the mass and kinetic power of the *total* outflow.
- The dominant ionisation mechanism of the warm-ionised outflows and quiescent gas is AGN-photoionisation, while the warm-molecular outflows appear to be excited by composite AGN-shock excitation. A possible scenario is that the post-shock gas closest to the AGN is maintained in an ionised state by photoionisation, and forms the ionised part of an ISM component that shields the immediate-post-shock gas that lies further from the AGN, allowing it to cool to colder phases.

Chapter acknowledgements

Based on observations collected at the European Organisation for Astronomical Research in the Southern Hemisphere under ESO programme 0101.B0409(A). This work makes use of the Starlink software (Currie et al., 2014), which is currently supported by the East Asian Observatory. This research has made use of the NASA/IPAC Infrared Science Archive, which is funded by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and operated by the California Institute of Technology. The STARLIGHT project is supported by the Brazilian agencies CNPq, CAPES and FAPESP and by the France-Brazil CAPES/Cofecub program. I thank Rebecca J. Houghton for her helpful comments in preparing this manuscript, and Moun Meenakshi and Dipanjan Mukherjee for their useful discussion.

Data availability

The data used in this chapter is available from the ESO Science Archive Facility (`http://archive.eso.org/cms.html`) with Run/Program ID 0101.B-0409(A) (PI: Tadhunter).

Chapter 3

Outflow conditions and acceleration mechanisms for the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151

“Mortalis!
Caelum!
Viatorem in Aeternum!
Catharsis!
In ignem!
Poena Universi!”

— Aeternam, *Poena Universi*

Chapter declaration

The data, analysis, results, and discussion presented in this chapter were reported in my first-author publication "Outflow densities and ionization mechanisms in the NLRs of the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151" (Holden & Tadhunter, 2023). The content of this chapter is based on that publication, which has been adapted into a suitable format for this thesis; all work is my own, except where clearly stated.

3.1 Chapter introduction: the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 & NGC 4151

In Chapter 2, I presented a detailed study of the jet-driven outflows in the NLR of the nearby Sey 2 galaxy IC 5063 using Very Large Telescope (VLT) / Xshooter ultraviolet (UV), optical and near-infrared (NIR) spectroscopy. Electron densities above the sensitivity limit of the traditional [SII] ratio were found — resulting in modest warm-ionised outflow kinetic powers ($\dot{E}_{\rm kin} = (2.7 \pm 1.7) \times 10^{-3}$ of $L_{\rm bol}$) — in addition to AGN-photoionisation being the dominant ionisation mechanism.

There is now a clear need to determine whether the conditions found in the NLR of IC 5063 are similar in other Seyfert galaxies, specifically to further investigate true outflow electron densities, kinetic powers, and ionisation mechanisms. Furthermore, considering that IC 5063 has well-known jet-driven outflows, it is important to investigate the gas conditions and NLR properties of objects for which the outflow acceleration mechanisms are not clear, as this may further clarify the link between outflow ionisation and acceleration. Therefore, archival Hubble Space Telescope (HST) / Space Telescope Imaging Spectrograph (STIS) spectra of the inner NLRs ($r < 160$ kpc) of the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are analysed in this chapter, which applies and expands upon many of the techniques presented previously.

NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 appeared in Carl Seyfert's original paper that established the Seyfert class (Seyfert 1943; see Figure 1.1), and are the prototypical Seyfert 2 and Seyfert 1 galaxies, respectively. In consequence, they are perhaps the most well-studied AGN of their types. Their close proximity to Earth and the previous, extensive multi-wavelength studies of their properties make them ideal objects for addressing the outstanding questions outlined in Section 1.3: the outflows in their central regions can be spatially resolved, and measurements made with techniques such as the transauroral-line method can be compared to those obtained using other methods. Principally, this permits an assessment of the validity of different density diagnostics, as well as an investigation into the ionisation conditions (and mechanisms) of the gas.

The distances to NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are taken to be $D = 13.0$ Mpc (Revalski et al., 2021) and $D = 15.8$ Mpc (Yuan et al., 2020), respectively, which correspond to spatial scales of 0.067 kpc/arcseconds for NGC 1068 and 0.078 kpc/arcseconds for NGC 4151.

3.1.1 NGC 1068

NGC 1068 is one of the closest and brightest (in terms of observed flux) Seyfert 2 galaxies, allowing detailed spatially-resolved observations, and thus making it the target for extensive studies that cover a range of spatial scales at optical (e.g. Cecil et al. 1990; Evans et al. 1991; Axon et al. 1998; Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000c; Kraemer & Crenshaw 2000b; Das et al. 2006), NIR (e.g. Raban et al. 2009; Müller Sánchez et al. 2009; May & Steiner 2017) and radio (e.g. Wilson & Ulvestad 1983; Gallimore et al. 1996; García-Burillo et al. 2014, 2019) wavelengths. NGC 1068 has a radio luminosity of $L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}} = 2.3 \times 10^{23}$ W Hz^{-1} (Ulvestad & Wilson, 1984), placing it in the upper end of the radio luminosity range for Seyfert galaxies, and its high bolometric luminosity ($0.4 < L_{\mathrm{bol}} < 4.7\times10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: Woo & Urry 2002; Alonso-Herrero et al. 2011; Lopez-Rodriguez et al. 2018; Gravity Collaboration et al. 2020) is close to the lower boundary of the luminosity range for quasars ($\mathrm{L_{bol}} > 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}). The galaxy also has an important historical role, as it was the first object used to verify the orientation-based unified scheme for AGN (Figure 1.3: Antonucci & Miller 1985).

The NLR of NGC 1068 presents as an 'hourglass'-shaped bicone (Riffel et al., 2014; Barbosa et al., 2014; May & Steiner, 2017) with an opening angle of $\theta \sim 40°$ along PA$= 30 \pm 2°$ at an inclination of $i = 5°$, placing the bicone axis close to the plane of the sky and inclined ~45° out of the galaxy's disk (Das et al. 2006; but see also Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000c). Outflows of warm-ionised gas with velocities up to ~1500 km s^{-1} have been detected in the bicone (Crenshaw & Kraemer, 2000b; Das et al., 2006). In the NE cone, the radio axis is closely aligned with the bicone axis — interpreted as a radio jet propagating within the hollowed-out cone — with a radio lobe that extends just beyond the maximum extent of the cone in optical emission (Wilson & Ulvestad 1987; shown in Figure 3.1). Lower-velocity cold-molecular CO(3-2) outflows have been detected at this position, indicating that the lobe may represent the termination of the AGN-driven outflows (García-Burillo et al., 2014).

The outflows in the NLR of NGC 1068 have been argued to be radiatively accelerated by some authors (Kraemer & Crenshaw, 2000b; Das et al., 2006; Revalski et al., 2021; Meena et al., 2023; Fischer et al., 2023), while others have proposed they are driven by jet-induced shocks (Capetti et al., 1997; Axon et al., 1998). May & Steiner (2017) propose a scenario in which the radio jet impacts molecular clouds on small radial scales near the central AGN, accelerating high-velocity 'bullets' of gas that propagate within the bicone but constitute only a small fraction of the total outflowing mass.

3.1.2 NGC 4151

NGC 4151 is the prototypical Seyfert 1 galaxy[1], and is also one of the closest and brightest (in terms of observed flux) of its class, leading to its NLR outflows being the target of extensive studies of the coronal ($E_{\mathrm{ion}} \gtrapprox 100$ eV; e.g. Storchi-Bergmann et al. 2009, 2010), warm ionised (e.g. Winge et al. 1997; Hutchings et al. 1999; Crenshaw et al. 2000; Das et al. 2005; May et al. 2020) and warm molecular (H_2; $T \sim 2000$ K, e.g. May et al. 2020) gas phases, which have distinct flux distributions (Storchi-Bergmann et al., 2009). Similar to NGC 1068, the bicone-shaped NLR also has an hourglass morphology (May et al., 2020), with $\mathrm{PA} = 22^\circ$ at an inclination of $i = 21^\circ$ (Pedlar et al. 1992; 36° to the galactic disk) and an opening angle of 33° (Das et al., 2005). However, the bolometric luminosity of the AGN in NGC 4151 ($L_{\mathrm{bol}} = 1.4 \times 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1}) is approximately an order of magnitude below that of NGC 1068.

The radio source (of luminosity $L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}} = 1.6 \times 10^{22}$ W Hz^{-1}; Ulvestad & Wilson 1984) consists of a double-sided jet ($\mathrm{PA} \sim 77^\circ$) originating from the nucleus. High-resolution radio imaging (Carral et al., 1990; Pedlar et al., 1993; Williams et al., 2017) shows several radio knots along this structure within the central few arcseconds, whereas lower-resolution radio observations (Johnston et al., 1982; Pedlar et al., 1993) reveal a larger-scale, lower-surface-brightness structure with a radio lobe in the NE cone extending to 6.3 arcseconds from the nucleus along the radio axis. It has been argued that the radio jet has little connection to the NLR outflow kinematics in NGC 4151 (Hutchings et al., 1999; Crenshaw et al., 2000; Das et al., 2005). However, enhanced line fluxes from the warm-ionised gas, high electron temperatures ($T_e >$16,000 K), and high [FeII]/[PII] ratios (indicative of shocks: see Section 1.2.4) have been spatially associated with the radio structure (Mundell et al., 2003; Storchi-Bergmann et al., 2009, 2010), indicating that jet-ISM interactions may still drive shocks into the gas at certain locations within the bicone (see also Wang et al. 2011a,b; Williams et al. 2017).

May et al. (2020) propose a similar model as they proposed for NGC 1068 (May & Steiner, 2017) — albeit on smaller spatial scales with less-extreme kinematics — to explain the NLR and outflow structure in NGC 4151: the radio jet impacts a molecular cloud near the nucleus (potentially due to misalignment between the jet and torus/disk: Storchi-Bergmann et al. 2010; May et al. 2020), driving fragmented, shock-accelerated gas into the cones and contributing to the NLR morphology.

---

[1] NGC 4151 was later classified as an intermediate 'Seyfert 1.5' (Osterbrock & Koski, 1976; Robinson et al., 1994).

3.1.3 Previous photoionisation modelling of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151

Crenshaw et al. (2015) and Revalski et al. (2021, 2022) performed detailed, multi-ionisation component photoionisation modelling of the warm-ionised outflows in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, finding densities in the range $10^{3.0} < n_e < 10^{7.2}$ cm^{-3} for the NLR gas in both objects, and coupling efficiencies above the lower limit required by galaxy evolution models ($\epsilon_{\rm f} > 0.5$ per cent: Hopkins & Elvis 2010) in the case of NGC 1068. In order to further investigate the electron densities of the outflowing gas in the NLR of these two important objects, and to attempt to clarify the uncertainties regarding the acceleration and ionisation mechanisms of the gas, high-spatial-resolution, wide-wavelength-coverage long-slit spectroscopy with the slit aligned along the radio axes (which are approximately along the bicone axes) was required.

3.2 Observations and data reduction

3.2.1 Archival HST/STIS observations

This study required high-spatial-resolution spectra that contained both the traditional [OII]$\lambda\lambda$3726, 3729 and [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 lines and the blue [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4068, 4076 and red [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319, 7331 transauroral doublets (Section 1.2.1). Therefore, suitable Hubble Space Telescope (HST) / Space Telescope Imaging Spectrograph (STIS) long-slit spectra taken with the G430L and G750L gratings were acquired from the Hubble Legacy Archive[2]: the wide wavelength coverage of the combination of these gratings is sufficient for measuring the required emission lines. Both gratings have a spatial pixel scale of 0.051 arcseconds per pixel, and the dispersions of the two gratings are 2.72 Å/pixel (G430L; 2900–5700 Å) and 4.92 Å/pixel (G750L; 5240–10270 Å). It was also required that these data were taken along (or close to) the PA of the radio/bicone structures to ensure the observations are tracing gas that is closely related to the radio structures. The data for NGC 1068 were taken as part of the Cycle 7 HST Proposal GTO:7573 (PI Kraemer), with a 52 × 0.1 arcsecond slit along PA = 202°, centred on a bright emission-line knot close (< 0.4 arcseconds) to the nucleus (see Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000a and Kraemer & Crenshaw 2000a). Data for NGC 4151 were taken with a 52 × 0.1 arcsecond slit along PA = 70°, offset to the south by 0.1 arcsecond to reduce contamination from the bright Sey 1 nucleus, and were taken in Cycle 7 as part of HST Proposal GTO:7569 (PI Hutchings) — a full description of the NGC 4151 observations is given by Nelson et al. (2000). The positions of the STIS slits over the central regions of the two Seyferts are shown in Figure 3.1.

---

[2] `https://hla.stsci.edu/hlaview.html`

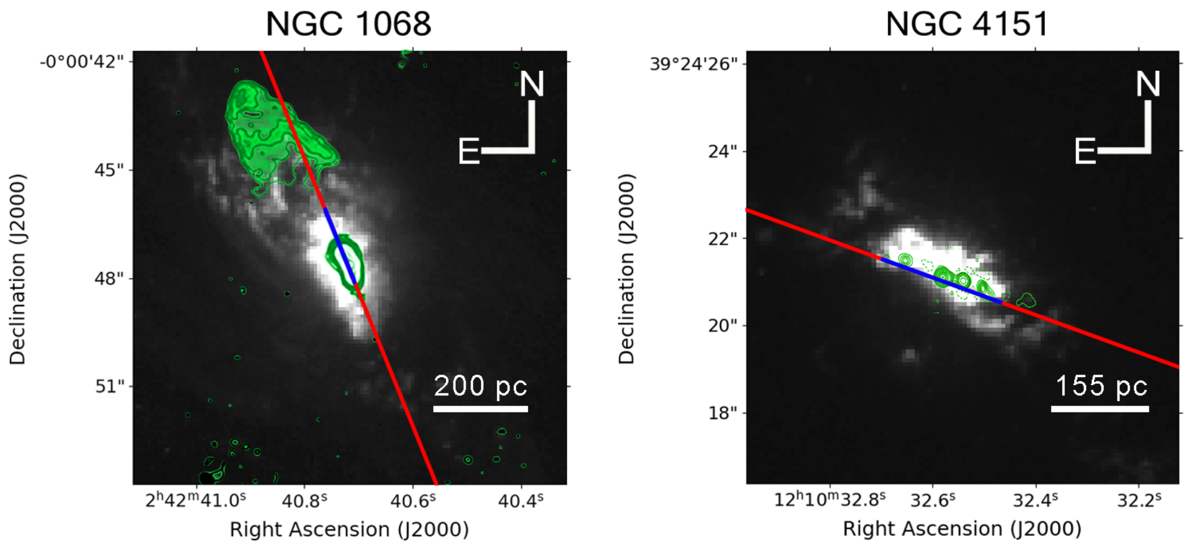


Figure 3.1: The slits of the archival STIS observations (red) shown plotted over archival HST/WFPC2 [OIII] emission-line images of the inner regions of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, taken with the F502N filter (NGC 1068: GTO:5754, PI Ford; NGC 4151: GTO:5124; PI Ford). The spatial extents of the regions considered in this study (the extracted apertures: Section 3.2.3) along the slits are shown in blue. **Left:** The STIS slit shown over the [OIII] emission-line image of the near-nuclear regions of NGC 1068; VLA 22 GHz contours from Gallimore et al. (1996) are presented in green, showing the radio structure near the core and an extended lobe to the NE. **Right:** the STIS slit shown over the [OIII] emission-line image of the near-nuclear regions of NGC 4151; the green contours are from high-resolution e-MERLIN 1.5 GHz imaging presented by Williams et al. (2017), and show a string of radio knots near the nucleus. I note that, while the narrow-band images are not continuum-subtracted, the brighter parts of the NLR emission are dominated by [OIII] emission in the filter bandpass, and so the images provide a good representation of the main NLR structures.

3.2.2 Reduction of STIS data

The first step in the data reduction was performed with the standard CALSTIS pipeline. For NGC 1068, only a single exposure for each grating was available, while for NGC 4151 I took the average of two exposures for each grating using PYTHON scripts which made use of the NUMPY (Harris et al., 2020) and ASTROPY (Astropy Collaboration et al., 2013, 2018) modules. In order to ensure that the individual exposures for each grating were aligned, spatial slices were first extracted along the slit direction in a line-free region of the continuum covering the wavelength range 5480–5600 Å for the G430L grating and 6795–6890 Å for the G750L grating. The centroids of the spatial peaks — determined with Gaussian-profile fits — were consistent within 0.4 pixels, confirming that each exposure was taken with the same telescope pointing within 0.02 arcseconds. I also verified that the spectra taken with the G430L and G750L gratings for each object were aligned, using the same method of Gaussian-profile fits to the spatial flux profiles. Again, the spatial positions of the peak flux between gratings were consistent to within 0.4 pixels, indicating that the observations with different gratings were closely spatially aligned.

Residual hot pixels and cosmic rays were removed from the spectra using the CLEAN command of the STARLINK FIGARO software package (Currie et al., 2014). Galactic-extinction correction was performed in the same manner as that done for IC 5063 (Section 2.2.3) — from the S98 and SF11 maps, the mean colour excesses in the directions of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 were found to be $\mathrm{E(B\text{-}V)_{mean}} = 0.0289 \pm 0.0004$ and $\mathrm{E(B\text{-}V)_{mean}} = 0.0237 \pm 0.0011$, respectively, and these values were used with the CCM89 $R_\mathrm{v} = 3.1$ extinction law to correct for Galactic extinction.

3.2.3 Aperture selection and extraction

The reduced STIS long-slit spectra of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 show disturbed kinematics (indicating outflows) and several bright emission-line knots in the central few hundred parsecs, as noted by previous studies (Crenshaw & Kraemer, 2000c; Kraemer & Crenshaw, 2000a; Das et al., 2005, 2006; Meena et al., 2023). Several apertures (integrated groupings of pixel rows) were extracted from the two-dimensional G430L and G750L spectra, following the methodology described in Section 2.2.4. Each aperture formed an integrated one-dimensional spectrum that corresponds to a certain spatial position along the slit, the locations of which were chosen to cover the locations of the bright emission knots seen in the two-dimensional spectra (Figure 3.2). The widths of the apertures (6–15 pixels; 0.3–0.8 arcseconds) were set to contain sufficient signal in the emission lines that are used for diagnostics in this analysis, namely the fainter transauroral [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319,7331 and [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4068,4076 doublets. The same apertures were extracted from the G430L and G750L spectra for each object, as it was previously determined that the spectra were closely spatially aligned. Flux errors were determined by adding the flux errors from individual pixel rows (which constitute a given aperture) in quadrature. As an example, part of the spectrum of Aperture 2 for NGC 1068 is presented in Figure 3.3. The chosen apertures extended to a maximum radial distance of 139 pc for NGC 1068, and 151 pc in the case of NGC 4151.

Aperture 3 for NGC 1068 was placed over a bright emission knot that corresponds to a previously-detected radio source at the likely position of the galaxy's nucleus (see discussion in Kraemer & Crenshaw 2000a), while Aperture 4 for NGC 4151 corresponds to the location along the slit that is closest to the nucleus. Note that the spectra for NGC 4151 do not directly cover the nucleus due to the 0.1 arcsecond slit offset to the south that was performed to avoid nuclear contamination. Unfortunately, the south-west part of the slit for NGC 1068 (seen above Aperture 4 in Figure 3.2) did not contain enough signal for the measurement of the faint [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319, 7331 transauroral doublet, even when integrated as a single aperture. Therefore, this region is omitted from any analysis.

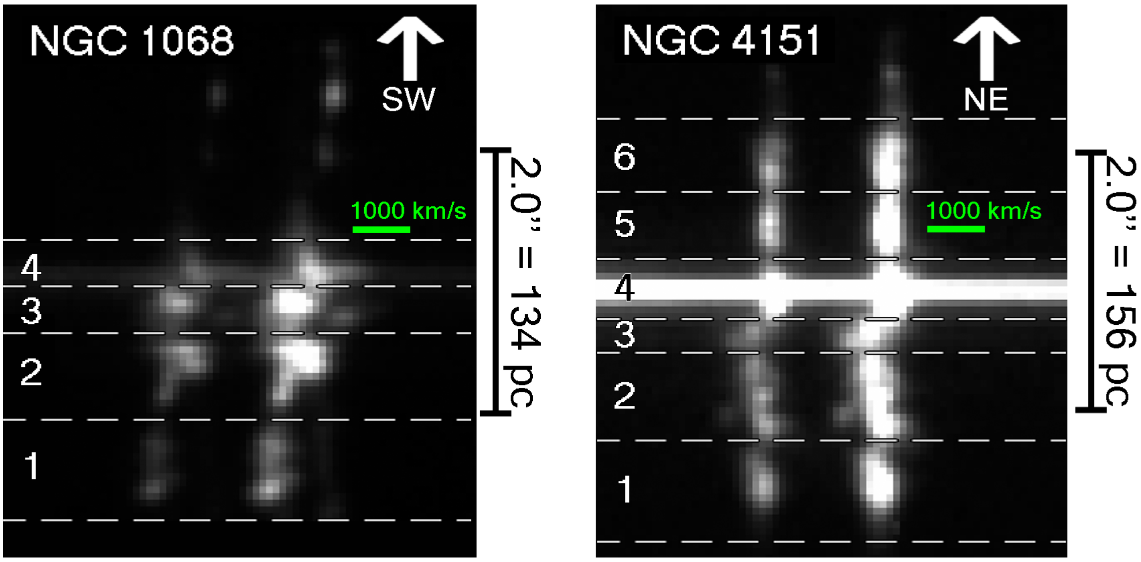


Figure 3.2: Apertures for NGC 1068 (left) and NGC 4151 (right), positioned over the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet in the two-dimensional STIS G430L spectra. The spectral direction is horizontal (left = bluewards; right = redwards) and the vertical direction is spatial along the slit (with the direction shown by the labelled arrows); velocity scale bars are shown in green, and spatial scale bars are shown to the right of each spectrum. The apertures are shown as regions bounded by dashed lines, and are labelled on the left of each image — they were chosen to contain enough signal for the measurement of faint lines in distinct kinematic regions within the central few hundred parsecs of each galaxy.

Following aperture extraction, I ensured that the flux calibration was consistent between the two gratings for each aperture by overplotting the spectra in the region where the wavelength ranges of the gratings overlap (5275–5705 Å). It was found that all apertures for NGC 1068 are closely matched in flux. However, for apertures 2 and 4 of NGC 4151, the flux in the overlap region was >8 per cent higher in the G430L grating than the G750L grating, potentially due to internal reflections within the instrument caused by the bright Type 1 nucleus (see Nelson et al. 2000). Therefore, these apertures are not used in further analysis.

3.2.4 The contribution of stellar continua to the spectra

The underlying stellar continua in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 were not modelled and subtracted (as was done for IC 5063: Section 2.2.5) for various reasons. First, the archival STIS G430L and G750L spectra did not have sufficient spectral resolution to clearly resolve absorption features that could be used to verify the robustness of the continuum fits. Second, there may be substantial contamination by direct and scattered AGN continuum (Antonucci & Miller, 1985) and nebular continuum (Tadhunter, 2016) that precludes accurate stellar-continuum modelling. Finally, the emission lines in the spectra have relatively-high equivalent widths, which fill in various stellar absorption features.

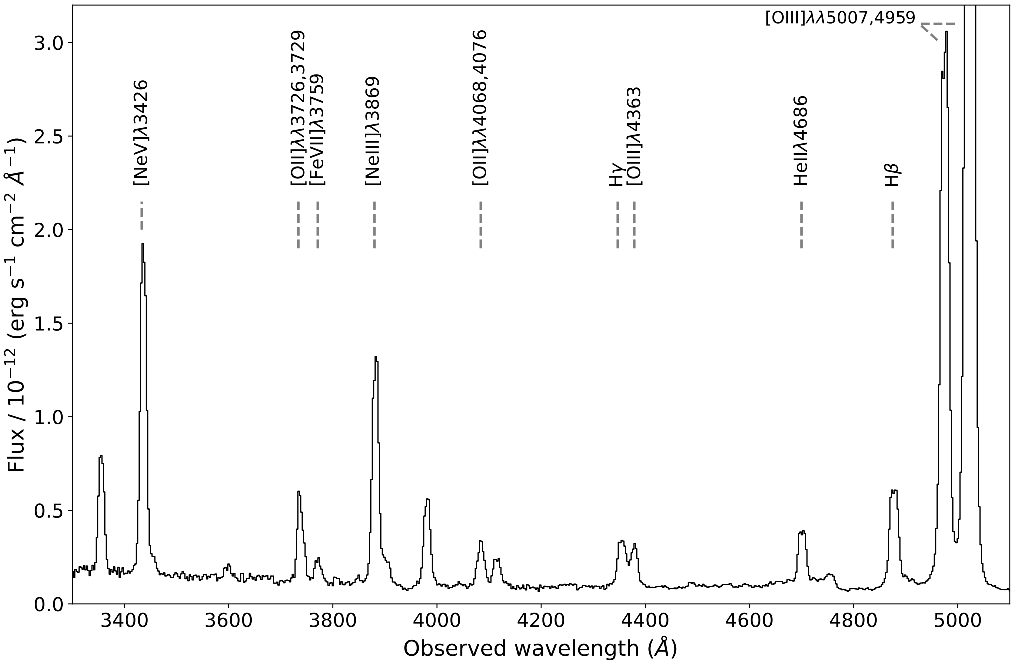


Figure 3.3: The G430L grating spectrum for Aperture 2 of NGC 1068 (Figure 3.2). Key emission lines that are used in the analysis are labelled with dotted lines. Note that, for presentation reasons, the limit on the flux axis has been chosen so that fainter lines can be seen clearly; as a result, the peak of the [OIII]λ5007 line is not visible.

In order to verify whether stellar-continuum modelling was needed in this study, equivalent widths (EWs) for the Hβ recombination line were measured. Equivalent widths in the range $36 < \mathrm{EW} < 148$ Å were found for the NGC 1068 apertures and $30 < \mathrm{EW} < 151$ Å for the NGC 4151 apertures. The lowest measured emission-line equivalent width (EW = 30 Å for Aperture 3 in NGC 4151) is a factor of three higher than that of the Hβ absorption feature as modelled for a ∼400 Myr old stellar population (which gives the highest EWs in modelling by González Delgado et al. 1999). Thus, underlying stellar-absorption features may affect the Hβ luminosities measured in this work by a maximum factor of 1.3 (for a stellar EW = 10 Å). However, this is very much an upper limit since there is no clear Balmer break in the continua in any of the apertures, as would be expected for intermediate-age stellar populations that have strong Balmer absorption lines.

3.2.5 Fits to key emission lines

The NLR kinematics in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are complex, and have been previously modelled in detail as biconical outflows based on higher-resolution STIS spectra than those used here (Das et al. 2006 and Das et al. 2005 respectively; but see also Crenshaw

& Kraemer 2000b and Crenshaw et al. 2000). In those studies, the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet line-profiles were fit with multiple Gaussian components for each pixel row of the two-dimensional spectra. Here, a similar procedure is performed for the extracted apertures by simultaneously fitting a first- or second-order polynomial to the continuum surrounding the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet, in addition to one or two Gaussian profiles to each of the lines within the doublet itself. The wavelength separation of the lines in the doublet, as well as the intensity ratio of the lines (1 : 2.99), were set to those defined by atomic physics (Osterbrock & Ferland, 2006). Furthermore, the widths of a given Gaussian component were constrained to be the same for each line in the doublet. The resulting model parameters for each aperture are presented in Table 3.1.

The difference between the mean wavelength of each Gaussian component and the rest [OIII] wavelength in the reference frame of the galaxy was calculated using redshifts[3] of $z = 0.00381$ for NGC 1068 and $z = 0.003262$ for NGC 4151. The intrinsic width of each component was also determined by subtracting the instrumental width of the STIS G430L grating in quadrature from the measured widths. According to the STIS manual, for a slit of width 0.1 arcseconds, the instrumental broadening in the spectral direction is in the range $2 < \mathrm{FWHM} < 3$ pixels, corresponding to $5.5 < \mathrm{FWHM} < 8.2$ Å for the G430L grating and $9.8 < \mathrm{FWHM} < 14.8$ Å for the G750L grating. By fitting single Gaussian profiles to the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 emission-line doublet at a radial distance of 4 arcseconds from the nucleus of NGC 4151 in the G430L spectra (where the lowest line widths are measured), a line width of $\mathrm{FWHM_{inst}} = 6.0 \pm 0.4$ Å was measured; similarly, measuring the [SII]λ9531 line in the G750L spectra with this method resulted in a line width of $\mathrm{FWHM_{inst}} = 12.3 \pm 2.4$ Å. Thus, instrumental widths of $\mathrm{FWHM_{inst}} = 6.0$ Å (360 km s^{-1} at 5007 Å) and $\mathrm{FWHM_{inst}} = 12.3$ Å (560 km s^{-1} at 6575 Å) are adopted here for the G430L and G750L gratings, respectively.

In subsequent analysis, only *total* line fluxes — including all Gaussian components used — are considered, rather than fluxes from individual components (i.e. potentially representing outflowing and quiescent gas). This was done because the low spectral resolutions of the G430L and G750L gratings made it challenging to separate different kinematic components in cases where lines are heavily blended. Nonetheless, in order to improve the accuracy of the fits to the weaker emission lines and blends in the spectra, the kinematics (velocity shifts and widths) derived from fits to the [OIII] doublet in each aperture were used to constrain the fits to the other key diagnostic lines, such as Hβ, Hγ, [OIII]λ4363, [OII]λ3726,3729, [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319,7331, [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4068,4076, [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731, [ArIV]$\lambda\lambda$4711,4740 and HeIIλ4686. It was found that this procedure produced acceptable fits to these lines, including the transauroral [SII]$\lambda\lambda$4068,4076 and [OII]$\lambda\lambda$7319,7331 doublets. However, for closely spaced doublets such as [OII]λ3726,3729, the low spectral

---

[3] 21 cm redshifts from the NASA/IPAC Extragalactic Database (`https://ned.ipac.caltech.edu/`).

Aperture	Distance (arcseconds)	Distance (pc)	$v_{\mathrm{c,a}}$ (km s^{-1})	FWHM$_{\mathrm{c,a}}$ (km s^{-1})	$v_{\mathrm{c,b}}$ (km s^{-1})	FWHM$_{\mathrm{c,b}}$ (km s^{-1})
			NGC 1068			
1	−1.45	−97	−828±4	572±25	295±40	1078±96
2	−0.74	−50	−184±7	1017±31	—	—
3	−0.23	−15	−306±3	662±26	−5±20	1770±43
4	0.10	7	95±3	367±26	235±8	1684±34
			NGC 4151			
1	−1.58	−123	−172±2	420±25	−263±29	1261±102
3	−0.38	−30	−392±6	0±28 [a]	−356±3	1065±26
5	0.48	37	34±1	234±24	121±11	1013±44
6	1.02	80	40±1	307±25	126±8	768±35

[a] The measured width of the *component* is consistent with the instrumental width, and hence unresolved.

Table 3.1: [OIII] model parameters (galaxy rest-frame component velocity shift: v_{c}; instrumentally-corrected component velocity width: FWHM$_c$) and distances from the nucleus (in arcseconds and pc) for each of the apertures for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. In apertures where there are multiple Gaussian components for the [OIII] models, the kinematic parameters for the two components are labelled with the subscripts ‘a’ and ‘b’.

resolution meant that individual lines were not resolved, and so the *total* doublet profile was modelled as a single emission line during the fitting process.

3.3 Analysis of the STIS spectra

3.3.1 Transauroral-line diagnostics

In order to provide estimates of the electron densities of the warm-ionised gas in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, I made use of the transauroral-line-ratio technique (first described by Holt et al. 2011) that was verified and used in Chapter 2, for two key reasons. First, these lines have sufficiently-high critical densities (Appendix B) to be sensitive to the electron density values that have previously been determined for these objects ($10^{3.0} < n_e < 10^{7.2}$ cm^{-3}). Second, because the transauroral-line method uses the ratios of the *total* line fluxes of widely-separated emission-line doublets (unlike the commonly-used [OII](3726/3729) and [SII](6717/6731) ratios), this method is less susceptible to uncertainties from fit degeneracy resulting from the larger velocity widths (as is often the case for outflowing gas) and low spectral resolutions (as for the G430L and G750L STIS gratings) that lead to the blending of line profiles within the doublets.

Aperture	$\log_{10}(n_e[\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])$	E(B-V)$_{\mathrm{TR}}$	T_e (K)
	NGC 1068		
1	$4.06^{+0.05}_{-0.06}$	$0.16^{+0.04}_{-0.05}$	14300^{+2100}_{-1300}
2	$4.65^{+0.05}_{-0.04}$	$0.05^{+0.04}_{-0.05}$	14400^{+1500}_{-1100}
3	$4.74^{+0.05}_{-0.05}$	$0.16^{+0.05}_{-0.04}$	16100^{+1400}_{-1000}
4	$4.45^{+0.09}_{-0.09}$	$0.17^{+0.08}_{-0.08}$	16000^{+1600}_{-1100}
	NGC 4151		
1	$3.68^{+0.08}_{-0.10}$	$0.11^{+0.05}_{-0.07}$	16300^{+3400}_{-1800}
3	$4.04^{+0.07}_{-0.15}$	$0.13^{+0.05}_{-0.06}$	21000^{+3300}_{-2100}
5	$3.94^{+0.10}_{-0.10}$	$0.15^{+0.08}_{-0.08}$	17300^{+5200}_{-2400}
6	$3.75^{+0.8}_{-0.10}$	$0.23^{+0.07}_{-0.07}$	15200^{+3400}_{-1800}

Table 3.2: Electron densities, reddening values and electron temperatures for the NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 apertures. The densities and reddenings were determined simultaneously using the transauroral-line technique (Section 3.3.1; Figure 3.4), and the temperatures were determined using the [OIII](5007+4959)/4363 ratio (Section 3.3.2).

The [OIII] models were fit to the transauroral lines to measure line fluxes, which were then used to calculate the TR ratios

$$TR([OII]) = F(3726 + 3729)/F(7319 + 7331),$$
$$TR([SII]) = F(4068 + 4076)/F(6717 + 6731).$$

As in Chapter 2, the CLOUDY code (version C17.02: Ferland et al. 2017) was used to generate plane-parallel, single-slab, radiation-bounded models of solar-composition gas with no dust depletion, photoionised by a central source. The ionising continuum of this source followed a power-law of shape $F_v \propto v^{-\alpha}$ between 10 µm and 50 keV, with a spectral index of $\alpha = 1.5$. I note, however, that the TR ratios are relatively insensitive to the shape of the ionising continuum (see Appendix B in Santoro et al. 2020). The ionisation parameter was set to $\log U = -3$ (the highest value that reproduced the measured TR ratios), and the electron density of the modelled gas was varied in 0.01 dex steps between $2.00 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 5.00$. The modelled TR ratios produced for each electron density value were then reddened with the $R_{\mathrm{v}} = 3.1$ CCM89 law, producing a grid of values that could be compared to the measured ratios in order to provide simultaneous determinations of electron density and reddening. The resulting TR grid is shown in Figure 3.4, and the derived values are given in Table 3.2.

The electron densities measured in this way for NGC 1068 have values in the range $4.00 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.75$, while those for NGC 4151 are approximately an order of

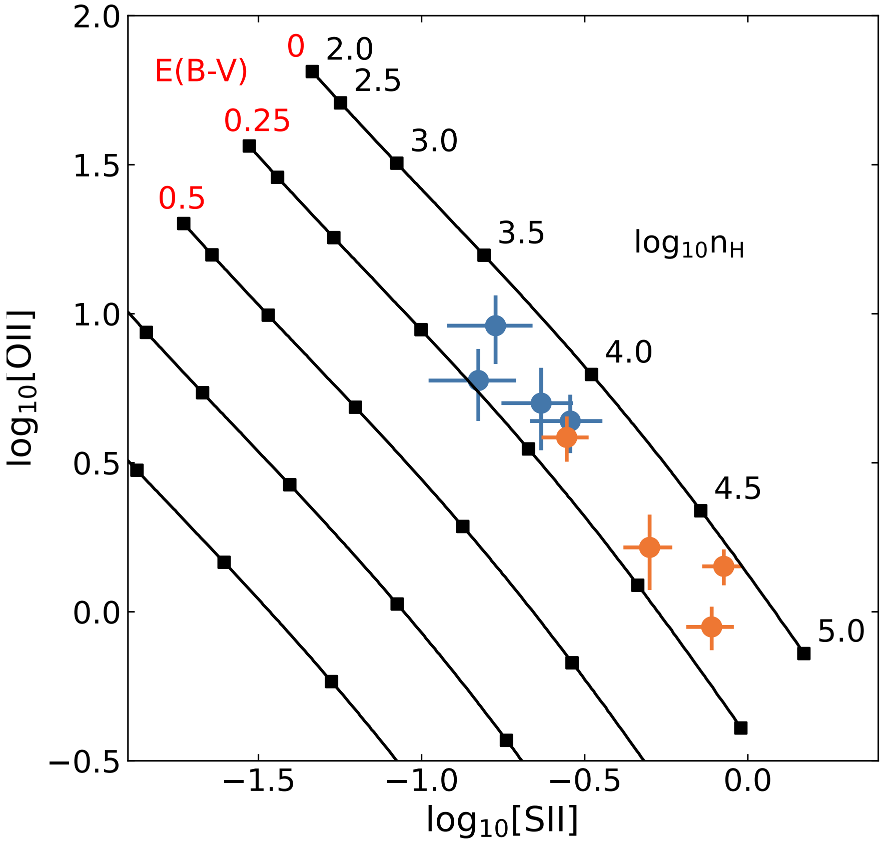


Figure 3.4: Grid of modelled transauroral (TR) [SII] and [OII] line ratios for radiation-bounded gas at different electron densities and reddenings (black joined squares; as modelled with the Cloudy code and the CCM89 extinction curve), and measured line ratios for the NGC 1068 (orange circles) and NGC 4151 (blue circles) apertures.

magnitude lower ($3.60 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.10$). This is the first time that densities above $n_e = 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3} have been found using the transauroral lines with *spatially-resolved* observations; these values agree with similarly high electron densities derived using this technique for non-spatially resolved observations of other AGN (e.g. Holt et al. 2011; Rose et al. 2018; Santoro et al. 2018; Spence et al. 2018; Davies et al. 2020; Speranza et al. 2022). Importantly, the densities found here are above the upper sensitivity limit of the traditional [OII](3726/3729) and [SII](6717/6731) line ratios (Appendix B), and since broad (outflowing) and narrow (quiescent; non-outflowing) components are not separated, are likely to be underestimates for the outflowing gas (which is expected to be denser than the quiescent gas: e.g. Villar-Martín et al. 1999; Chapter 2). The reddening values that are measured are relatively modest, and in the range $0.05 < \mathrm{E(B\text{-}V)}_{\mathrm{TR}} < 0.25$ for both objects — these values were used to deredden the spectra for all further analysis.

3.3.2 Ionisation states and mechanisms of the warm-ionised gas

The relatively-low-ionisation transauroral lines must be emitted by radiation-bounded clouds — therefore, it is uncertain how well densities derived from the transauroral ratios would represent the densities of clouds or cloud complexes that have been shock-ionised or have significant matter-bounded components. Furthermore, the model used in the transauroral-ratio method assumes radiation-bounded AGN-photoionised clouds, with no contribution from a matter-bounded component or shock-ionisation. Similarly, the multi-component ionisation modelling by Revalski et al. (2021) — which has previously been applied to NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 — uses AGN-photoionisation models. Therefore, it is important to investigate the ionisation mechanisms for the gas detected in the STIS slits, which potentially can also give information regarding the outflow acceleration mechanism(s) present.

Electron temperatures

Electron temperatures of the warm ionised phase are expected to be higher for shocked gas than AGN-photoionised gas (e.g. Fosbury et al. 1978; Villar-Martín et al. 1999). Therefore, to provide a first indication of the ionisation mechanisms of the warm-ionised gas observed in the apertures, electron temperatures were measured using the (dereddened) [OIII](5007+4959)/4363 emission-line ratio and the PyNeb Python module (Luridiana et al., 2015), taking the electron densities for the apertures to be those derived using the transauroral-line technique for both objects ($3.75 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.75$: see Table 3.2 and Section 3.3.1). Electron temperatures measured in this way are presented in Table 3.2 — values in the range $14,300 < T_e < 21,000$ K are found for every aperture in both objects, with the highest temperatures (up to $T_e = 21,000$ K) being found in the central apertures of NGC 4151. These high electron temperatures may not be fully explainable as being due to AGN-photoionisation of radiation-bounded gas (Fosbury et al. 1978; Binette et al. 1996; Villar-Martín et al. 1999; Chapter 2).

Shock-ionisation vs matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation

In order to investigate the cause of the high electron temperatures further, the [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeII/Hβ diagnostic diagram (developed by Villar-Martín et al. 1999) was produced for the apertures for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 — this is shown in Figure 3.5. The radiation-bounded photoionisation models shown here are the same as those used for the TR ratio grid in Section 3.3.1 (Figure 3.4), albeit for an electron density of $n_e = 10^4$ cm^{-3}, varying ionisation parameters (between $-3.5 < \log_{10}U < -2.0$), and two values of spectral index ($\alpha = 1.0,\ 1.5$)[4]. The pure-shock and precursor (pre-shock) models are taken from the MAPPINGS III library presented by Allen et al. (2008), with varying shock velocities in the range $100 < v_{\rm shock} < 1000$ km s^{-1} and magnetic parameters of $B/\sqrt{n} = 2{,}4\ \mu$G cm$^{3/2}$ for a solar-composition pre-shock gas with a density of $n = 10^2$ cm^{-3}. The magnetic parameters were chosen to cover a reasonable range of values expected in the ISM (Dopita & Sutherland, 1995), in addition to being close to the magnetic parameters near equipartition ($B/\sqrt{n} \sim 3.23\ \mu$G cm$^{3/2}$: Allen et al. 2008). Note that, as in Chapter 2, the standard 'BPT' diagrams (Baldwin et al., 1981) are not used here to investigate the ionisation of the gas because the regions of photo- and shock-ionisation in those diagrams overlap considerably (see Section 1.2.4, Figure 1.11). Furthermore, some of the lines involved in those diagrams (such as Hα and [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6583) are strongly blended in the apertures considered here due to the outflow kinematics and the relatively-low spectral resolution, and therefore are affected by major fit degeneracies.

---

[4] The effect of varying the photoionisation model parameters on the [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeII/Hβ diagnostic diagram is investigated in Appendix A.

In Figure 3.5, the [OIII](5007/4363) and HeII/Hβ line ratios are also plotted as functions of $\rm A_{M/I}$: the ratio of the solid angles subtended by matter-bounded clouds and radiation-bounded clouds, from modelling by Binette et al. (1996). This ratio allows estimations of the relative contribution of matter-bounded clouds and radiation-bounded clouds in the apertures. The modelling by Binette et al. (1996) assumes solar-metallicity gas, with an ionising-source spectral index of $\alpha = -1.3$, an ionisation parameter of $\log U = -1.4$, and a density of $n_{\rm MB} = 50$ cm^{-3}. In this model, the radiation-bounded clouds are ionised by UV photons which have passed through the matter-bounded component, thus the shape of the ionising spectrum reaching the radiation-bounded clouds has changed relative to that from the source — the parameters of the radiation-bounded clouds are determined using the resulting ionising spectrum and by assuming that the clouds have fixed pressures.

Due to line-blending effects and the continuum underlying the Hβ, [HeII]λ4686, and [OIII]λ4363 lines being more complex than that which underlies the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet and transauroral lines, an MCMC (Markov Chain Monte Carlo) fitting routine was used to fit the lines involved in the HeIIλ4686/Hβ and [OIII](5007/4363) ratios in each aperture for both objects — this was done to ensure that line-flux uncertainties were not significantly overestimated due to the blending of spectral lines and the continuum. The results of the Gaussian fits described in Section 3.2.5 (determined using least-squares optimisation) to these lines were used as initial starting points for the MCMC routine, which fit the same models (namely one or two Gaussian components and a low-order polynomial) to the spectra — taking into account the flux uncertainty of the HST data — with priors chosen to ensure that the resulting models were physical (i.e. the line fluxes, mean wavelengths, and line widths must have been positive). For each fit, 500 walkers were initialised in a Gaussian distribution around the starting parameters, and

5000 iterations (including a 1000 iteration 'burn-in' phase) were used. The MCMC fits themselves were run using the EMCEE PYTHON module (Foreman-Mackey et al., 2013).

From Figure 3.5, there is clear evidence for significant matter-bounded emission in apertures 1, 2, and 3 in NGC 1068, implied by high electron temperatures and HeII/H$\beta > 0.4$ (similar ratio values were also measured by Kraemer & Crenshaw 2000b); the approximate ratio of matter-bounded to radiation-bounded clouds is $A_{M/I} \sim 2$. The difference between the [OIII](5007/4363) ratios measured in the NGC 1068 apertures and those predicted from the Binette et al. (1996) modelling can be explained as the models only representing one combination of parameters: it is possible for matter-bounded clouds with different parameters to have similar [OIII](5007/4363) ratios to those found for NGC 1068. Specifically, this ratio would be smaller for higher electron densities than the low density assumed by Binette et al. (1996). Moreover, the presence of matter-bounded emission in these apertures is supported by the strength of high-ionisation coronal emission lines ($E_{\rm ion} > 100$ eV), such as [NeV]λ3426, [FeVII]λ3759, and [FeVII]λ6087, relative to lower-ionisation lines (such as [OIII]) in the STIS spectra. These and other high-ionisation lines were previously identified in the same dataset by Kraemer & Crenshaw (2000a). For Aperture 4 of NGC 1068 (centred slightly above the nucleus: Figure 3.2), the HeII/Hβ ratios are consistent with both matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation and shock-ionisation.

To further probe the ionisation mechanism of the gas, the [NeV]λ3426/[NeIII]λ3869 ratio — which is sensitive to higher-ionisation gas — was also measured using the same MCMC fitting routine described earlier. A diagnostic diagram of [NeV]λ3426/[NeIII]λ3869 vs HeII/Hβ — presented in Figure 3.6 — was produced using the same radiation-bounded-photoionisation, matter-bounded-photoionisation, and shock-ionisation models as used for the [OIII](5007/4363) and HeII/Hβ diagram. It is found that the values for all of the NGC 1068 apertures are consistent with matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation with $1 < A_{M/I} < 2$, further indicating that the gas in these apertures is matter-bounded and AGN-photoionised, including Aperture 4.

With the exception of Aperture 3, the [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeII/Hβ ratios measured in the NGC 4151 apertures (Figure 3.5), are consistent with both shock-ionisation and radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation (assuming a relatively flat spectral index of $\alpha = 1.0$ and $\log U \sim -2.0$). However, from the [NeV]λ3426/[NeIII]λ3869 vs HeII/Hβ diagram (Figure 3.6), it can be seen that the measured ratios for NGC 4151 are not consistent with pure shock-ionisation alone: if the gas is shock-ionised, then a contribution from the precursor component is required. Alternatively, the gas in these apertures may have pure radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation, however, I highlight that this requires a relatively flat spectral index ($\alpha = 1.0$), and/or higher ionisation parameters ($-3.0 < \log U < -2.0$) and densities ($n_e > 10^5$ cm^{-3}) than can explain the measured transauroral-line ratios (Section 3.3.1). Ultimately, it is not possible to unambiguously

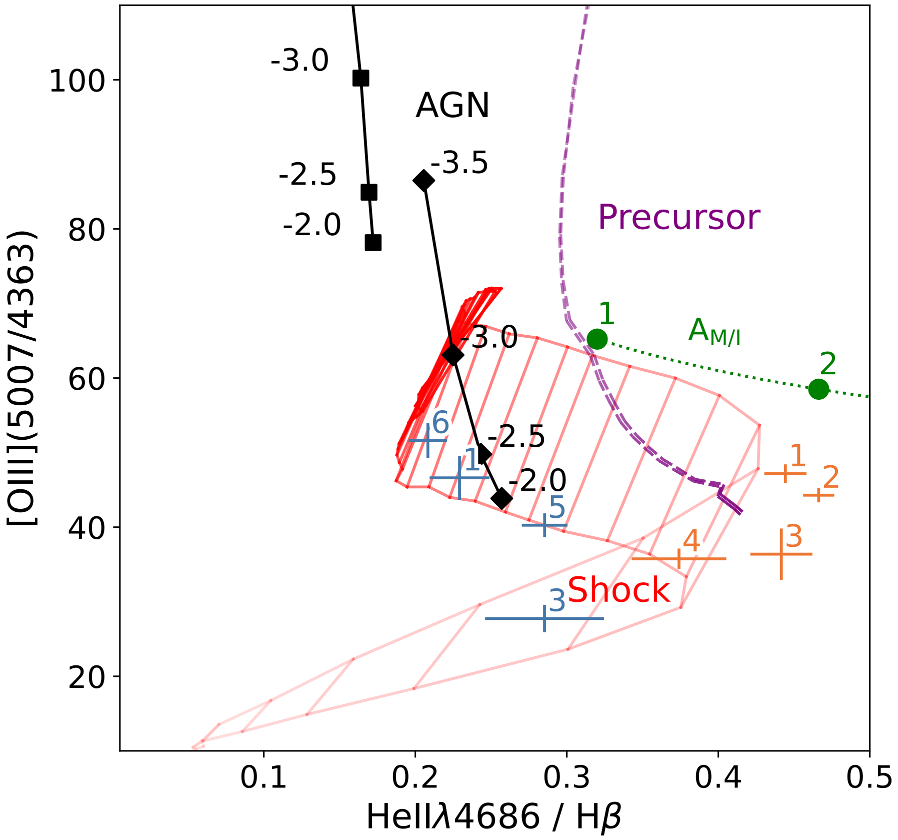


Figure 3.5: [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeII/Hβ diagnostic diagram (Villar-Martín et al., 1999), used to distinguish between radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation, matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation, and shock-ionisation. The black markers show the predicted line ratios from radiation-bounded Cloudy modelling (see Section 3.3.1) for solar-composition gas with a density of $n_e = 10^4$ cm^{-3} and varying ionisation parameters (log U; labelled) and spectral indices (squares: $\alpha = 1.5$; diamonds: $\alpha = 1.0$). The solid red grid shows the line ratios predicted from shock modelling (Allen et al., 2008) for solar-composition gas with a pre-shock density of $n = 10^2$ cm^{-3} and magnetic parameters of $B/\sqrt{n} = 2, 4\ \mu$G cm$^{3/2}$, with lighter regions on the plot corresponding to lower shock velocities. The purple dashed lines show the predicted emission from the precursor gas, which has not yet passed through (but is photoionised by) the shock, and the dotted green line shows the line ratios expected for different ratios of matter-bounded and radiation-bounded clouds ($A_{M/I}$, labelled and marked with green circles) from photoionisation modelling by Binette et al. (1996). Observed line ratios for each aperture are shown in orange for NGC 1068 and blue for NGC 4151, with the aperture number annotated.

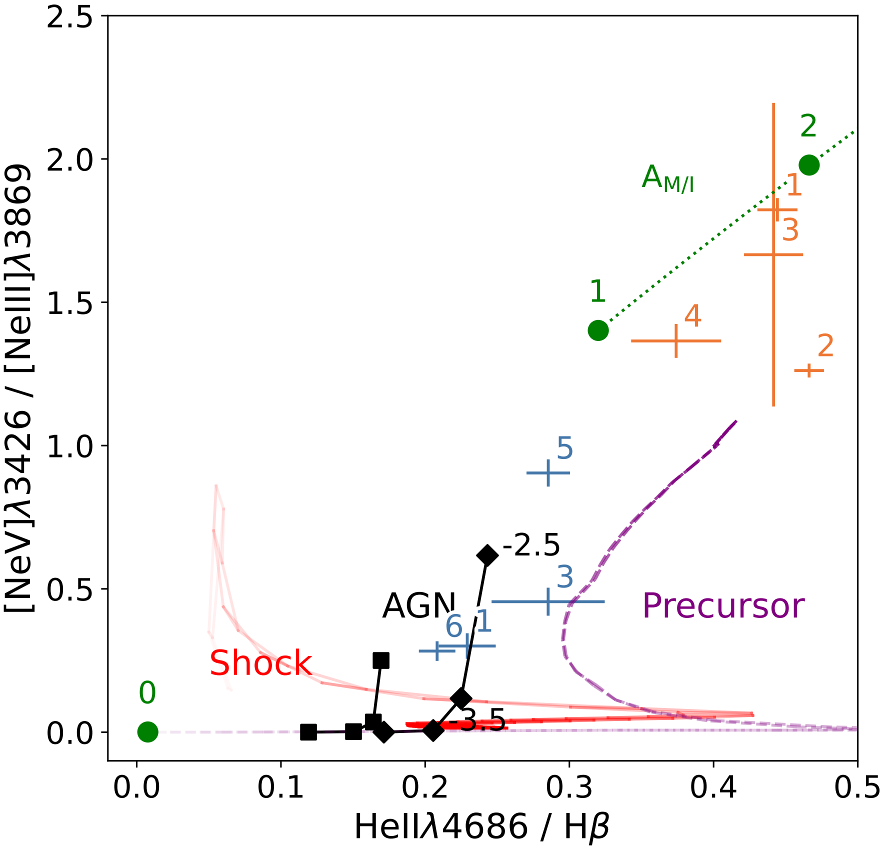


Figure 3.6: [NeV]3426/[NeIII]3869 vs HeII/Hβ diagnostic diagram — both ratios are sensitive to the presence of significant matter-bounded components. The line and marker scheme is the same as Figure 3.5. The line ratios measured in the NGC 1068 apertures are located in the matter-bounded photoionisation region of the diagram (corresponding to $1 < A_{M/I} < 2$; consistent with Figure 3.6) whereas the NGC 4151 line ratios fall in the shock/precursor/radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation region.

determine the true, dominant ionisation mechanism of the gas in the NGC 4151 apertures with the diagnostic features that are available in the STIS data.

The viability of shock-ionisation

In order to further investigate the viability of shocks as the dominant ionisation mechanism along the slits for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, the measured Hβ fluxes were compared to those expected from shock models — a technique presented by Baron et al. (2017). First, I converted the measured (and dereddened) Hβ fluxes ($F_{\mathrm{H}\beta}$) into Hβ luminosities using the luminosity distance (D_{L}) for each galaxy. The resulting luminosities were then converted into luminosities per surface area using the physical aperture sizes (i.e. the aperture width multiplied by the slit width).

The measured luminosities per surface area were then compared to those expected from the MAPPINGS III shock models of pre-shock density $n = 10^2$ cm^{-3} (corresponding to the densities measured in the apertures, assuming a compression factor of 100: Sutherland & Dopita 2017) and magnetic parameters $B/\sqrt{n} = 2, 4\,\mu$G cm$^{3/2}$. From this comparison, it was found that the Hβ luminosities per surface area, as measured in each aperture for NGC 1068 ($4.9 \times 10^{-3} < \mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{H}\beta} < 2.2 \times 10^{-2}$ erg s^{-1} cm^{-2}) and NGC 4151 ($2.2 \times 10^{-3} < \mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{H}\beta} < 4.6 \times 10^{-3}$ erg s^{-1} cm^{-2}), can be accounted for by shocks with velocities $v_{\mathrm{shock}} > 425$ km s^{-1} and $v_{\mathrm{shock}} > 225$ km s^{-1} respectively. In both cases, the outflow velocities for the apertures (Section 3.3.4; Table 3.3) are above these required velocities. This demonstrates that shock-ionisation *could* feasibly produce the recombination line fluxes measured in both objects, however, this alone does not necessarily confirm the ionisation mechanism.

I note that here a gas covering factor of unity relative to the shock (i.e. that the emitting gas covers the entire area of the shock within each aperture) is assumed, which may not be the case in reality. If this covering factor is in fact much lower than unity, then a larger shock area or higher shock velocities would be needed to produce the same Hβ luminosity.

3.3.3 Electron densities of the high-ionisation gas in NGC 1068

The relative strengths of the high-ionisation ($\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{ion}} \gtrapprox 100$ eV) lines detected in several of the NGC 1068 apertures indicate the presence of matter-bounded clouds, which may play an important role in the structure of the cloud complexes in the NLR. Determining the physical conditions of this high-ionisation component is therefore necessary. To this end, a diagnostic diagram consisting of the [FeVII](6087/3759) and [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 ratios (see Rose et al. 2011) was created (Figure 3.7). The line fluxes involved in these ratios were determined using the same MCMC fitting method described in Section 3.3.2.

The ratios involved in the [FeVII](6086/3759) vs [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 diagnostic diagram are sensitive to both electron density and temperature, and thus the position of the AGN-photoionisation grid on this diagram changes with the assumed ionising-source spectral index (α) and the ionisation parameter (U) of the gas. Therefore, the effect of varying spectral index, electron density, and ionisation parameter on this diagram was quantified before using it to derive electron densities. Two CLOUDY models for differing ionising-source spectral indices ($\alpha = 1.0, 1.5$) were created (following the methodology described in Section 3.3.3) for solar-metallicity, plane-parallel, single-slab clouds of varying ionisation parameters ($-3.5 < \log U < 2.0$) and electron densities ($5.0 < \log(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 8.0$). The resulting line-ratio grids are presented on the [FeVII](6086/3759) vs [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 diagnostic diagram in Figure 3.7, from which it can be seen that a flatter spectral index produces lower

[NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 ratios, with little effect on the [FeVII](6086/3759) ratios: for low values of [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 (i.e. as measured in Aperture 4 for NGC 1068), the effect of this variation on derived density is small (∼0.1 dex). However, a shallower spectral index cannot reproduce higher values of [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 (as measured in NGC 1068 apertures 2 and 3) without very low ($\log U < -3.0$) ionisation parameters. Therefore, the CLOUDY grid with $\alpha = 1.5$ was used to derive electron densities for the high-ionisation gas.

The measured line ratios for the NGC 1068 apertures are plotted on the [FeVII](6086/3759) vs [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 diagram in Figure 3.7. From the $\alpha = 1.5$ grid, the densities of the high-ionisation gas were determined to be in the range $6.45 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 8.00$: several orders of magnitude higher than the gas traced by the lower-critical-density [OII] and [SII] lines. The implications of this for the gas structures within the apertures are discussed in Section 3.4.2.

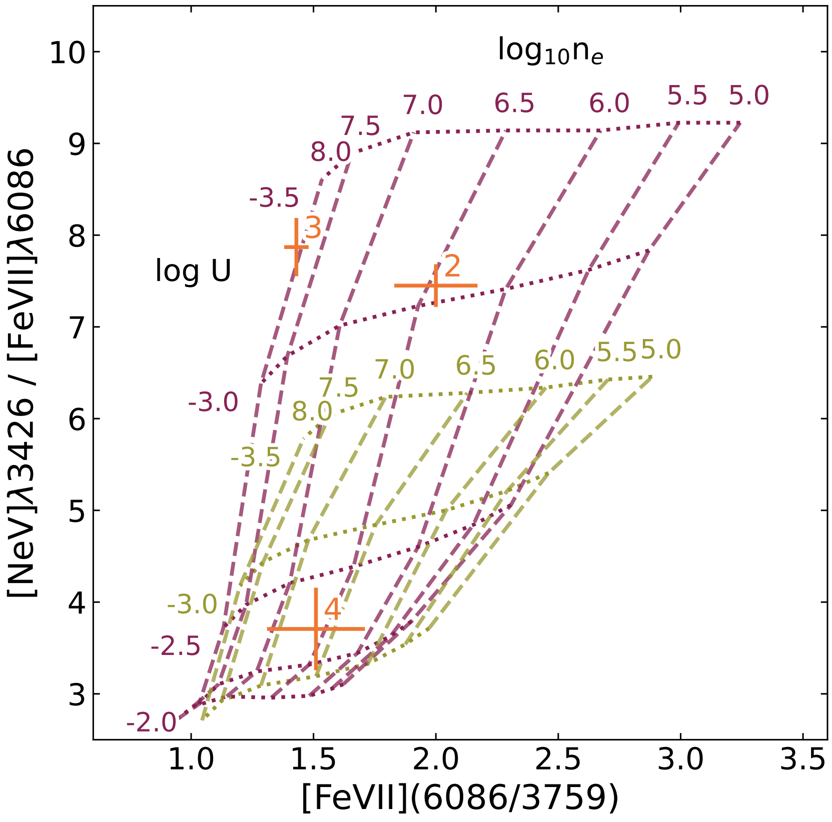


Figure 3.7: [FeVII](6087/3759) vs [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 diagnostic diagram with radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation grids generated with CLOUDY for two values of spectral index: $\alpha = 1.0$ (green) and $\alpha = 1.5$ (purple). Dashed lines connect points of constant density (labelled), and dotted lines connect points of constant ionisation parameter (also labelled). The measured ratio values in the NGC 1068 apertures are shown in orange and labelled; from the $\alpha = 1.5$ grid, the high-ionisation gas in NGC 1068 is found to have densities in the range $6.45 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 8.00$.

3.3.4 Energetics of the outflowing gas

Outflow kinematics

Determining the mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies of the gas outflows detected in the STIS spectra required measurements of the kinematics of the outflowing gas[5]. For this purpose, the results from detailed kinematic modelling of the NLRs of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 presented by Crenshaw & Kraemer (2000b) and Crenshaw et al. (2000) (hereafter CKN1068 and CKN4151), respectively, were used. I note that, due to the different PAs used and the fact that the outflow geometry likely depends greatly on PA, the updated kinematic models from Das et al. (2005) and Das et al. (2006) were not used.

To calculate deprojected velocities, a universal 'deprojection factor' was first derived by dividing the maximum observed velocities (located at the velocity 'turnover' position: see Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b and Crenshaw et al. 2000) by the maximum model-deprojected velocities from the CKN1068 and CKN4151 bicone models. The highest observed (projected) velocity at the position of each aperture was taken and divided by the determined deprojection factor to give the maximum deprojected outflow velocity in each aperture. The deprojected outflow velocities are given in Table 3.3, and are hereafter labelled as v_{out}.

I note that, while the aperture widths were not deprojected (as this projection factor would be highly uncertain), correcting for this would not have a significant effect on the conclusions and interpretations made in this chapter: the assumed outflow velocities (which are taken to be the maximal velocities from the bicone models) compensate for the lack of any (likely modest) aperture-width deprojection when calculating mass outflow rates and kinetic powers.

Mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies

Hβ luminosities were used to determine masses for the warm-ionised gas in each aperture with Equation 1.3; the Case B recombination coefficient for Hβ was taken to be $\alpha^{eff}_{H\beta} = 1.61 \times 10^{-14}$ cm^3 s^{-1} (for a gas of density $n_e = 10^4$ cm^{-3} and temperature $T_e = 20,000$ K: Osterbrock & Ferland 2006). Assuming that the derived masses (estimated using the total line fluxes) are dominated by outflowing gas, they were combined with the outflow velocities from the CKN1068 and CKN4151 models (v_{out}) and the aperture widths (ΔR) to calculate mass outflow rates using Equation 1.4. The resulting mass outflow rates were then used to produce kinetic powers with Equation 1.5.

Finally, the ratio of the kinetic power to the bolometric AGN luminosity was taken to estimate coupling efficiencies for each aperture (Equation 1.2). NGC 1068 has a bolo-

---

[5] Kinematics were not derived from the [OIII] models produced here due to the relatively-low spectral resolution and high instrumental widths of the G430L and G750L spectra.

Aperture	$v_{\rm out}$ (km s^{-1})	$M_{\rm out}$ (M$_\odot$)	$\dot{M}_{\rm out}$ (M$_\odot$yr^{-1})	$\dot{E}_{\rm kin}$ (erg s^{-1})	$\epsilon_{\rm f}$ (per cent)
			NGC 1068		
1	-1300	1.7 ± 0.3	3.7 ± 0.6	$(2.0 \pm 0.3) \times 10^{42}$	$(4.9 \pm 0.7) \times 10^{-1}$
2	-1100	0.63 ± 0.08	1.6 ± 0.2	$(6.1 \pm 0.7) \times 10^{41}$	$(1.5 \pm 0.2) \times 10^{-1}$
3	-450	0.73 ± 0.09	1.2 ± 0.1	$(7.6 \pm 0.9) \times 10^{40}$	$(1.9 \pm 0.2) \times 10^{-2}$
4	-150	0.94 ± 0.22	0.60 ± 0.14	$(4.2 \pm 1.0) \times 10^{39}$	$(1.1 \pm 0.2) \times 10^{-3}$
			NGC 4151		
1	-700	2.5 ± 0.6	3.7 ± 1.0	$(5.8 \pm 0.2) \times 10^{41}$	$(4.1 \pm 1.1) \times 10^{-1}$
3	-800	0.72 ± 0.30	3.4 ± 1.4	$(6.9 \pm 2.9) \times 10^{41}$	$(4.9 \pm 2.0) \times 10^{-1}$
5	800	1.7 ± 0.4	4.5 ± 1.2	$(9.2 \pm 2.4) \times 10^{41}$	$(6.5 \pm 1.7) \times 10^{-1}$
6	800	2.9 ± 0.7	6.9 ± 1.8	$(1.4 \pm 0.4) \times 10^{42}$	$(9.9 \pm 2.6) \times 10^{-1}$

Table 3.3: Outflow velocities, outflow masses, mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies for the apertures of the STIS spectra of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. The outflow velocities used to calculate the mass outflow rates and kinetic powers presented here are from the CKN1068 and CKN4151 models (see Section 3.3.4).

metric luminosity in the range $0.4 < L_{\rm bol} < 4.7 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1} (Woo & Urry, 2002; Alonso-Herrero et al., 2011; Lopez-Rodriguez et al., 2018; Gravity Collaboration et al., 2020), of which the lowest value is taken to ensure higher estimates of coupling efficiencies and thus determine the maximum potential impact of the outflowing gas on the host galaxy. For NGC 4151, the bolometric luminosity was taken to be $L_{\rm bol} = 1.4 \times 10^{44}$ erg s^{-1} (Kraemer et al., 2020).

Derived mass outflow rates, kinetic powers and coupling efficiencies for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are presented in Table 3.3. For NGC 1068, the maximum values determined here ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 3.7 \pm 0.6$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}; $\dot{E}_{\rm kin} = (2.0 \pm 0.3) \times 10^{42}$ erg s^{-1}, $\epsilon_{\rm f} = 0.49 \pm 0.07$ per cent) are less than the maximum values determined from photoionisation modelling by Revalski et al. (2021)[6]. For NGC 4151, the maximum derived values ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 6.9 \pm 1.8$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}; $\dot{E}_{\rm kin} = (1.4 \pm 1.0) \times 10^{42}$ erg s^{-1}, $\epsilon_{\rm f} = 0.99 \pm 0.26$ per cent) are similar to the results of photoionisation modelling by Crenshaw et al. (2015). The mass outflow rates for NGC 4151 calculated here are also consistent with previous values derived for the warm ionised phase by Storchi-Bergmann et al. (2010) ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} \approx 2.4$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}) and the X-ray emitting gas ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} \approx 2$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}: Wang et al. 2011b and Kraemer et al. 2020).

For NGC 1068, the mass outflow rates for the warm ionised phase are much below that of the cold-molecular gas at a similar radial distance from the nucleus (i.e. traced by CO, HCN; $T \sim 100$ K): García-Burillo et al. (2014) derive a cold-molecular mass outflow rate of $\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 63^{+21}_{-37}$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1} within the $r \sim 200$ pc circumnuclear disk (CND) of NGC 1068. This indicates that most of the outflowing mass may be present in the colder, non-ionised gas phases, as has been found for other objects (see Chapter 2 and Ramos Almeida et al. 2019).

---

[6] Crenshaw et al. (2015) and Revalski et al. (2021) assume bolometric luminosities of $L_{\rm bol} = 1 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1} for NGC 1068 and $L_{\rm bol} = 7.9 \times 10^{43}$ erg s^{-1} for NGC 4151 when calculating coupling efficiencies.

3.4 Discussion

Through the analysis of archival STIS spectra of the central regions ($r < 160$ pc) of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, this chapter has presented evidence for dense ($10^{3.6} < n_e < 10^{4.8}$ cm^{-3}) gas that shows line ratios consistent with matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation in the case of NGC 1068, and shock-ionisation (with precursor gas ionisation) or radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation in the case of NGC 4151. Furthermore, the measured Hβ luminosities could be explained as being due to shock-ionisation for both objects, assuming a shock covering factor of unity. In both objects, outflow coupling efficiencies are derived that are close to the lowest value required by models of galaxy evolution, however, these are likely underestimates. In this section, I discuss the implication of these results on the dominant ionisation and acceleration mechanisms of the gas seen in the STIS slits, compare the results of this analysis to past work on these two well-studied objects, and investigate the impact on the density diagnostic techniques used. Finally, I place the results of this chapter in a broader context by comparing them with those of Chapter 2, which considered the Seyfert 2 galaxy IC 5063.

3.4.1 The outflow ionisation and acceleration mechanisms in the NLRs of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151

To determine the true impact of the outflowing gas on the host galaxies, quantitative comparison of observations to theoretical modelling is needed. However, both modelling of jet-ISM interactions (Capetti et al., 1997; Axon et al., 1998; May & Steiner, 2017; May et al., 2020) and radiation-pressure-driven outflows (Crenshaw et al., 2000; Crenshaw & Kraemer, 2000b; Das et al., 2005, 2006; Revalski et al., 2021; Meena et al., 2023) is able to explain the observed kinematics in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. Therefore, in order to enable accurate comparisons to theoretical models and thus accurately determine the impact of the outflows in these objects, the dominant outflow acceleration mechanism(s) need to be robustly identified.

Matter-bounded ionisation and the acceleration mechanism in NGC 1068

It has been previously proposed that the outflows in NGC 1068 are driven via radiation pressure (Kraemer & Crenshaw, 2000a; Das et al., 2006; Revalski et al., 2021; Meena et al., 2023), instead of via shocks induced by the radio jet colliding with the ISM within the bicone. While emission from the outflowing and quiescent gas is not separated in this work, the results presented here may be taken as consistent with this mechanism: Section 3.3.2 presents evidence for matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation of the warm-ionised gas in the form of simultaneous high [OIII] temperatures (Table 3.2: $T_e \sim 15,000$ K; corresponding to [OIII](5007/4363) < 60) and line ratios (HeIIλ4686 / H$\beta > 0.4$: Figure 3.5; [NeV]λ3426 / [NeIII]λ3869 > 1.0: Figure 3.6) within a 134 pc radius from the nucleus in the NE cone along the radio axis, as perhaps may be expected for radiatively-accelerated gas. However, it is possible that the outflowing gas has been shock-ionised and accelerated by the jet, but has subsequently cooled and then been reionised by the AGN (as is the case for IC 5063: Chapter 2). Spatially-resolved, high spectral-resolution observations are needed to further investigate this situation by separating the emission from the outflowing and quiescent gas, and then determining the ionisation and excitation mechanisms of each kinematic component. In addition, comparing the electron densities of the outflowing and non-outflowing gas may reveal signs of shock compression, which is expected to be a factor of ∼4–100 (Sutherland & Dopita, 2017).

It is notable that the outflowing gas in NGC 1068 appears to be spatially confined to the extent of the radio structure: the broad (FWHM > 250 km s^{-1}) [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 emission in the G430L spectra is seen to a maximum radius of ∼4.8 arcseconds from the nucleus in the NE cone (as measured from the line profiles of the [OIII] emission that extends beyond the regions covered by the apertures), similar to the maximum radial extent of the NE radio lobe (6.18 arcseconds; 420 pc) measured from radio imaging (e.g. 15 GHz: Wilson & Ulvestad 1987; 5 GHz: Wilson & Ulvestad 1983, Gallimore et al. 1996; 22 GHz: Gallimore et al. 1996; 1.4 GHz: Gallimore et al. 1996, García-Burillo et al. 2014). This is also in agreement with ground-based Fabry-Pérot integral field spectroscopy by Cecil et al. (1990) — which finds no significant velocity deviation from the systematic velocity beyond the radio lobe — and kinematic modelling by Crenshaw & Kraemer (2000b), Das et al. (2006) and Meena et al. (2023), who find outflows extended up to a radial distance of ∼5.1 arcseconds from the nucleus[7]. Furthermore, VLT/MUSE spectroscopy presented by Venturi et al. (2021) shows that the measured [OIII] W_{70} velocity parameter has high values ($400 <$ [OIII] $W_{70} < 1200$ km s^{-1}) between the nucleus and the lobe, out to a radius of 3.6 arcseconds along the bicone axis. Moreover, the NLR molecular CO(3–2) outflows (as seen in ALMA imaging by García-Burillo et al. 2014) decelerate within the radio lobe, at a distance of $r \sim 400$ pc ($r \sim 5.7$ arcseconds) from the nucleus. Taken together, this shows that the NE cone outflows have a similar extent to the NE radio lobe, and is evidence for the outflows being accelerated by the radio jet, although it does not entirely rule out radiative acceleration.

---

[7] An [OIII] emission knot in the NLR of NGC 1068, labelled 'A' by Meena et al. (2023) and located 7.3 arcseconds from the nucleus (i.e. beyond the radio source), has outflow-like kinematics ($200 <$ FWHM < 1000 km s^{-1}; $v_{\rm out} = 863$ km s^{-1}). As noted by Meena et al. (2023), this knot lies beyond the expected extent of radiatively-driven outflows. Regardless, I highlight that the vast majority of the outflows along the radio axis are located at lower radii than the maximum extent of the NE radio lobe.

Shock-ionisation and acceleration in NGC 4151

The results produced here for NGC 4151 indicate that the near-nuclear gas along the radio axis may be shock-ionised, since the measured [OIII](5007/4363), HeII/Hβ, and [NeV]λ3426/[NeIII]λ3869 line ratios and Hβ luminosities are consistent with those expected from a mixture of pure-shock and shock-precursor ionisation (Figures 3.5 and 3.6; Section 3.3.2).

The radio structure in the NLR of NGC 4151, as seen in low-resolution 1.5–5 GHz VLA radio imaging by Johnston et al. (1982), has a lobe-like component with a centroid 6.43 arcseconds from the nucleus along the radio axis in the NE cone. This structure lies beyond the maximum $\sim$4 arcseconds extent of the warm-ionised outflows (Meena et al. 2023; see also Das et al. 2005), and — as I have argued for the situation in NGC 1068 — is consistent with the outflows being launched by the radio jet. From HST/PC + HST/WFPC2 imaging, Williams et al. (2017) found higher [OIII]/Hα ratios close to the string of radio knots that are seen in their higher-resolution 1.51 GHz observations (shown here in Figure 3.1), with the values of this ratio decreasing beyond radial distances of $r \sim 4$ arcseconds from the nucleus along the radio axis. The authors interpreted this as the radio jet having a contribution to the ionisation of the gas close to the nucleus, but AGN-photoionisation being dominant further out. This is also in agreement with the results from X-ray and optical imaging by Wang et al. (2011a), who propose a mixture of shock-ionisation and AGN-photoionisation in the NLR of NGC 4151.

Taken together with the findings of these previous investigations, the results presented in this chapter may indicate that the outflows in NGC 4151 have been shock-accelerated and then re-ionised by photons from the AGN in varying amounts at different locations, with AGN-photoionisation being dominant further from the nucleus.

3.4.2 The effect of ionisation mechanisms on density diagnostics

The ionisation mechanisms (Section 3.3.2), electron temperatures (Section 3.3.2), and electron densities (Sections 3.3.1 and 3.3.3) of the warm-ionised gas detected in the STIS slits allow an investigation into the structures and conditions of the line-emitting clouds, and therefore verification of the origins of different emission lines and the precision of diagnostics which make use of them. For example, the transauroral-line density diagnostic (Section 3.3.1) relies on AGN-photoionisation being dominant, with no significant contribution from a matter-bounded component or shock-ionisation. Since evidence is found here for matter-bounded emission in NGC 1068 and potential shock-ionisation in NGC 4151, it is important to investigate the effect of this on derived densities.

The impact of matter-bounded photoionisation

If the higher-ionisation lines are indeed emitted by matter-bounded gas structures in the outflow (as shown by the [OIII] temperatures, HeII/Hβ ratios, and [FeVII](6086/3759) vs [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 diagram: Sections 3.3.2 and 3.3.3), then the transauroral lines cannot be emitted by these structures. However, it is possible that they are emitted by different clouds within the same cloud complexes, considering that these lines have similar profiles in each of the apertures. Alternatively, or perhaps in addition, it is possible that the outer layers of a single cloud are matter-bounded, while the denser core is radiation-bounded (one of the scenarios presented by Binette et al. 1996). In this scenario, the matter-bounded layers may represent lower-density gas that was driven away from the ionisation front by the increase in pressure that occurred when the gas structure was first photoionised by the AGN. However, this is not consistent with findings of this chapter: in Section 3.3.3, the [FeVII](6087/3759) and [NeV]λ3426/[FeVII]λ6086 emission-line ratios were used to determine high-ionisation gas densities of $6.45 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 8.00$ in the NGC 1068 apertures: significantly higher than that of the lower-ionisation gas. A potential explanation is that the gas that is emitting the high-ionisation [FeVII] and [NeV] lines represents dense fragments of the expanding matter-bounded component: since these lines have high critical densities ($7.1 < \log_{10}(n_{\mathrm{crit}}\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 8.5$; Appendix B), they would only be emitted strongly by such dense cloud components.

Therefore, given the ionisation energies of the lines (Appendix B), I propose that the [FeVII] and [NeV] lines trace matter-bounded, higher-ionisation clouds within the complexes (or edges of individual clouds), and the [OII] and [SII] lines are emitted from radiation-bounded clouds (or cores of individual clouds). In this scenario, much of the [OIII] emission must arise from the matter-bounded regime in order to explain the high electron temperatures that are measured in the NGC 1068 apertures (Section 3.3.2). Hence, given the high density of the high-ionisation gas, it is likely that the gas emitting the [OIII] lines is denser than the gas that is emitting the transauroral lines. This reinforces the need for outflow diagnostics that are sensitive to high ($n_e > 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3}) densities.

The impact of shock-ionisation

Since the gas in the NGC 4151 apertures may be shock-ionised, it is essential to quantify the effect of this on the transauroral-ratio density diagnostic. In Appendix C, I plot the TR ratios from shock models over the transauroral-line photoionisation diagnostic grid used in Section 3.3.1, and quantify the impact of shock-ionisation on the transauroral-line-derived electron density and reddening values. These diagrams show that, overall, the effect on the derived density is ±0.38 orders of magnitude, and the effect on derived reddening values is E(B-V)±0.13. Crucially, this is much less than the impact of using lower-critical-density techniques (such as the [SII](6717/6731) ratio), and is similar to the effect of varying the parameters of the photoionisation model (Santoro et al. 2020: $\log(n_e[\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])\pm(0.1–0.7)$; E(B-V)±(0.1–0.2)). In summary, while using the transauroral-line method presented by Holt et al. (2011) as a density and reddening diagnostic for shock-ionised gas does incur some uncertainty on the derived densities, the derived densities are still likely more accurate than those derived from commonly-used, traditional methods.

Gas that has been shock-ionised by jet-ISM interactions presents a problem for the photoionisation modelling method used by Revalski et al. (2021), as the technique relies on assuming that material at a given distance from the nucleus is being photoionised by the central AGN engine. In the case of shock-ionisation, the outflows are instead being shock-ionised *locally* within the bicone at any given distance from the nucleus, and so any electron densities derived using an assumed ionisation parameter and distance will be incorrect. Revalski et al. (2021) used the standard BPT diagrams (Baldwin et al., 1981) in an attempt to ensure all of the measured line ratios were consistent with AGN-photoionisation. However, the regions of AGN shock and photoionisation in these diagrams overlap considerably (Section 1.2.4); further diagnostics should also be used in order to disentangle the contribution from shocks and photoionisation, such as the [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeIIλ4686/Hβ (Villar-Martín et al. 1999; used in this chapter in Figure 3.5) and [FeII]λ12570/Paβ vs H$_2\lambda$21218/Brγ (Chapter 2, Figure 2.14; Rodríguez-Ardila et al. 2005; Riffel et al. 2013a; Colina et al. 2015; Riffel et al. 2021) diagnostic diagrams, and/or the three-dimensional diagram (which makes use of line ratios and velocity dispersion) presented by D'Agostino et al. (2019).

Overall, despite the challenges that shock-ionisation and significant-matter-bounded photoionisation components present to the transauroral-line technique and the Revalski et al. (2021) photoionisation modelling, I argue that these methods are nonetheless more-robust density diagnostics than the commonly-used [SII](6717/6731) and [OII](3726/3729) ratios. In the case of matter-bounded photoionisation, the [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 and [OII]$\lambda\lambda$3726,3729 lines arise from the same part of the ionisation structure of the cloud as the transauroral lines, meaning they face the same issues as the transauroral-line method, while the Revalski et al. (2021) modelling allows for higher-ionisation components, and therefore is a more-accurate diagnostic of the overall cloud density. Furthermore, it is established here that using radiation-bounded photoionisation grids to measure the densities of shock-ionised gas with the transauroral-line method incurs an uncertainty on the overall density that is much less than using lower-critical density line ratios for high-density ($n_e > 10^3$ cm^{-3}) gas: in the case of NGC 4151 (where there may be some contribution from shock-ionisation), the transauroral-line-derived densities are similar to those reported by Revalski et al. (2022) (see also Crenshaw et al. 2015), indicating that both methods still give more-precise density determinations than traditional methods, despite some of their underlying assumptions potentially being incorrect.

The origin of the transauroral lines in NGC 1068, NGC 4151 and IC 5063

In order to further investigate the origin of the transauroral lines in the archetypal Seyfert galaxies (and the nearby Sey 2 IC 5063: Chapter 2), the measured [OII](7319+7331)/[OIII]λ5007 vs [SII](4068+4076)/Hβ ratios are plotted with overlaid grids from radiation-bounded photoionisation modelling (as first presented by Spence et al. 2018) and shock modelling in Figures 3.8a and 3.8b, respectively.

The photoionisation models in Figure 3.8a are those used in Sections 3.3.1 and 3.3.2, generated using CLOUDY for a radiation-bounded cloud with varying values of density, ionisation parameter and spectral index. The measured ratios for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are consistent with this grid; however, the corresponding ionisation parameters are a half-an-order-of-magnitude higher than that which was required to reproduce the measured transauroral-line ratios ($\log U = -3$; Figure 3.4). This is further evidence that radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation is not the dominant ionisation mechanism in the STIS apertures, and in the case of NGC 1068, can be explained as the [OIII] and Hβ emission being dominated by matter-bounded components (as indicated by the measured HeII/Hβ ratios; Figure 3.5). This is because matter-bounded emission will increase the relative strength of the [OIII] and Hβ lines, reducing the [OII](7319+7331)/[OIII]λ5007 and [SII](4068+4076)/Hβ ratios and thus giving a higher corresponding ionisation parameter on the radiation-bounded grid.

These measured ratios are also presented in Figure 3.8b with the expected ratios from shock-ionisation modelling. The shock models here are those presented by Allen et al. (2008), and are for two values of pre-shock density (10^1 cm^{-3} and 10^2 cm^{-3}), velocities of $v_{\rm shock} = 400, 600, 800$ km s^{-1}, and magnetic parameters in the range $2 < B/\sqrt{n} < 10$ μG cm$^{3/2}$. In all apertures for NGC 4151, the measured line ratios are consistent with shock-ionisation, albeit with relatively-high magnetic parameters ($4 < B/\sqrt{n} < 10$ μG cm$^{3/2}$). These magnetic parameters are higher than those typical for the ISM ($2 < B/\sqrt{n} < 4$ μG cm$^{3/2}$; Dopita & Sutherland 1995; Allen et al. 2008), potentially indicating higher magnetic fields associated with the shocked material. If the gas detected in the NGC 4151 data is indeed shock-ionised, then the position of the shock-model grid on the diagram would explain why the ionisation parameter deduced from the radiation-bounded photoionisation grid (Figure 3.8a) for the NGC 4151 apertures is higher than expected from the TR diagnostic grid (Figure 3.4): shock-ionisation produces lower values of [OII](7319+7331)/[OIII]λ5007 and [SII](4068+4076)/Hβ, corresponding to higher ionisation parameters on the photoionisation grid.

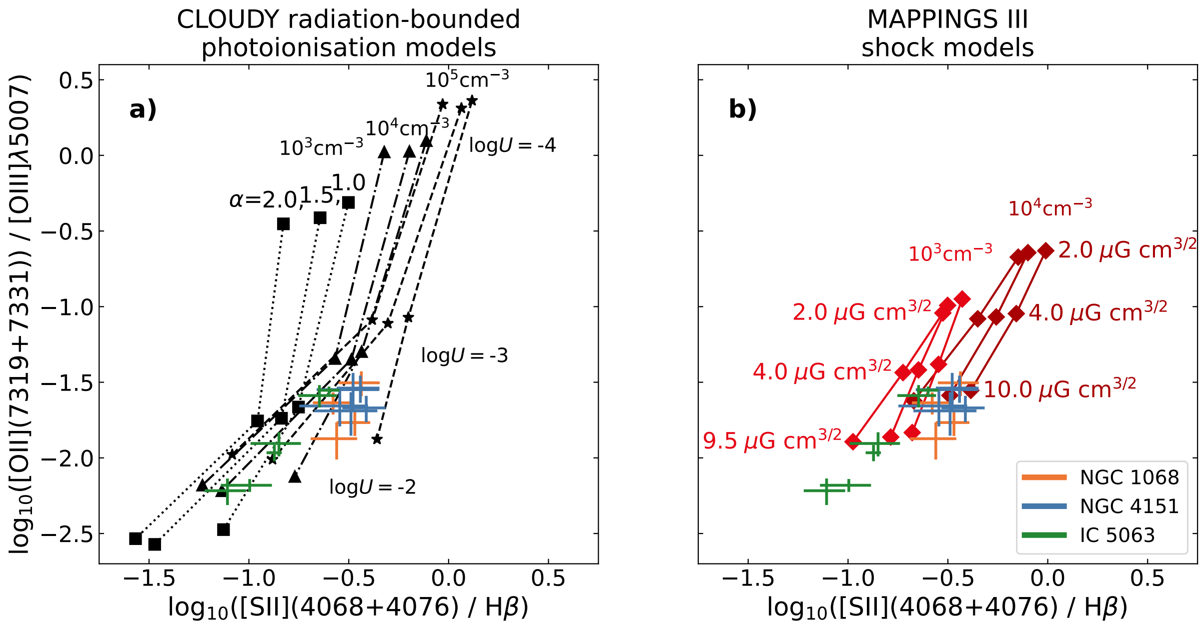


Figure 3.8: TR([SII])/Hβ vs TR([OII])/[OIII]λ5007 ratio grids from CLOUDY radiation-bounded photoionisation modelling (**a**) and the Allen et al. (2008) MAPPINGS III shock-ionisation models (**b**), along with measured values for each aperture in NGC 1068 (orange crosses), NGC 4151 (blue crosses) and IC 5063 (green crosses; see Chapter 2). The modelled photoionisation-line-ratio grid shown in **a)** is for three spectral indices ($\alpha = 1.0, 1.5, 2.0$; labelled) at different electron densities (squares: $n_e = 10^3$ cm^{-3}; triangles: $n_e = 10^4$ cm^{-3}; stars: $n_e = 10^5$ cm^{-3}) and ionisation parameters (log U; labelled), while the shock-ionisation grids in **b)** are for post-shock densities of $n = 10^3$ cm^{-3} and $n = 10^4$ cm^{-3} (labelled; assuming a shock compression factor of 100), magnetic parameters of $B/\sqrt{n} = 2,\ 4,\ 10\ \ \mu$G cm$^{3/2}$ (labelled), and velocities of $v_{\text{shock}} = 400, 600, 800$ km s^{-1}.

Finally, I also present [OII](7319+7331)/[OIII]λ5007 and [SII](4068+4076)/Hβ ratios for the Seyfert 2 galaxy IC 5063, as measured from the VLT/Xshooter dataset described in Chapter 2. In agreement with the analysis of Chapter 2, here it is found that the ratios are consistent with radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation for an ionisation parameter of $-3 < \log U < -2$ and densities in the range $3 < \log_{10}(n_e[\text{cm}^{-3}]) < 4$.

3.4.3 Comparison of the transauroral-line-derived electron densities to other techniques

Using the transauroral-line method, high electron densities are measured for NGC 1068 ($4.00 < \log(n_e[\text{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.75$) and NGC 4151 ($3.50 < \log(n_e[\text{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.10$) (Section 3.3.1; Table 3.2). This agrees with the similarly high densities ($n_e > 10^3$ cm^{-3}) that are derived from multi-component photoionisation modelling of both objects presented in Crenshaw et al. (2015) and Revalski et al. (2021) (see also Collins et al. 2009 and Revalski et al. 2022). Crucially, the derived densities from both techniques lie above the sensitivity range of the traditional [SII](6717/6731) and [OII](3726/2739) techniques, which are commonly used (either directly or as a basis for assumption) to derive electron densities in studies of the warm ionised phase (e.g. Nesvadba et al. 2006; Liu et al. 2013; Harrison et al. 2014; Fiore et al. 2017), thus further supporting the need for robust warm-ionised gas electron density diagnostics such as the transauroral-line technique and multi-component photoionisation modelling.

Through the use of the traditional [SII](6717/6731) ratio, Kraemer & Crenshaw (2000a) (using the same STIS dataset as used in this work) and Kakkad et al. (2018) and Mingozzi et al. (2019) (using IFU data) derived electron densities of $n_e \sim 10^3$ cm^{-3} for the outflows in the NLR of NGC 1068. These [SII]-derived densities are 1–1.5 orders of magnitude lower than those that are found using the transauroral-line method, and are close to the upper limit of the density range for the [SII]-ratio technique (Appendix B: $n_{crit} \sim 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3}). This provides further evidence that, for gas of electron densities $n_e > 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3}, the [SII](6717/6731) ratio may underestimate the true electron density by more than an order of magnitude.

3.4.4 The impact of the outflowing gas on the host galaxies

Using densities derived from the transauroral-line ratios, reddening-corrected recombination line fluxes, and kinematics taken from previous modelling, mass outflow rates in the range $0.6 < \dot{M}_{\rm out} < 6.9$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1} and coupling efficiencies in the range $1.1\times10^{-3} < \epsilon_{\rm kin} < 0.99$ per cent are found (Table 3.3). In many cases, the calculated coupling efficiencies are just above the lower limit required by models of the co-evolution of galaxies and their supermassive black holes (e.g. $\sim$ 0.5–10 per cent: Di Matteo et al. 2005; Springel et al. 2005; Hopkins & Elvis 2010). It is important to note that there is likely more outflowing material within the bicones that is not covered by the slits (which are only 0.1 arcseconds wide), and that comparisons between coupling efficiencies from models and observations are not straightforward (see Section 1.2.3 and Harrison et al. 2018). To properly account for the impact of the warm-ionised outflows, detailed studies that make use of robust density diagnostics, separate emission from the outflowing and quiescent gas and, importantly, cover the entire NLRs of both objects, are needed. Moreover, I highlight that assessments of *all* gas phases — not just the warm ionised phase — are needed to robustly assess the *total* impact of the AGN-driven outflows (Section 1.2.1; Cicone et al. 2018), as the warm-ionised gas may represent just a fraction of the total outflowing gas mass at a given radius (e.g. Chapter 2; Ramos Almeida et al. 2019). Therefore, it is likely that the true coupling efficiencies of the total NLR outflows in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are higher than are calculated here.

Object	$L_{\rm bol}$ (erg s^{-1})	$L_{1.4\,\rm GHz}$ (W Hz^{-1})	$P_{\rm jet}$ (erg s^{-1})	$\theta_{\rm jet}$[a]	Ionisation mechanism[b]
NGC 1068	0.4–4.7×10^{45}	2.3×10^{23}	1.8×10^{43}	$\sim 45°$	Matter-bounded photoionisation
NGC 4151	1.4×10^{44}	1.6×10^{22}	$\sim 10^{42}$	$\sim 36°$	Photo- and/or shock-ionisation
IC 5063	7.6×10^{44}	3×10^{23}	10^{44-45}	$\sim 5°$	Radiation-bounded photoionisation

[a] Jet power for NGC 1068: García-Burillo et al. (2014); NGC 4151: Wang et al. (2011a); IC 5063: Mukherjee et al. (2018).

[b] Determined with line ratios measured in slits along PA = 202° (NGC 1068), PA = 70° (NGC 4151) and PA = 115° (IC 5063).

Table 3.4: Bolometric luminosities, 1.4 GHz radio luminosities, jet powers ($P_{\rm jet}$), jet orientations with respect to the disk ($\theta_{\rm jet}$), and ionisation mechanisms determined along the radio axes for the nearby Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068, NGC 4151, and IC 5063.

3.4.5 A tale of three Seyferts: NGC 1068, NGC 4151 and IC 5063

Finally, using the results for the nearby Seyfert 2 IC 5063 presented in Chapter 2 along with the results for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 that are presented here, a sample of nearby Seyferts with spatially-resolved, detailed studies of their NLR outflows can be constructed.

IC 5063 is a nearby ($z = 0.01131$) early-type Seyfert 2 galaxy that is seen close to edge-on, with a radio jet propagating almost in the plane of the disk which drives fast ($v_{\rm out} > 700\,{\rm km\,s^{-1}}$) outflows (Morganti et al. 1998; Oosterloo et al. 2000; Morganti et al. 2015; Mukherjee et al. 2018; Chapter 2). These outflows are seen in multiple gas phases, including warm ionised (Morganti et al. 2007; Sharp & Bland-Hawthorn 2010; Congiu et al. 2017; Venturi et al. 2021; Chapter 2), neutral atomic (Morganti et al., 1998; Oosterloo et al., 2000), warm molecular (Tadhunter et al. 2014; Chapter 2), and cold molecular (Morganti et al., 2013b, 2015; Dasyra et al., 2016; Oosterloo et al., 2017).

In Chapter 2, I presented evidence that both the outflowing and quiescent warm-ionised gas in IC 5063 has dominant AGN-photoionisation — even though the outflows show clear signatures of jet-acceleration — and that the different outflow phases may represent a post-shock cooling sequence. I interpreted this situation as the pre-shock gas being AGN-photoionised, and the closest post-shock gas to the AGN being maintained in an ionised state by photoionisation. In Figure 3.9, the [OIII](5007/4363) and HeII4686/Hβ ratios for the outflowing gas in IC 5063 (Section 2.3.1) are added to the diagnostic dia-

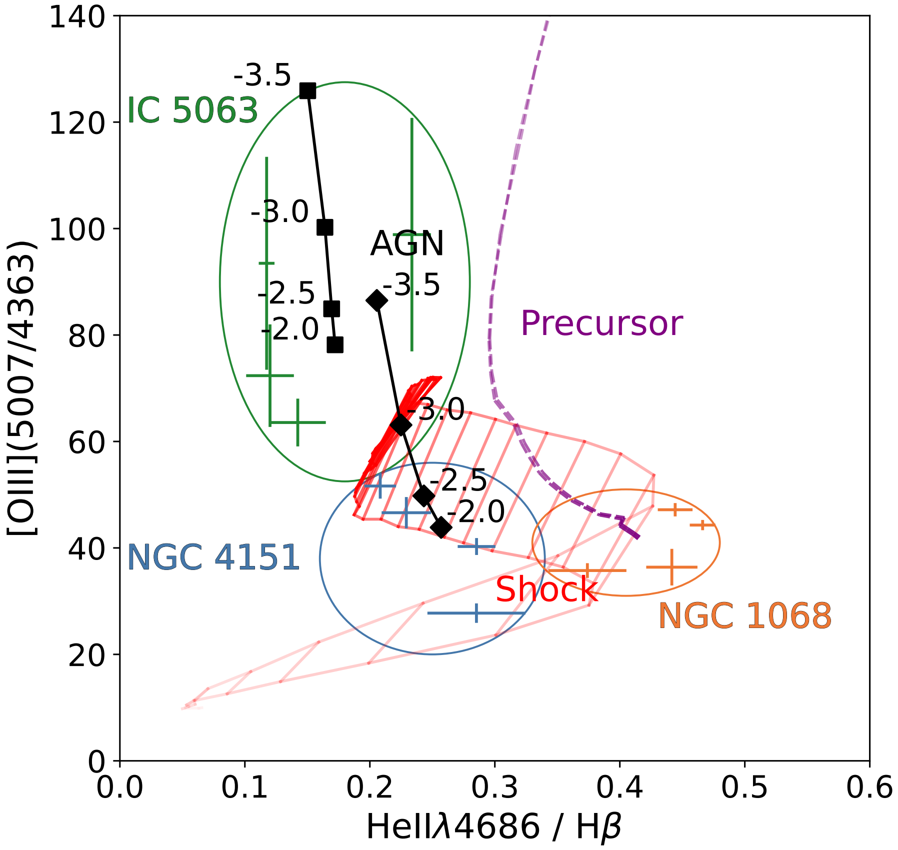


Figure 3.9: [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeII4686/Hβ diagnostic diagram (as in Figure 3.5) with line ratios measured from the STIS spectra of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 (presented in this work), and from Xshooter spectra of IC 5063 (Chapter 2, Figure 2.11). The AGN, shock, and precursor models are the same as those described in Section 3.3.2. The three objects each show distinct ionisation conditions, hinting at the complex nature of the NLRs of Seyfert galaxies.

gram presented in this chapter (Figure 3.5). Furthermore, [OII](7319+7331)/[OIII]λ5007 and [SII](4068+4076)/Hβ ratios for IC 5063 (alongside NGC 1068 and NGC 4151) are presented in Figure 3.8, determined using the Xshooter data for IC 5063 — it can be seen that they are consistent with radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation with gas densities in the range $10^3 < n_e < 10^4$ cm^{-3} and ionisation parameters in the range $-3 < \log U < -2$, in agreement with the values determined in Chapter 2.

It is interesting that the overall differences in ionisation conditions *between* the three galaxies are significantly larger than the range of ionisation conditions *within* the galaxies. This small sample thus shows three distinct cases in the three objects: radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation in IC 5063, matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation in NGC 1068, and shock-ionisation or radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation with a relatively-flat spectral index and higher ionisation parameters in NGC 4151. Despite all being classified as Seyferts, the details of the ionisation mechanisms in the objects vary greatly. This is particularly interesting considering that in all cases, the outflows detected along the radio axes appear to be spatially confined to the radio structures (i.e. the outflows do not extend beyond the radio lobes in the NLRs). As argued in Section 3.4.1, this is consistent with shock-acceleration, although it does not rule out radiative-acceleration. If the outflows in IC 5063, NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are shock-accelerated, then this would highlight the importance of not deriving information regarding the outflow acceleration mechanisms based solely on the ionisation/excitation mechanisms or kinematics of the gas in NLRs: a full account, involving detailed multi-wavelength observations with multiple diagnostics, is required to properly evaluate the relative contributions of different mechanisms.

Despite evidence that the outflows in all three objects are being driven by the radio jet, the densities of the outflowing gas differ by more than an order of magnitude: for IC 5063, the outflowing gas has densities in the range $3.17 < \log(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 3.43$ (Table 2.4), while for NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 the densities are in the ranges $4.00 < \log(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.75$ and $3.50 < \log(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.10$, respectively (Table 3.2). The reason for this may simply be due to different pre-shock gas densities in the different objects (assuming that the outflows in all three are shock-accelerated): for IC 5063 the pre-shock density is $2.1 < \log(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 2.7$, however without higher-velocity-resolution spectra, it is not possible to determine the quiescent gas densities in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151. In addition, the differing post-shock densities in the three Seyferts may be due to different cooling conditions behind the shock front. Standard shock-jump conditions predict a compression factor of ∼4, however, this may be much higher (∼100) if the post-shock gas has cooled in pressure equilibrium (Sutherland & Dopita, 2017; Santoro et al., 2018).

Moreover, it is important to note that all three objects have low-to-intermediate radio luminosities ($1.6\times10^{22} < L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}} < 3.0\times10^{23}$ W Hz^{-1}; Table 3.4) — again, if the outflows in these Seyferts are jet-accelerated, then this would reinforce the importance of jet-driven shocks as a feedback mechanism in the inner regions of galaxies, even at lower radio luminosities, in agreement with the statistical study of nearby AGN presented by Mullaney et al. (2013). Furthermore, the radio jets in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are oriented out of the galactic disks by ∼45° and ∼36° respectively, unlike IC 5063 in which the jet propagates almost directly into the plane of the disk. Therefore, at least within the central few-hundred parsecs of the AGN, this would show that inclined jets can still have an impact on the kinematics and ionisation of the NLR, as predicted by recent relativistic hydrodynamic simulations (Mukherjee et al., 2018; Meenakshi et al., 2022b), which show that a jet inclined $\theta_{\mathrm{jet}} \sim 45°$ to the galaxy's disk may have a significant effect on the kinematics, density, and temperature of the gas within the central few kiloparsecs (albeit less so than a jet inclined in the plane of the disk, such as is the case in IC 5063).

Similar hydrodynamic simulations, specifically tailored to the situations in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, could thus be used to quantify the impact of their radio jets on the star-forming gas in their NLRs, as well as the impact of inclined kpc-scale jets in general.

Ultimately, further observations of NGC 1068 and NGC 4151 are required to decisively determine the outflow acceleration mechanism(s). Namely, wide-wavelength-coverage spectroscopy (to make available a range of diagnostics) with sufficient velocity resolution to kinematically-discriminate between outflowing (post-shock?) and quiescent (pre-shock?) gas.

3.5 Chapter conclusions

By analysing archival HST/STIS spectra taken along the radio axes of the inner few hundred parsecs of the NLR of the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, the following was found.

- Spatially-resolved electron densities in the ranges $4.00 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.75$ and $3.60 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 4.10$ are measured using the transauroral-line technique for the NLR gas in NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, respectively. These values are an order of magnitude above those commonly reported and assumed based on traditional density estimates, but are in agreement with the results from alternative diagnostics such as multi-component photoionisation modelling. Overall, these results provide further motivation for the use of the transauroral lines in deriving electron densities of AGN-driven outflows.
- The measured emission-line ratios for the warm-ionised gas are consistent with the dominant ionisation mechanisms being matter-bounded AGN-photoionisation in NGC 1068, and shock-ionisation and/or radiation-bounded AGN-photoionisation with a relatively flat spectral index (and/or higher ionisation parameters and lower metallicities) in NGC 4151.
- Along the radio axes, the outflows in the northeastern cones of both objects have similar spatial extents to the radio structures — this is consistent with the outflows in their NLRs being shock-accelerated by the radio jets and reionised by radiation from the AGN, although it does not rule out radiative-acceleration.
- Applying the transauroral-line technique to gas that has dominant shock-ionisation may incur an uncertainty on the derived electron densities by up to ±0.38 orders of magnitude, which is still far below the potential order-of-magnitude error incurred when using techniques which are not sensitive to higher-density gas. However, care must still be taken when using detailed density-diagnostic techniques, as the ionisation mechanism of the gas may alter the results. Therefore, robust

ionisation-mechanism diagnostics should be used to verify the validity of the density measurements.

- Finally, combining these findings with those for the nearby Seyfert 2 galaxy IC 5063 shows that ionisation mechanisms and outflow conditions along the radio axes in the central few hundred parsecs vary significantly between the different objects. Hence, overall, this chapter highlights the necessity of care when deriving information about outflow acceleration mechanisms from the ionisation of the gas, and the need for robust ionisation-mechanism diagnostics with detailed observations.

Chapter acknowledgements

I thank the anonymous referee for their helpful comments and suggestions, which improved the clarity of the publication that this chapter is based on (Holden & Tadhunter, 2023). Based on observations made with the NASA/ESA Hubble Space Telescope, and obtained from the Hubble Legacy Archive, which is a collaboration between the Space Telescope Science Institute (STScI/NASA), the Space Telescope European Coordinating Facility (ST-ECF/ESA) and the Canadian Astronomy Data Centre (CADC/NRC/CSA). This research has made use of the NASA/IPAC Infrared Science Archive, which is funded by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and operated by the California Institute of Technology. This work makes use of the Starlink software (Currie et al., 2014), which is currently supported by the East Asian Observatory. For the purposes of open access, the authors have applied a Creative Commons Attribution (CC BY) licence to any Author Accepted Manuscript Arising.

Data Availability

The data used in this chapter is available from the Hubble Legacy Archive (HLA) (`https://hla.stsci.edu/hlaview.html`) with proposal IDs GTO:5754 (PI Ford) and GTO:5124 (PI Ford) for the HST/WFPC2 [OIII] imaging, and proposal IDs GTO:7573 (PI Kraemer) and GTO:7569 (PI Hutchings) for the HST/STIS spectra.

Chapter 4

A compact cold-molecular outflow in the ULIRG F13451+1232

“I have seen a vision,
the source undefined,
I find myself immersed in conversation with the sky.”

— Scar Symmetry, *Scorched Quadrant*

Chapter declaration

The data, analysis, results, and discussion presented in this chapter were reported in my first-author publication “ALMA reveals a compact and massive molecular outflow driven by the young AGN in a nearby ULIRG” (Holden et al., 2024). The content of this chapter is based on that publication, which has been adapted into a suitable format for this thesis. The first stage of the ALMA CO(1–0) data reduction was performed by Tom Oosterloo, while all subsequent work is my own.

4.1 Introduction

Another excellent object to investigate the impact and acceleration mechanism(s) of multi-phase AGN-driven outflows is the ultraluminous infrared galaxy (ULIRG; $L_{\mathrm{IR}} > 10^{12}\ \mathrm{L}_{\odot}$: Sanders & Mirabel 1996) F13451+1232 — also known as 4C12.50 — which is a merger (Gilmore & Shaw 1986; Heckman et al. 1986) in a late pre-coalescence phase (nuclear separation ∼4.5 kpc: Tadhunter et al. 2018). ULIRGs such as F13451+1232 are among the most rapidly evolving galaxies in the local universe due to merger-induced gas inflows feeding the central AGN and triggering star formation — the exact situation modelled in some hydrodynamic simulations of galaxy evolution that include AGN-driven outflows as a feedback mechanism (e.g. Di Matteo et al. 2005; Hopkins et al. 2008).

As a luminous radio source ($L_{1.4\ \mathrm{GHz}} = 1.9 \times 10^{26}\ \mathrm{W\ Hz^{-1}}$), F13451+1232 contains radio emission on two distinct scales: small-scale emission within a radius of ∼130 pc of the primary nucleus along position angle PA = 151° (Stanghellini et al., 1997; Lister et al., 2003; Morganti et al., 2013a), and larger-scale, diffuse emission extending to a radial distance of ∼77 kpc from the primary nucleus along PA ∼ 180° (Stanghellini et al., 2005). It has been proposed that this radio structure could be the result of two epochs of jet activity (Stanghellini et al., 2005), with the smaller-scale radio structure comprising a young, recently-restarted jet, and the larger-scale emission originating from a previous jet cycle.

Because of the properties of its small-scale radio emission, F13451+1232 is also classified as a gigahertz-peaked-spectrum (GPS) source (see Section 1.2.5, and O'Dea & Saikia 2021 for a review); such sources are associated with powerful jet-ISM interactions that may accelerate gas outflows in multiple phases (Mukherjee et al., 2016; Holt et al., 2006; Santoro et al., 2018, 2020; Kukreti et al., 2023). In addition, given the object's high optical-emission-line luminosity ($L_{[\mathrm{OIII}]} = 1.45 \times 10^{43}\ \mathrm{erg\ s^{-1}}$: Rose et al. 2018) — leading to its additional classification as a type-2 quasar (QSO2)[1] — it might also be expected to accelerate prominent outflows via radiation pressure. Therefore, F13451+1232 is ideal for investigating the properties and acceleration mechanisms of multi-phase outflows in an object that is considerably more luminous at optical and radio wavelengths than the Seyfert galaxies studied in Chapters 2 and 3.

Despite the fact that outflows in F13451+1232 have been confirmed in the coronal (Villar Martín et al., 2023), warm ionised (Holt et al., 2003, 2011; Rose et al., 2018; Villar Martín et al., 2023), and neutral atomic (HI + NaID: Morganti et al. 2005; Rupke et al. 2005b; Morganti et al. 2013a) gas phases, there has so far not been a robust detection of molecular outflows in this object (Fotopoulou et al. 2019; Lamperti et al. 2022; see discussion in Villar Martín et al. 2023). In nearby AGN where molecular outflows have been detected, it is often found that they contain more mass and kinetic power than the warmer phases (e.g. Chapters 2 and 3; Fiore et al. 2017; Ramos Almeida et al. 2019; Speranza et al. 2024). In this context, it is important to note that the warm-ionised and neutral-atomic outflows in F13451+1232 have relatively modest mass outflow rates ($\sim$6–12 $\mathrm{M_\odot}$ $\mathrm{yr^{-1}}$: Morganti et al. 2013a; Rose et al. 2018); therefore, if molecular outflows are present, they could potentially carry enough mass to change the interpretation of AGN feedback in this important object.

---

[1] F13451+1232 is included in the QUADROS sample of ULIRGs (Rose et al., 2018), and the QSOFEED sample of type-2 quasars (Ramos Almeida et al., 2022).

Models of galaxy evolution predict that AGN triggered at the peaks of mergers (such as F13451+1232) launch prominent, galaxy-wide ($r > 5$ kpc) outflows (e.g. Springel et al. 2005; Hopkins et al. 2008; Johansson et al. 2009). However, a cold-molecular outflow in a similar source, PKS 1549-79, was found to be compact ($r < 120$ pc: Oosterloo et al. 2019), as were the previously-detected neutral HI ($r_\mathrm{HI} < 100$ pc: Morganti et al. 2013a) and warm-ionised ($r_\mathrm{[OIII]} \sim 69$ pc: Tadhunter et al. 2018) outflows in F13451+1232. In order to complete the multi-phase information for this important object, and to directly determine if the spatial extents of any cold-molecular outflows are consistent with the predictions of models of galaxy evolution, here I present high-spatial resolution (0.113×0.091 arcsecond or 247×119 pc beam size), high-sensitivity Atacama Large Millimeter/submillimeter Array (ALMA) CO(1–0) observations of the inner few kiloparsecs of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232.

Throughout this chapter, I assume a cosmology of $H_0 = 70\,\mathrm{km\,s^{-1}\,Mpc^{-1}}$, $\Omega_\mathrm{m} = 0.3$, and $\Omega_\lambda = 0.7$. This corresponds[2] to an arcsecond-to-kpc spatial conversion factor of 2.189 kpc/arcsec and a luminosity distance of $D_\mathrm{L} = 570$ Mpc at the redshift of F13451+1232 ($z = 0.121680$: Lamperti et al. 2022).

4.2 Observations and data reduction

F13451+1232 was observed in Band 3 of ALMA on two nights using two different configurations of the 12 m array (Project Code 2019.1.01757.S): the array configuration used on the 10th September 2021 (baselines = 180–16200 m) resulted in a beam size of 0.083×0.069 arcseconds, while the configuration used on the 28th September 2021 (baselines = 70–14400 m) resulted in a beam size of 0.166×0.123 arcseconds. The total time on-source was 5588 seconds ($\sim$1.5 hours). Four spectral windows were used for the observations: one centred on 102.790 GHz with a bandwidth of 1.875 GHz (covering the CO(1–0) line), and the remaining three centred on 104.581 GHz, 90.977 GHz, and 92.477 GHz with bandwidths of 2.000 GHz (covering the continuum). J1337-1257 and J1353+1435 were observed to provide bandpass/flux and phase calibration, respectively;

---

[2] Calculated using Ned Wright's Javascript Cosmology Calculator (Wright, 2006).

phase self-calibration was performed using the Miriad data reduction package (Sault et al., 1995).

The CO(1–0) transition was targeted for two reasons. First, the ALMA observing band that covers the CO(1–0) line is wider than those that cover higher-order transitions such as CO(2–1) or CO(3–2), and therefore facilitates more accurate continuum subtraction. Second, the CO(1–0) transition is less susceptible to gas excitation conditions than the higher-order CO transitions, and hence may be a more reliable probe of molecular gas masses in ULIRGs.

In order to check for instrumental errors such as bandpass and spectral-calibration issues, three CO(1–0) line datacubes were produced: two using the visibilities of the two different array configurations separately, and one produced by combining the visibilities from both observation sets (with a final beam size of 0.113 × 0.091 arcseconds, PA = −51.8°). To optimise the column-density sensitivity, and to ensure that the dirty beam was not significantly non-Gaussian, each CO(1–0) line cube was made using Briggs weighting with robust = 1. When inspecting these cubes individually, no indications of bandpass or spectral-calibration issues were found.

The data products produced by the automated ALMA pipeline are potentially affected by issues related to continuum subtraction, which are a consequence of the bright and steep continuum emission produced by the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. Therefore, for all three datacubes, the respective visibilities (as calibrated by the ALMA pipeline) were used as an initial step, to which standard self-calibration (using continuum images made from the line-free channels) was applied. Line datacubes were then created, and the continuum in each was removed by subtracting a linear function that was fitted to the continuum on either side of (but excluding) the CO(1–0) emission. A continuum image was also generated from the combined visibilities of both observations using the continuum spectral windows. Least-squares fitting was performed using the AstroPy (Astropy Collaboration et al., 2013, 2018) Python module to fit a two-dimensional Gaussian profile to the point source in this continuum image; the centroid position (13:47:33.36 +12 17 24.23) was taken to be the location of the nucleus. The continuum image was made using uniform weighting and has a resolution of 0.049 × 0.033 arcseconds (PA = −46.8°).

To ensure the highest sensitivity and signal-to-noise, only the combined CO(1–0) datacube is considered in the main analysis of this chapter; this cube has a root-mean-square (RMS) noise of 0.148 mJy beam^{-1} for a velocity resolution of 28.8 km s^{-1}.

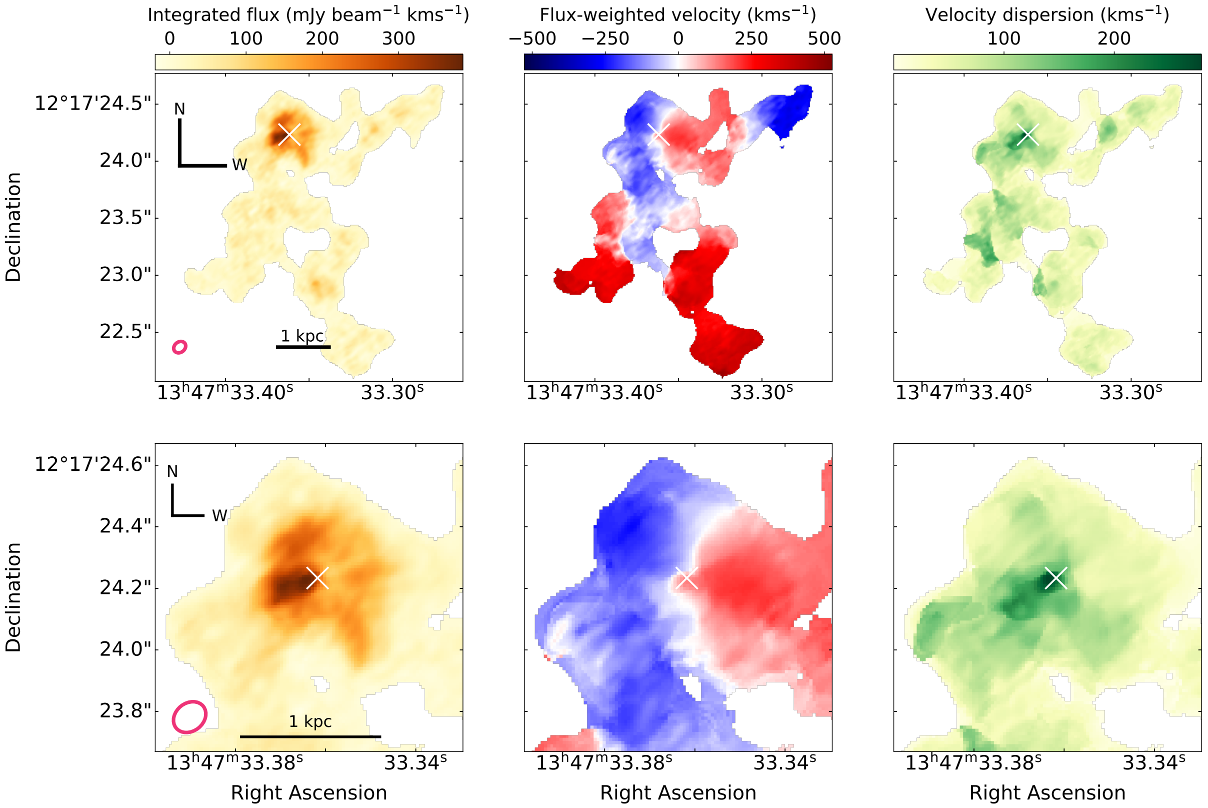

Integrated flux (mJy beam^{-1} kms^{-1})
0
100
200
300
Flux-weighted velocity (kms^{-1})
−500
−250
0
250
500
Velocity dispersion (kms^{-1})
100
200
Declination
12°17'24.5"
24.0"
23.5"
23.0"
22.5"
N
W
1 kpc
13h47m33.40s
33.30s
12°17'24.6"
24.4"
24.2"
24.0"
23.8"
13h47m33.38s
33.34s
Right Ascension

Figure 4.1: Integrated flux (moment 0; left panels), flux-weighted velocity (moment 1; middle panels), and velocity dispersion (moment 2; right panels) maps for the central 6 × 6 kiloparsec (top panels) and inner-kiloparsec region (bottom panels) of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. The white cross marks the continuum centre, which is taken to be the position of the AGN nucleus. The beam size of the observations is shown as a pink ellipse in the bottom left corner, and a 1 kpc scale bar is shown in black.

4.3 Analysis and results

4.3.1 Moment maps

To investigate the flux and kinematic structures of the CO(1–0) emission around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232, moment maps of the combined datacube were created using the SoFiA-2 source-finding pipeline (Serra et al., 2015; Westmeier et al., 2021). In order to ensure that only genuine emission over a range of spatial scales (and of varying surface brightness) was included when producing the moment maps, SoFiA-2 first applied different combinations of spatial and velocity smoothing to the datacube: Gaussian filters with FWHMs of 0, 3, 6, 12, and 15 pixels were used for the spatial smoothing, and boxcar filters of widths 0, 3, 7, and 15 channels were used for the velocity smoothing. For each combination of spatial and velocity smoothing, emission above $4\sigma_{\rm rms}$ (measured from the original cube in a region that did not contain emission) was added to a total mask. This mask was then applied to the original, non-smoothed datacube, from which the maps in Figure 4.1 were produced.

In the 6 × 6 kpc moment maps (upper panels of Figure 4.1), cold-molecular gas is detected to radial distances of ∼2.5 arcseconds (∼5.5 kpc) south of the primary nucleus, and ∼1 arcsecond (∼2 kpc) to the west. This large-scale ($r > 1$ kpc) emission, which has velocities in redshift and blueshift of up to $|v| \sim 500$ km s^{-1}, is indicative of gas that has been disturbed by the merger.

Within the central kiloparsec of the primary nucleus (Figure 4.1), there is clear evidence for a disk with radius $r_{\rm disk} \sim 0.5$ kpc centred on the nucleus, blueshifted to the east and redshifted to the west, with a projected maximum flux-weighted velocity of 200–250 km s^{-1}. In addition, there is an extended region (up to $r \sim 0.3$ arcseconds or 660 pc from the nucleus along PA = 120°) of emission with higher velocity dispersions ($\sigma > 150$ km s^{-1}) than that of the disk. Furthermore, a particularly prominent redshifted component with a velocity dispersion of ∼250 km s^{-1} is seen within a radius of $r \sim 0.1$ arcseconds ($r \sim 220$ pc) of the continuum centre.

4.3.2 BBarolo modelling of the gas disk

To separate non-gravitational kinematics from those expected from a rotating gas disk, the disk was modelled using the 3DFIT task from the BBarolo tool (Di Teodoro & Fraternali, 2015). The 3DFIT task fits a series of concentric rings to the data in three spatial dimensions and three velocity dimensions (the rotational velocity, $v_{\rm rot}$; the radial velocity, $v_{\rm rad}$, and the velocity dispersion $v_{\rm disp}$).

The fitting procedure followed the methodology outlined in Alonso-Herrero et al. (2018), Domínguez-Fernández et al. (2020), and Ramos Almeida et al. (2022). Throughout, the centre of the disk model was fixed to be the position of the continuum centre (as measured from a two-dimensional Gaussian fit to the continuum image: Section 4.2). An initial fit was first performed using the 3DFIT task in which the radial velocities of the rings were fixed to be 0 km s^{-1} and the scale height of the disk (z_0) was fixed to 0 pc. The remaining parameters were allowed to vary; initial values for the rotational velocity and velocity dispersion were based on the flux-weighted velocity shift and velocity dispersion maps (Figure 4.1), the initial value of the inclination ($i_{\rm initial} = 38°$) was based on the measured ratio of the projected disk major and minor axes while assuming a circular disk, and the initial value for the PA was set to that previously estimated from two-dimensional spectroastrometry of CO(2–1) observations of the disk by Lamperti et al. (2022). However, limits were imposed on the variation of these free parameters — between successive rings, the rotational velocity was not allowed to change by more than ±50 km s^{-1}, nor were the inclination and PA allowed to change by more than ±20°. The fits used uniform weighting and local normalisation. It should be noted that, since the physical size of the modelled rings is much less than the beam size of the observations, the properties of adjacent rings are correlated. However, this does not have a significant

$r_{\rm ring}$ (arcseconds)	$r_{\rm ring}$ (pc)	$v_{\rm rot}$ (km s^{-1})	$v_{\rm disp}$ (km s^{-1})	i (°)	PA (°)
0.013	29	248	5.5	62.2	242
0.040	88	250	24.6	58.6	236
0.067	147	212	91.1	55.9	236
0.094	206	249	72.5	53.8	240
0.121	265	268	65.8	52.4	245
0.148	324	281	62.8	51.4	252
0.175	383	293	61.2	50.8	258
0.202	442	312	68.3	50.5	261
0.229	501	301	61.5	50.3	259
0.256	560	314	58.3	50.1	252

Table 4.1: Final parameters for each ring of the BBarolo 3DFit disk model. The distance of each ring to the fixed disk centre ($r_{\rm ring}$) is given in both arcseconds and parsecs. Here, $v_{\rm rot}$ and $v_{\rm disp}$ are the rotational velocities and velocity dispersions of each ring, respectively.

effect on the maximum rotational velocity of the disk model (nor does changing the values of the initial parameters), and therefore does not affect the interpretations made in this analysis.

In order to ensure that the overall radial extent and kinematics of the disk were accurate — and to alleviate potential problems with fit degeneracy arising from having a high number of free parameters — the results of the initial fit were used as a basis for a second fit. For this second run, I fixed the velocity dispersion, inclination, and PA to the values determined from the first run, so that only the rotational velocity was allowed to vary. The final model parameters for each ring are presented in Table 4.1; Figure 4.2 presents the moment maps and residuals of the final disk model. High flux-weighted velocities ($V_{\rm LOS} > 200$ km s^{-1}) and velocity dispersions ($\sigma \sim 200$ km s^{-1}) due to non-rotational kinematics can be seen in the residual maps near the centre of the disk.

In the final BBarolo model, the disk has an average inclination of $i \approx 54°$ (where $i = 0°$ corresponds to the disk being face-on), and its major axis lies along PA $\approx 248°$; the deprojected rotational velocity increases from $v_{\rm rot} = 246$ km s^{-1} to $v_{\rm rot} = 307$ km s^{-1} over the radius range 28 pc $< r_{\rm disk} <$ 560 pc. I highlight that the purpose of this modelling was solely to give a reasonable estimate of the maximum rotational velocity of the molecular gas, which is needed to robustly identify non-rotational motions. Considering this, it is notable that the high-velocity-dispersion emission ($\sigma > 150$ km s^{-1}) seen near the disk in the moment maps (Figure 4.1) cannot be accounted for by the BBarolo model (see Figure 4.2), and thus cannot be explained as being part of the rotating gas disk.

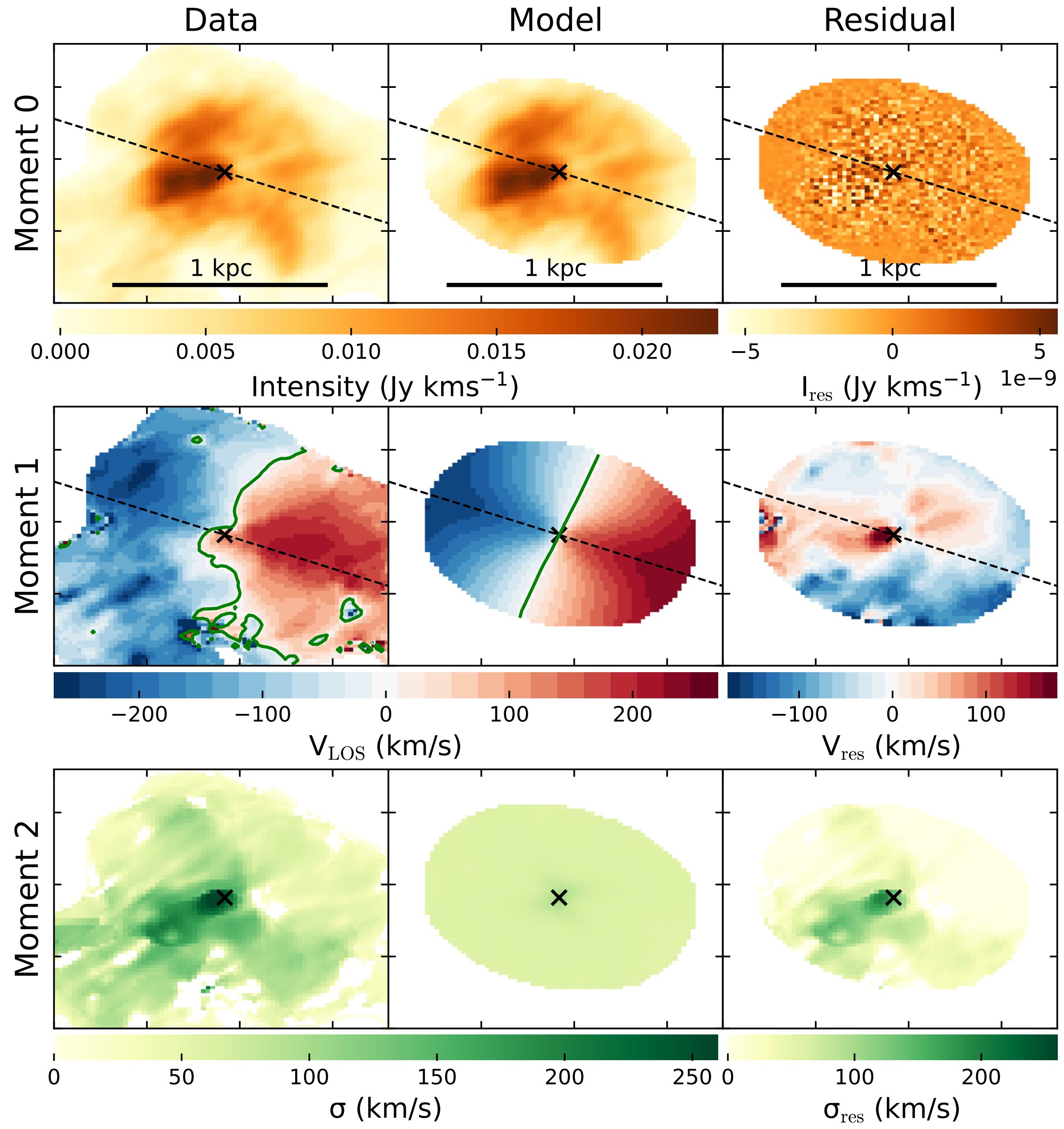


Figure 4.2: Integrated flux (moment 0; top), flux-weighted velocity (moment 1; middle), and velocity dispersion (moment 2; bottom) maps of the CO(1–0) data (left), the BBarolo disk model (middle), and residuals (data - model; right). The ticks have separations of 0.2 arcseconds. The black dashed line shows the PA of the modelled disk, whereas the black cross shows the disk centre (which was set to be the continuum centre position; see Section 4.2). The green lines in the middle-row panels are isovelocity contours at 0 km s^{-1}.

4.3.3 Kinematics of the non-rotating gas

To investigate the non-rotational kinematics further, I binned the velocity channels of the original cube by a factor of three and applied Hanning smoothing using the CASA software suite (CASA Team et al., 2022) to improve the signal-to-noise ratio of the emission. This resulted in a cube of velocity resolution 86.4 km s^{-1} and an RMS noise of 0.083 mJy $beam^{-1}$. Using the PVEXTRACTOR PYTHON module[3], 1.00 × 0.05 arcsecond slices, centred on the nucleus, were extracted from both this datacube and the BBAROLO disk-model datacube along the major axis of the disk (PA = 248°) and in the direction of the high-velocity-dispersion gas near the nucleus (PA = 120°). From these slices, position-velocity (PV) diagrams were produced, which are presented in Figure 4.3. In the PV diagrams, there is clear evidence for non-rotational kinematics, with detected velocities being well above the projected maximum rotational disk velocity given by the BBAROLO model. There is intermediate-velocity emission ($300 < |v| < 400$ km s^{-1}) seen in both blueshift and redshift along PA = 120°, in the ranges $0.1 < r < 0.3$ arcseconds and $0.0 < r < 0.2$ arcseconds, respectively, to the southeast (SE) of the nucleus. Moreover, the compact ($r < 0.1$ arcseconds) redshifted feature visible in the moment maps (Figure 4.1) can be seen in the PV diagrams between $400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}, located close to the nucleus.

4.3.4 Comparison to the small-scale radio structure

Due to the velocities at which the compact, high-velocity nuclear feature is detected, it is unambiguously distinct from the rotating gas disk: it may be interpreted as either an inflow moving towards the nucleus on the observer's side of the disk, or an outflow originating from the nucleus on the far side of the disk. Spatial comparison of the high-velocity flow to the small-scale radio structure may provide an indication of the nature of this flowing gas and, if it is an outflow, the driving mechanism. Figure 4.4a shows the flux map integrated over the range $400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1} — in which peak emission is detected above the $6\sigma_{\rm rms}$ level — along with VLBI 1266 MHz continuum imaging (from global VLBI experiment GM62B; data presented and detailed in Morganti et al. 2013a) of the central 0.20 × 0.20 arcseconds (440 × 440 parsecs). The beam size of the VLBI observations was 8.01 × 4.89 milliarcseconds (PA = −20.2°). Due to the small uncertainties in the ALMA pointing, the VLBI image was offset from the continuum centre by ∼0.1 arcseconds; this pointing error was corrected for by aligning the compact core seen in the VLBI image with the continuum centre, as it is expected that the same source is being imaged at different spatial resolutions.

By fitting a two-dimensional Gaussian profile to the integrated high-velocity CO(1–0) emission in Figure 4.4a using the EMCEE Python module (Foreman-Mackey et al.,

---

[3] `https://pvextractor.readthedocs.io/en/latest/`

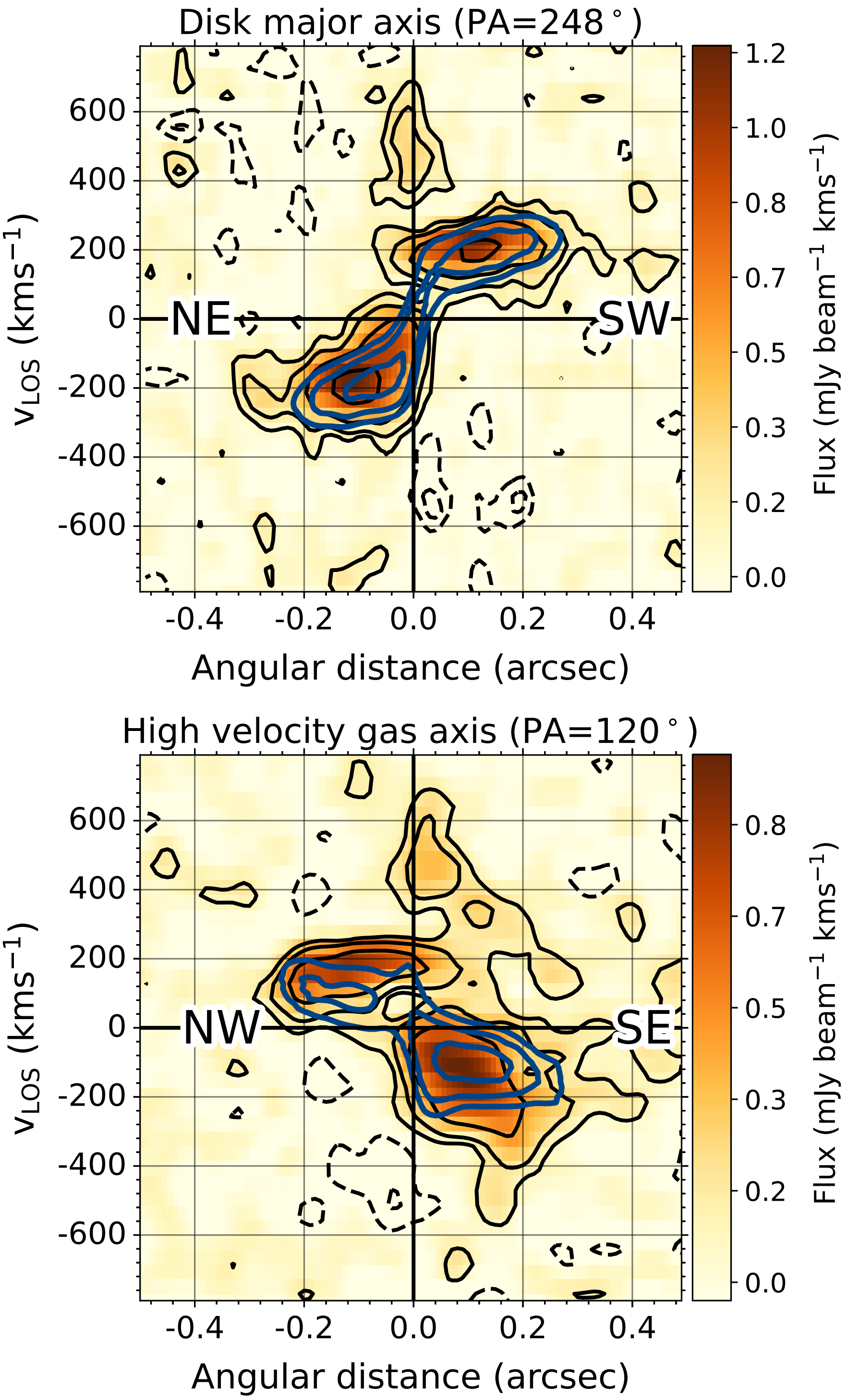


Figure 4.3: Position-velocity (PV) diagrams for 1.00 × 0.05 arcsecond slices with PA = 248° (upper panel; the major axis of the disk) and PA = 120° (lower panel; the direction of the high-velocity-dispersion emission seen in Figure 4.1), centred on the continuum centre. CO(1–0) emission is shown in yellow/orange, with black contours at the $-3\sigma_{\rm rms}$, $-1.5\sigma_{\rm rms}$, $1.5\sigma_{\rm rms}$, $3\sigma_{\rm rms}$, $6\sigma_{\rm rms}$, and $12\sigma_{\rm rms}$ levels (dashed: negative; solid: positive); solid blue contours show the flux from the BBarolo disk model at the same $\sigma_{\rm rms}$ levels. Extended, intermediate-velocity emission is seen in both redshift and blueshift in the PA = 120° diagram, and a compact, higher-velocity feature ($400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}) centred approximately on the nucleus (0.0 arcsec) can clearly be seen in both diagrams.

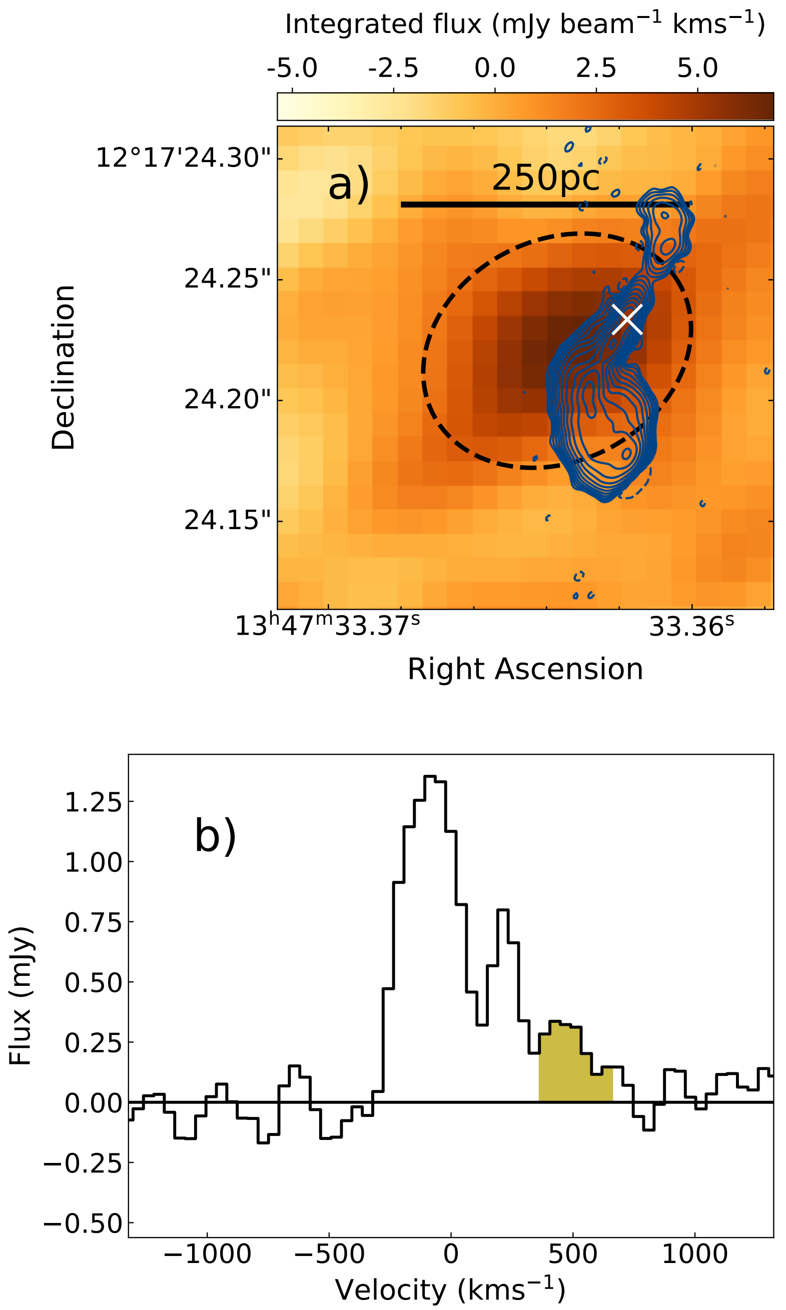


Figure 4.4: **a)** Integrated flux map (orange–brown) of the velocity channels between $400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}. The dashed black ellipse shows the aperture extracted from the datacube to derive the mass of the outflow; the corresponding line profile is shown in Figure 4.4b. The small-scale radio structure, as seen in VLBI 1266 MHz continuum imaging (Morganti et al., 2013a), is shown as dark blue solid contours at the 0.3×(−1, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024) mJy/beam levels, whereas the white cross marks the position of the continuum centre seen in the ALMA CO(1–0) observations (Section 4.2). **b)** CO(1–0) line profile extracted from the aperture that covers the outflow; the line profile shown was extracted from the 84 km s^{-1} velocity resolution combined datacube. The part of the line profile that is taken to represent outflowing gas ($400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}) is shaded in yellow.

2013), it was found to be offset to the southeast (SE) of the continuum centroid by 32 ± 2 milliarcseconds (70 ± 4 pc) along PA ∼ 155°. I highlight that this is within the spatial extent of, and has a similar PA to, the small-scale radio structure ($r \sim 0.07$ arcsec; PA = 151°).

4.3.5 Channel maps

To determine the level at which the high-velocity, nuclear CO(1–0) emission is detected in different velocity channels, I created channel maps of the central kiloparsec of the primary nucleus from the 86.4 km s^{-1} velocity resolution cube. The high-velocity ($400 < v < 600$ km s^{-1}) channel maps — presented in Figure 4.5 — show emission above the $3\sigma_{\rm rms}$ level (and up to $4\sigma_{\rm rms}$) in all four channels on scales similar to that of the beam size (0.11 arcseconds or 240 pc), indicating that the feature is spatially-unresolved in the combined datacube.

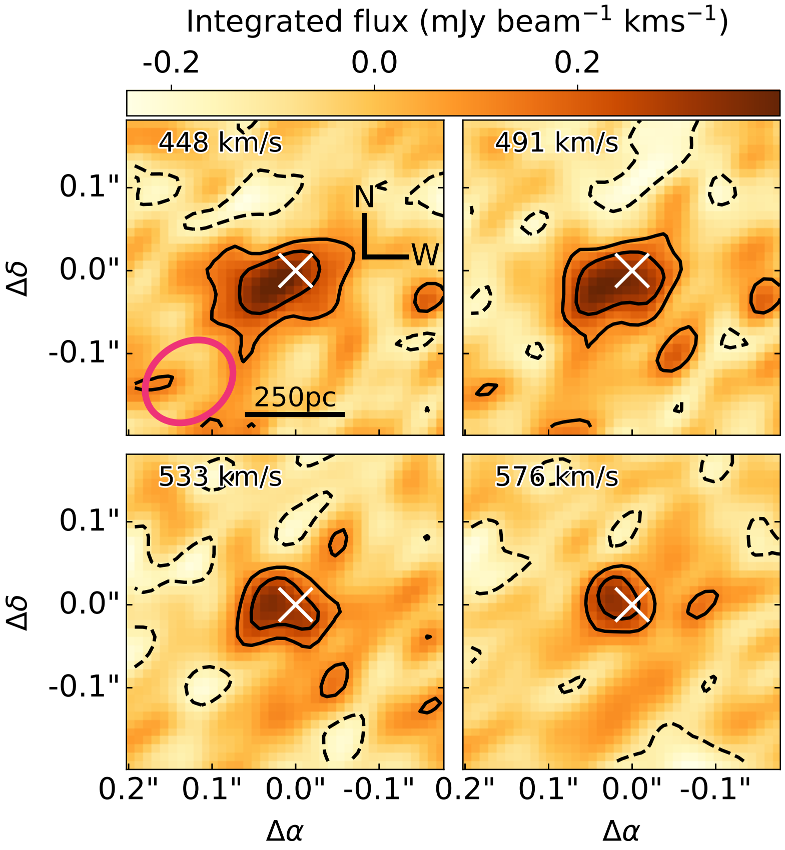


Figure 4.5: Channel maps of the central ∼1 kpc of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (centred on the nucleus: Section 4.2) between $448 < v < 576$ km s^{-1}, taken from the velocity-binned and smoothed cube with channel widths of 43.7 km s^{-1} and a velocity resolution of 86.4 km s^{-1}. Black contours are shown at the $-3\sigma_{\rm rms}$, $-1.5\sigma_{\rm rms}$, $1.5\sigma_{\rm rms}$, $3\sigma_{\rm rms}$ levels (dashed: negative; solid: positive), where $\sigma_{\rm rms}$ is the RMS of the binned-and-smoothed cube. The continuum centre is marked as a white cross in each channel; the beam size is shown as a pink ellipse in the 448 km s^{-1} channel map (top left panel).

4.3.6 Potential effects of continuum subtraction

Due to the bright, steep-spectrum continuum around the CO(1–0) line — originating from primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (as seen in the cores of other CSS/GPS sources, e.g. Oosterloo et al. 2019) — it is possible that inaccuracies in the continuum subtraction process have contributed flux to the compact, redshifted, high-velocity feature that is detected at the position of the nucleus. However, I argue that this feature represents real CO(1–0) emission, for several reasons. Firstly, the flux is detected above the 6σ level in the flux map integrated over the velocity range $400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1} (Figure 4.4a), and in multiple velocity channels at the 3–$4\sigma_{\rm rms}$ levels (Figure 4.5). Secondly, it has a significantly higher flux than the negative or positive residual features detected in the integrated spectrum (Figure 4.4b).

Moreover, in Figure 4.6, I present CO(1–0) line spectra extracted from the two cubes of differing spatial resolution that comprise the combined datacube (Section 4.2); the size of the extraction aperture in each case was matched to the beam size. The high-velocity redshifted feature is well detected in both datacubes in the velocity range $400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}, while any residual features of comparable flux are not present in both cubes at the same velocity. Furthermore, its absolute flux is less in the smaller-beam cube, indicating that the beam is not recovering all of the flux and thus implying that the feature is (partially) spatially resolved. While some contribution from instrumental effects cannot be entirely ruled out, based on these arguments, I conclude that this feature is real.

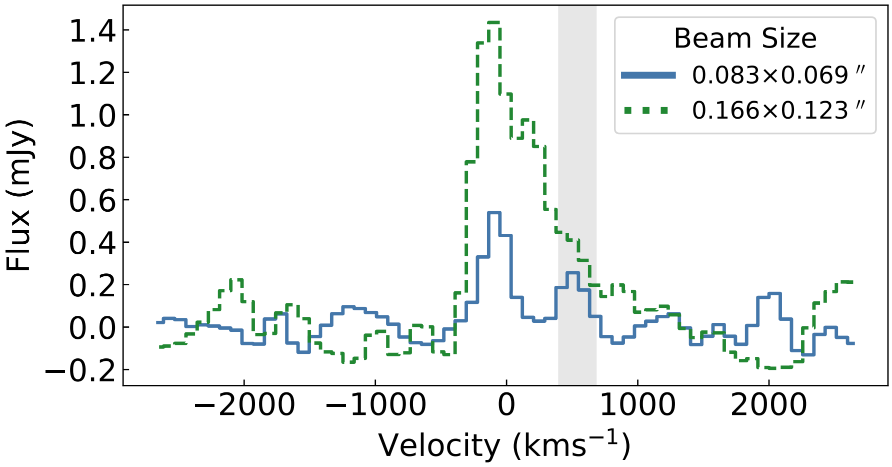


Figure 4.6: CO(1–0) line profiles of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 extracted from the two sets of observations of differing array configurations (hence beam sizes) that comprise the datacube presented in this analysis (see Section 4.2). These profiles were extracted from the respective cubes using apertures matched to the beam sizes. It can be seen that the flux in the high-velocity redshifted component (shaded in grey) is less in the cube with the smaller beam size.

It is notable that previous CO(2–1) observations of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 — that were of similar sensitivity to the CO(1–0) observations presented here — did not detect evidence for nuclear outflows (Lamperti et al., 2022). However, in those observations, the other spectral windows were also used when fitting a linear slope to the continuum because of the narrower observing band (a factor of two narrower in velocity) of CO(2–1) observations relative to CO(1–0) — this may have led to over-subtraction of the high-velocity outflow component. Therefore, it is possible that outflow emission in CO(2–1) was not detected due to uncertainties in the continuum subtraction process.

4.3.7 Outflow energetics

In order to provide an estimate of the mass inflow/outflow rates of the high-velocity, spatially-unresolved redshifted feature located at the position of the nucleus, an elliptical aperture matching the beam size (0.113 × 0.091 arcsec, PA= $-51.8°$; shown in Figure 4.4a) was extracted from the datacube. I then summed all pixels within the aperture to create a line profile, which is presented in Figure 4.4b, and selected emission between $400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1} to isolate the non-rotating gas.

For the extended, intermediate-velocity ($300 < |v| < 400$ km s^{-1}) emission seen in blueshift and redshift, two sub-apertures were extracted from the 1.00 × 0.05 arcsecond slice along PA = 120° (used to create the upper PV diagram in Figure 4.3): one covering radii $0.0 < r < 0.2$ arcseconds (for the extended redshifted emission), and the other covering the range $0.1 < r < 0.3$ arcseconds (for the extended blueshifted emission). I then selected emission in the ranges $300 < v < 400$ km s^{-1} and $-400 < v < -300$ km s^{-1} respectively in these slices to isolate the non-rotating gas.

For every channel within the range of the selected velocities in the extracted apertures, CO(1–0) fluxes ($S_{\rm CO}\Delta V$) were calculated and converted to luminosities ($L'_{\rm CO}$) using the relation presented by Solomon & Vanden Bout (2005):

$$L'_{\rm CO} = 3.25 \times 10^7 S_{\rm CO}\Delta V \nu_{\rm obs}^{-2} D_{\rm L}^2 (1+z)^{-3}, \tag{4.1}$$

where $\nu_{\rm obs}$ is the observed frequency of the CO(1–0) line (102.789 GHz) and $D_{\rm L}$ is the luminosity distance to F13451+1232. The CO(1–0) luminosities were then summed across all selected velocity channels, resulting in total luminosities for each of the two intermediate-velocity features and the high-velocity feature. Assuming a CO-to-H$_2$ conversion factor of $\alpha_{\rm CO} = 0.8$ M$_\odot$ (K km s^{-1} pc^2)$^{-1}$ (typical for ULIRGs: Downes & Solomon 1998), these total luminosities were converted into molecular gas masses ($M_{\rm flow}$).

By taking an aperture covering the disk in the combined CO(1–0) datacube and integrating between $-310 < v < 310$ km s^{-1}, a disk mass of 1.1×10^{10} M$_\odot$ was found using

Equation 4.1 and $\alpha_{\rm CO} = 0.8$ M$_\odot$ (K km s^{-1} pc^2)$^{-1}$; Lamperti et al. (2022) also detected this nuclear disk using CO(2-1) spectroastrometry, and found a similar mass.

The corresponding mass flow rates of the non-rotating molecular gas were estimated using

$$\dot{M}_{\rm flow} = \frac{M_{\rm flow} v_w}{\Delta R} \cdot \tan\theta, \tag{4.2}$$

where v_w is the flux-weighted velocity, ΔR is the range of flow radii, and θ is the angle of the flow relative to the observer's line of sight. The tanθ term is required to correct for projection effects in both radius and velocity. To estimate this projection factor, I assumed a solid-angle-weighted mean inclination for random orientations of the line of sight to the flow direction, giving $\theta = 57.3°$ (see Law et al. 2009 for a full derivation). Finally, kinetic powers were estimated with

$$\dot{E}_{\rm kin} = \frac{1}{2}\dot{M}_{\rm flow}\left(\frac{v_w}{\cos\theta}\right)^2. \tag{4.3}$$

The resulting CO(1–0) luminosities, masses, flux-weighted velocities, flow radii, mass flow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies ($\epsilon_{\rm f} = \dot{E}_{\rm kin}/L_{\rm bol}$) are given in Table 4.2. For the high-velocity nuclear gas, I derived a mass flow rate of $\dot{M}_{\rm out} \sim 230$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}, which corresponds to a kinetic power that is ~1.4 per cent of the bolometric luminosity of the AGN ($L_{\rm bol} = 4.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: Rose et al. 2018). In contrast, much lower mass flow rates ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 22$–27 M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}) and kinetic powers ((6.0–7.1)$\times 10^{-2}$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$) were found for the extended, intermediate-velocity emission.

4.4 Discussion

In addition to a kpc-scale disk, this analysis has detected non-rotating cold-molecular gas in CO(1–0) emission near the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. This non-rotating gas consists of spatially-extended ($0.0 < r < 0.3$ arcseconds; $0 < r < 660$ pc), intermediate-velocity ($300 < |v| < 400$ km s^{-1}) components seen in both blueshift and redshift, and a compact ($r < 0.06$ arcseconds; $r < 120$ pc), high-velocity ($400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}) nuclear component seen in redshift.

4.4.1 Interpreting the non-rotating gas as inflowing

Given that the AGN in F13451+1232 may have recently restarted and thus be young (Stanghellini et al., 2005; Morganti et al., 2013a), if the non-rotating gas seen in intermediate and high-velocity CO(1–0) emission is inflowing, it is possible that it represents gas flows responsible for its triggering. The total gas flow rates (22–230 M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}: Table 4.2) are orders of magnitude higher than those needed to sustain the AGN (0.8 M$_\odot$yr^{-1}, assuming $\eta = 0.1$ and $L_{\rm bol} = 4.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: Rose et al. 2018). Therefore, this is a

Component	$L'_{\rm CO}$ [K km s^{-1} pc^2]	$M_{\rm flow}$ [M$_\odot$]	$v_{\rm w}$ [km s^{-1}]	ΔR [a] [arcsec]
Extended blueshifted	2.7×10^7	2.2×10^7	-339	0.2
Extended redshifted	2.2×10^7	1.8×10^7	350	0.2
Nuclear redshifted	4.2×10^7	3.4×10^7	514	0.0545

Component	$\dot{M}_{\rm flow,proj}$ [M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}]	$\dot{M}_{\rm flow}$ [M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}]	$\dot{E}_{\rm kin}$ [erg s^{-1}]	$\epsilon_{\rm f}$ [b] [per cent]
Extended blueshifted	17	27	3.4×10^{42}	7.1×10^{-2}
Extended redshifted	14	22	2.9×10^{42}	6.0×10^{-2}
Nuclear redshifted	148	230	6.6×10^{43}	1.4

[a] For the extended emission, ΔR is taken to be the radial distance over which the extended emission is seen; for the spatially-unresolved, high-velocity redshift feature, ΔR is taken to be half of the beam major axis.

[b] Calculated assuming $L_{\rm bol} = 4.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1} (Rose et al., 2018).

Table 4.2: CO(1–0) luminosities, masses, projected flux-weighted flow velocities, aperture radii, projected mass flow rates ($\dot{M}_{\rm flow,proj}$), deprojected mass flow rates ($\dot{M}_{\rm flow}$), and deprojected energetics for the extended emission in both blueshift and redshift, and the nuclear redshifted feature seen in the PV diagrams (Figure 4.3). When deprojecting, $\theta = 57.3°$ was assumed.

plausible feeding mechanism even if only a small fraction of the inflowing gas is accreted onto the central supermassive black hole. However, I argue later that the compact, high-velocity component (and potentially also the intermediate-velocity emission) is in reality outflowing, rather than inflowing.

4.4.2 The spatially-extended, intermediate-velocity gas

The nature of the intermediate-velocity emission ($300 < |v| < 400$ km s^{-1}) that is seen in both redshift and blueshift in the PV diagram along PA = 120° (Figure 4.3) — and as a region of higher velocity dispersion to the SE of the nucleus in the moment 2 maps (Figure 4.1) — is not clear. On one hand, it may represent spatially-extended ($220 < r < 440$ pc) AGN-driven outflows. However, since the emission extends well beyond the compact radio source, then these outflows would not be driven solely by the jet — an additional outflow driving mechanism would be required. Based on the similar PAs of the extended emission and the small-scale radio structure, one possibility is that this gas is accelerated by radiatively-driven winds that are collimated by a circumnuclear torus with an axis similar to that of the compact radio source. Alternatively, due to the velocities not being much above those expected for rotation (as given by the BBarolo model: Section 4.3.2), this extended emission may represent material from the merger settling onto the disk. This latter interpretation is supported by the larger-scale ($r > 1$ kpc) filament-like structures seen to the south and west of the primary nucleus (Figure 4.1), which likely represent gas disturbed by the merger: these large-scale structures have similar velocity shifts and dispersions to the intermediate-velocity gas seen near the nucleus.

If the intermediate-velocity emission truly did represent AGN-driven outflows, then its mass outflow rates (22–27 $\mathrm{M_\odot\ yr^{-1}}$) are higher than those of the previously detected warm ionised (11.3 $\mathrm{M_\odot\ yr^{-1}}$: Rose et al. 2018)[4] and neutral HI ($\sim$6 $M_\odot$ $\mathrm{yr^{-1}}$)[5] phases. Furthermore, they are similar to those recently reported for the cold-molecular outflows in a sample of nearby QSO2s (8–16 $\mathrm{M_\odot\ yr^{-1}}$: Ramos Almeida et al. 2022), which were identified using a similar method to that used here for the intermediate-velocity gas. When applying a factor of three to account for assumed outflow geometry, as was done by Fiore et al. (2017), I find (in agreement with Ramos Almeida et al. 2022) that these mass outflow rates (66–81 $\mathrm{M_\odot\ yr^{-1}}$) fall significantly below the correlation between mass outflow rate and AGN bolometric luminosity given by Fiore et al. (2017) (Figure 1.9). However, it is important to note that Lamperti et al. (2022) reported a wide range of mass outflow rates for ULIRGs with similar bolometric luminosities ($6 < \dot{M}_{\mathrm{flow}} < 300\ \mathrm{M_\odot\ yr^{-1}}$), indicating that the high mass outflow rates found by Fiore et al. (2017) may represent the most extreme cases, and therefore represent the upper envelope to any relationship between mass outflow rate and AGN bolometric luminosity (see also Speranza et al. 2024).

4.4.3 The compact, high-velocity nuclear outflow

While it is possible that the intermediate-velocity emission does not represent outflowing gas, I highlight that the observed velocities of the redshifted nuclear feature ($400 < v < 680\ \mathrm{km\ s^{-1}}$) are much higher than what would be expected due to settled gravitational motions ($v < 300\ \mathrm{km\ s^{-1}}$: the projected velocities seen in the disk). Moreover, the emission of this component is compact ($r < 120$ pc), unresolved in the combined datacube, and on a similar radial scale to both the compact radio structure ($r < 0.06$ arcseconds; $r < 130$ pc: Figure 4.4a) and the other outflow phases ($r < 100$ pc: Morganti et al. 2013a; Tadhunter et al. 2018). Therefore, it is much more likely to be a nuclear outflow, rather than an inflow or settling gas from the merger. Furthermore, the fact that the high-velocity emission is spatially offset from the nucleus (by 32 ± 2 milliarcseconds) along the direction of the small-scale radio structure (PA $= 151^\circ$) suggests a relation between the two. This is consistent with acceleration by shocks, which may be induced by either a jet or a broader, radiatively-driven wind that is collimated by the circumnuclear torus. Given that the compact CO(1–0) outflow is seen to be offset along the direction of the radio structure (which would not necessarily be expected in the radiatively-driven scenario), and that the neutral-atomic outflow component (detected in HI absorption) is seen to be coincident with the radio hotspot (Morganti et al., 2013a), I favour the jet-driven interpretation. In this context, it is interesting to note the southern bend in the small-scale radio structure, which may be due to the jet colliding with dense molecular gas, being deflected, and thereby launching the nuclear outflow.

---

[4] The warm-ionised mass outflow rates and kinetic powers were calculated following the second method of Rose et al. (2018), which involves using the v_{05} parameter as the outflow velocity to account for projection effects; these estimates are likely to be upper limits.

[5] The neutral HI mass outflow rate has been recalculated using the methodology in Section 2.4.1 with the values presented by Morganti et al. (2013a); the kinetic power and coupling efficiency have been recalculated by using these values with Equation 4.3 and assuming $L_{\mathrm{bol}} = 4.8 \times 10^{45}\ \mathrm{erg\ s^{-1}}$ (Rose et al., 2018).

The fact that this nuclear outflow is partially spatially resolved by the smaller-beam observations (Figure 4.6) allows the outflow radius to be constrained to be in the range $88 < \Delta R < 182$ pc ($0.042 < \Delta R < 0.083$ arcseconds; i.e. half of the beam major axes of the two constituent observations: Section 4.2). Considering that the feature does not appear to be spatially resolved in the channel maps (Section 4.3.5; Figure 4.5) produced from the combined datacube (beam size: 0.113×0.091 arcseconds; see Section 4.2), this indicates that it is, overall, partially spatially resolved in the ALMA CO(1–0) observations — I thus take 120 pc (0.0545 arcseconds) as an upper limit on the outflow radius.

The cold-molecular mass outflow rate for this nuclear component ($\dot{M}_{\rm flow} \sim 230$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}) is more than an order of magnitude higher than those previously derived for the other outflow phases in F13451+1232, lies within the range of values for molecular outflows previously detected in ULIRGs (a few to thousands of solar masses per year: Cicone et al. 2014; Pereira-Santaella et al. 2018; Fluetsch et al. 2019; Herrera-Camus et al. 2020; Lamperti et al. 2022), and is close to (within 1σ of) the correlation between cold-molecular mass outflow rate and AGN bolometric luminosity found by Fiore et al. (2017) when corrected for assumed outflow geometry.

Overall, the kinetic power of the cold molecular phase in F13451+1232 (6.6×10^{43} ergs^{-1}) accounts for ~1.4 per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$ — approximately a factor of three higher than the combined kinetic power of the neutral HI (~0.04 per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$: Morganti et al. 2013a) and warm ionised (0.49 per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$: Rose et al. 2018) outflow phases. Therefore, for all phases, the *total* outflow kinetic power is ~2 per cent of the AGN bolometric luminosity. While this is consistent with the requirements of simulations of outflows launched by AGN in galaxy mergers ($0.5 < \epsilon_{\rm f} < 10$ per cent: e.g. Di Matteo et al. 2005; Hopkins & Elvis 2010) — and thus may be interpreted as the outflows having an impact on the evolution of the galaxy — I highlight that such comparisons must be done with care, and that it is unclear if interpretations can be made robustly (see Section 1.2.3 and Harrison et al. 2018).

Finally, I emphasize that even if a CO-to-H$_2$ conversion factor that is at the lower end of the range of values used in the literature (i.e. $\alpha_{\rm CO} = 0.3$ M$_\odot$ (K km s^{-1} pc^2)$^{-1}$ for optically thin gas: Oosterloo et al. 2017, 2019) is assumed, the derived cold-molecular, nuclear mass outflow rate is still much higher than those of the other phases (~86 M$_\odot$yr^{-1}). Conversely, if a conversion factor that is characteristic of molecular clouds in the Milky Way is assumed ($\alpha_{\rm CO} = 4.3$ M$_\odot$ (K km s^{-1} pc^2)$^{-1}$: Bolatto et al. 2013), the mass and kinetic power of this outflow increase significantly ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} \sim 1240$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}; $\epsilon_{\rm f} \sim 7$ per cent).

4.5 Chapter conclusions

Through the analysis of high-spatial-resolution CO(1–0) observations of the primary nucleus of the ULIRG F13451+1232, this chapter has presented evidence for (and has characterised) a kpc-scale circumnuclear disk and spatially-extended ($0.0 < r < 0.3$ arcseconds; $0 < r < 660$ pc), intermediate-velocity emission ($300 < |v| < 400$ km s^{-1}). This intermediate-velocity molecular gas may represent AGN-radiation-driven outflows, or merger material settling onto the disk. Furthermore, I have presented evidence for a compact ($r < 120$ pc), jet-driven cold-molecular outflow ($400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}) at the position of the nucleus, with a mass outflow rate of $\dot{M}_{\rm out} \sim 230$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1} and a kinetic power that is ∼1.4 per cent of the AGN bolometric luminosity.

Overall, this detection of cold molecular outflow(s) in F13451+1232 changes the scenario of the AGN-driven outflows in the object: previous studies found that the neutral atomic HI and warm ionised phases had relatively modest mass outflow rates, whereas here it is found that the cold-molecular outflow is carrying over an order of magnitude more mass (and several times the kinetic power) than the warm ionised and neutral atomic phases. Similar results have been found for other types of active galaxy, where the colder phases have been seen to carry the majority of the outflowing mass (Ramos Almeida et al., 2019; Speranza et al., 2024), including IC 5063 (Chapter 2) and NGC 1068 (Chapter 3). This further demonstrates the need for multi-wavelength observations to fully quantify the impact of AGN-driven outflows. Moreover, a similarly compact ($r < 120$ pc) but more massive ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} \sim 650$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}) outflow was found in the ULIRG PKS 1549-79 (Oosterloo et al., 2019), which is also both a merger and a luminous radio source. These results thus provide important evidence that powerful radio sources accelerate compact molecular outflows, and that these outflows may carry more mass and power than other gas phases.

Crucially, in demonstrating that cold-molecular AGN-driven outflows can be compact ($r < 120$ pc), this chapter emphasises the importance of high-spatial-resolution observations when robustly quantifying the impact of AGN-driven outflows on their host galaxies.

Chapter acknowledgements

I thank the anonymous referee of the publication that this chapter is based on for their feedback, which helped to improve the quality of the report. This chapter makes use of the following ALMA data: ADS/JAO.ALMA#2019.1.01757.S. ALMA is a partnership of ESO (representing its member states), NSF (USA) and NINS (Japan), together with NRC (Canada), MOST and ASIAA (Taiwan), and KASI (Republic of Korea), in cooperation with the Republic of Chile. The Joint ALMA Observatory is operated by ESO, AUI/NRAO and NAOJ. The European VLBI Network is a joint facility of independent European, African, Asian, and North American radio astronomy institutes. Scientific results from data presented in this publication are derived from the following EVN project code(s): GM062.

Data availability

The ALMA CO(1–0) data used in this work is publicly available from the ALMA Science Archive (`https://almascience.eso.org/aq/`) with Project Code 2019.1.01757.S. The data used to produce the VLBI 1266 MHz continuum image presented in Figure 4.4a is publicly available from the European VLBI Network archive for experiment GM062B (`http://archive.jive.nl/scripts/arch.php?exp=GM062B_060605`).

Chapter 5

No evidence for galaxy-wide warm-ionised outflows in the ULIRG F13451+1232

“Omnipotent force,
unparalleled power,

Machination,
fed from the martian spire.”

— WALLOWING, *EARTH REAPER*

Chapter declaration

The contents of this chapter have not been previously published anywhere. All work is my own.

5.1 Chapter introduction

The results presented thus far in this thesis show that, for the active galaxies studied, the warm-ionised gas accounts for relatively little of the total outflow masses and kinetic powers. Importantly, the observations and techniques used in these analyses (e.g. kinematics derived from [OIII] emission-line profiles, the transauroral-line technique of electron density measurement, and ionisation diagnostic diagrams involving various line ratios) trace relatively high-density ($n > 10^3$ cm^{-3}), high-surface-brightness emission in the central kiloparsecs. However, theoretical models require that AGN-driven outflows are not limited to these scales, but are instead galaxy-wide in order to explain observed properties of the local galaxy population (Silk & Rees, 1998; Di Matteo et al., 2005; King, 2010; Zubovas & King, 2014; Curtis & Sijacki, 2016; Barai et al., 2018; Costa et al., 2018; Zubovas & Maskeliūnas, 2023).

While the outflow spatial extents predicted by models are seemingly in contradiction to those determined from observations — both in this thesis and in previous studies (radial extents of a few kiloparsecs: e.g. Villar-Martín et al. 2016; Rose et al. 2018; Spence et al. 2018) — it is possible that there is a spatially-extended ($r > 5$ kpc), low-density, low-surface-brightness, high-mass component to the warm ionised phase that the techniques used so far are not sensitive to, and that previous studies have not detected. From the arguments made by Spence et al. (2018), it can be shown that, for a fixed volume of an outflow that has two equal-temperature components of different densities (high density: n_h; low density: n_l) and filling factors (f_h and f_l), the ratio of the Hβ luminosities is given by

$$\frac{L_{\mathrm{H}\beta,\mathrm{l}}}{L_{\mathrm{H}\beta,\mathrm{h}}} = \frac{f_\mathrm{l}}{f_\mathrm{h}} \left(\frac{n_\mathrm{l}}{n_\mathrm{h}}\right)^2 . \tag{5.1}$$

Taking the ratio of the filling factors as the upper end of the range found in the QUADROS ULIRG sample ($f_\mathrm{l}/f_\mathrm{h} = 10^3$: Spence et al. 2018), then a component that is a factor of 100 less dense would contribute less than 10 per cent of the total Hβ flux. Since the ratio of the masses is given by

$$\frac{M_\mathrm{l}}{M_\mathrm{h}} = \frac{f_\mathrm{l}}{f_\mathrm{h}} \frac{n_\mathrm{l}}{n_\mathrm{h}}, \tag{5.2}$$

then this tenuous component would be ten times more massive than the dense component. Therefore, it is possible that, in objects for which compact, high-density, kpc-scale outflows have been detected (such as IC 5063, NGC 1068, NGC 4151, and F13451+1232; Chapters 2, 3, and 4), there also exists a much-more extended and massive component that the observations were not sensitive to. Principally, this may be because the emission from relatively dense ($n_e > 10^3$ cm^{-3}) gas likely dominates on the kpc-scales considered for those objects, potentially masking emission from a low-density component. In this scenario, a tenuous warm-ionised outflow component may have a mass and kinetic power that is comparable to (or significantly above) that of the compact outflows. Therefore, to ensure that a significant outflow component is not being missed in observational studies (and to determine whether or not warm-ionised outflows are truly galaxy-wide), the existence (or lack thereof) of spatially-extended, low-surface-brightness, massive warm-ionised outflows in such objects needs to be verified.

ULIRGs are ideal test cases for investigating this scenario: they represent the peaks of mergers and therefore, according to models of galaxy evolution that invoke AGN triggered by such conditions, are expected to host prominent, galaxy-wide outflows (Springel et al., 2005; Di Matteo et al., 2005; Hopkins et al., 2008; Johansson et al., 2009). In particular, the ULIRG F13451+1232 (the object studied with high-spatial-resolution ALMA observations in Chapter 4) is the perfect laboratory for this type of study. Not only is it a merger (Gilmore & Shaw, 1986; Heckman et al., 1986; Tadhunter et al., 2018) with a potentially recently-triggered AGN (Stanghellini et al., 2005), but the large-scale radio structure implies a previous epoch of AGN activity, which may have launched outflows that are still detectable (relic or fossil outflows: see King 2010; Fluetsch et al. 2019; Zubovas & Maskeliūnas 2023). Furthermore, the object is also classified as a QSO2, and its high bolometric luminosity (4.8×10^{45} erg s^{-1}: Rose et al. 2018) may be expected to drive significant amounts of gas radiatively — the mechanism that is commonly invoked by models which predict galaxy-wide outflows (e.g. Di Matteo et al. 2005; Curtis & Sijacki 2016; Barai et al. 2018; Zubovas & Maskeliūnas 2023). Compact ($r < 100$ pc) outflows have now been characterised in all gas phases close to the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (Chapter 4; Holt et al. 2003; Morganti et al. 2005; Rupke et al. 2005b; Holt et al. 2011; Morganti et al. 2013a; Rose et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2018; Villar Martín et al. 2023), with the warm ionised outflow phase being found to have a high electron density ($n_e = 10^{4.5}$ cm^{-3}: Holt et al. 2003, 2011; Rose et al. 2018)[1]. Therefore, following Equations 5.1 and 5.2, it is feasible that a galaxy-wide, warm-ionised outflow component could have much lower densities while being significantly more massive, yet has remained undetected in the nuclear regions due to emission from the high-density gas being dominant on these scales.

Some studies that make use of IFU spectroscopy of other QSOs have claimed evidence for extended ($r > 5$ kpc) ionised outflows (Fu & Stockton, 2009; Westmoquette et al., 2012; Liu et al., 2013, 2014; Harrison et al., 2014; McElroy et al., 2015; Wylezalek et al., 2017). However, since these studies were ground-based, it is possible that the beam-smearing effects of atmospheric seeing may have artificially spread emission from compact, spatially-unresolved nuclear outflows across the field of the view of the observations, leading to the interpretation of galaxy-wide outflows. As demonstrated by Husemann et al. (2016) for a sample of quasars with redshifts in the range $0.4 < z < 0.7$ (Liu et al., 2014), failure to account for atmospheric seeing in IFU studies of active galaxies has a significant effect on derived outflow kinematics and kinetic powers, and can dramatically change the interpretation of the roles and natures of the outflows.

---

[1] F13451+1232 was the first object for which the transauroral-line technique of electron density measurement was developed and applied (Holt et al., 2011).

Therefore, to directly test if an extended, low-surface-brightness, galaxy-wide component to the warm ionised outflow phase exists in ULIRGs — and to determine the impact of atmospheric seeing on AGN-driven-outflow spatial extents, kinematics, masses, and kinetic powers derived from ground-based observations— in this chapter, I analyse deep, wide-field VLT/MUSE observations of F13451+1232.

5.2 Observations and data reduction

5.2.1 Archival VLT/MUSE-DEEP data

Archival MUSE-DEEP[2] data products of F13451+1232 were downloaded from the ESO Archive Science Portal[3]. The MUSE-DEEP data project combines observations from multiple observing blocks (not necessarily taken contiguously, or on the same night) by first removing instrumental signatures (i.e. bias subtraction, dark subtraction, flat-fielding, telluric correction, and sky subtraction) from each constituent science exposure and performing astrometry, flux, and wavelength calibration using the MUSE DATA REDUCTION PIPELINE[4] (Weilbacher et al., 2020). The reduced exposures are then spatially aligned, and overlapping pixels are resampled to produce a deep datacube.

The observations used to produce the MUSE-DEEP cube for F13451+1232 were taken as part of ESO programme 0103.B-0391 (PI Arribas) on the 11th and 12th May 2019 using the instrument's Wide Field Mode (WFM) with adaptive optics (AO), centred on the object's bright primary (western) nucleus. MUSE-WFM covers a field of view of 1.53×1.53 arcminutes with a pixel scale of 0.2 arcseconds per pixel, and has a wavelength range of 4700–9350 Å with a spectral resolution of ~1800 at 5000 Å. The total combined exposure time of the deep datacube was 6732 seconds.

5.2.2 Further reduction of MUSE-DEEP data

To remove residuals of the MUSE DATA REDUCTION PIPELINE sky-subtraction routine, I performed a second-order sky subtraction on the deep datacube. First, I selected a 0.6×0.6 arcsecond region at a radial distance of ~20 arcseconds north-west of the primary nucleus that was free of emission (Figure 5.1), and took the median of the spaxels in this region to give a median spectrum. Since the data had already been (first-order) sky-subtracted by the pipeline, the only features in this spectrum were residuals of subtracted telluric lines. Second, I subtracted this median spectrum from each spaxel in the deep datacube, resulting in a second-order-sky-subtracted cube.

---

[2] `https://doi.eso.org/10.18727/archive/42`

[3] `https://archive.eso.org/scienceportal/home`

[4] The MUSE-DEEP dataset for F13451+1232 described here was reduced using version 2.8 of the MUSE DATA REDUCTION PIPELINE (Weilbacher et al., 2020)

Finally, to correct for galactic extinction in each spaxel, the CCM89 $R_\mathrm{v} = 3.1$ extinction law was used with the mean value of $\mathrm{E(B-V)_{mean}} = 0.0286$ found in the direction of F13451+1232, taken from the S98 and SF11 extinction maps.

5.2.3 Seeing estimates

To estimate the seeing of the deep dataset, I extracted a 6 × 6 arcsecond region from the deep cube around a star that lies in the field of view at a radial distance of ∼17 arcseconds in projection from the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (Figure 5.1). The flux density of this star was integrated between the wavelengths 5496–5664 Å (corresponding to the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4595,5007 doublet) to produce a two-dimensional continuum image; fitting a two-dimensional (2D) Moffat profile (which accurately describes the PSF of a seeing disk: Moffat 1969) to this image resulted in $\mathrm{FWHM}_\star = 0.79 \pm 0.10$ arcseconds, which is taken to be the seeing value for the deep datacube. Given that the observations were taken at lower elevations than zenith, and considering that the typical FWHM reduction of the MUSE-WFM AO mode is 10–50 per cent (Fusco et al., 2020), the seeing value derived in this way is consistent with the values measured by the VLT observatory DIMM (near zenith) during the constituent observations (0.66–0.91 arcseconds)[5].

5.3 Analysis and results

5.3.1 A Bayesian emission-line fitting routine

In order to fit the large number of emission lines involved in this analysis robustly, I have developed an automated, Bayesian emission-line fitting routine. This routine uses the EMCEE PYTHON module (Foreman-Mackey et al., 2013) — which is an implementation of the Affine Invariant MCMC Ensemble sampler (Goodman & Weare, 2010) — to fit a first-order polynomial to the continuum and N_g Gaussian components to a given emission-line profile. In this routine, N_g is iteratively increased from zero, and at each iteration, the Bayesian odds of the current and previous iteration are used to determine if another iteration (one more Gaussian component) statistically improves the fit to the line profile, thus preventing over-fitting.

Lines, doublets and emission-line blends (such as Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584) were fit individually; a sufficient wavelength range of continuum on either side of the line profile(s) was included in the fits. In cases where the modelled lines arise from a doublet of the

---

[5] VLT observatory DIMM seeing values queried using the DIMM Seeing Query Form: `http://archive.eso.org/wdb/wdb/asm/dimm_paranal/form`

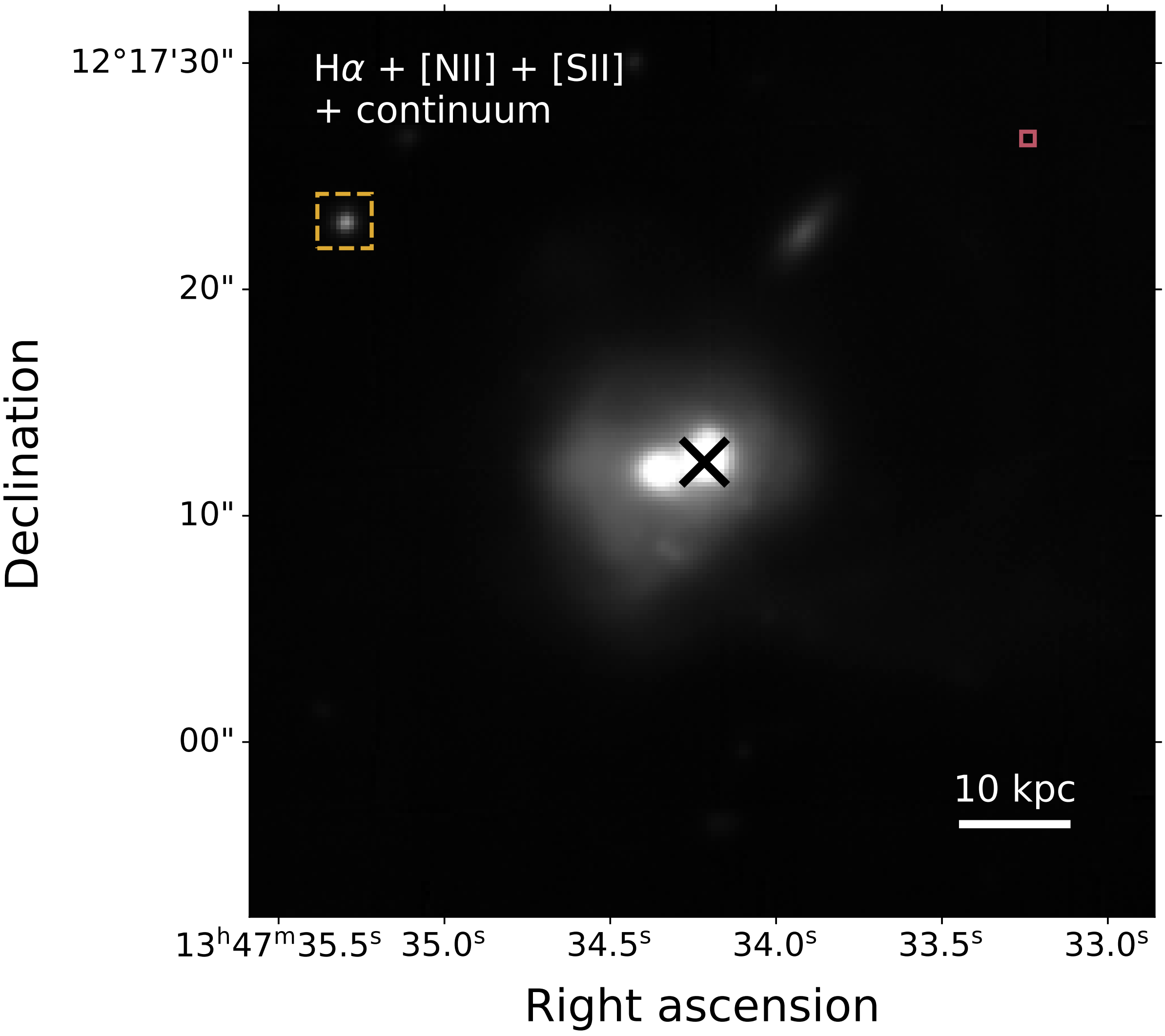

Hα + [NII] + [SII]
+ continuum
12°17'30"
20"
10"
00"
Declination
10 kpc
13h47m35.5s
35.0s
34.5s
34.0s
33.5s
33.0s
Right ascension

Figure 5.1: 6400–6850 Å rest-wavelength image (covering Hα + [NII]λλ6548,6584, [SII]λλ6717,6731, and continuum) of F13451+1232, produced from archival MUSE-DEEP data. The primary nucleus is marked with a black cross, the star used to estimate the atmospheric seeing value of the dataset is marked with a yellow dashed-line box, and the 0.6 × 0.6 arcsecond region that was extracted for the second-order sky subtraction is marked with a red solid-line box.

same ion (e.g. [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731), the width of a given Gaussian component was set to be the same for each doublet line, and the wavelength separations were set to those defined by atomic physics (Osterbrock & Ferland, 2006). Furthermore, for lines arising from the same upper energy level, the flux ratios were also set to those defined from atomic physics ([OIII](5007/4959) = 2.99; [NII](6584/6548) = 2.92: determined with the PyNeb Python module: Luridiana et al. 2015).

Before the main production run of the MCMC routine, a burn-in phase was performed. The steps of this phase were not included in determining the final parameters of the fit, as their purpose was to ensure that the walkers started in a region of probability that is more representative of the sampled parameter distribution. 1000 steps were used for both the burn-in and the main production run, as it was found that the walkers converged well before this number of steps; 200 walkers were used in both cases.

The initial starting points for the model parameters were set by Gaussian distributions around physically-motivated estimates: the continuum flux offset (i.e. the y-intercept of the first-order polynomial) was set to be the mean flux measured on either side of the emission line; the continuum slope (the gradient of the first-order polynomial) was set to zero; the peak value of each Gaussian component was set as half of the maximum flux value seen in the data, the Gaussian centroids were set to the wavelength of the emission line in the rest frame of the galaxy, and the Gaussian widths were set to be twice the instrumental line width of MUSE ($\sigma_{\rm inst} = 1.1$ Å: Weilbacher et al. 2016).

Priors for the routine were also physically motivated. For the Gaussian components, their peak values were required to be equal-to or greater-than zero (to ensure only emission was being modelled), their centroids were not allowed to be more than 50 Å in separation from the rest wavelength of the line in the galaxy's rest frame (corresponding to $v \sim 3000$ km s^{-1}), and their widths were constrained to be greater than the MUSE instrumental width. Furthermore, the flux ratios for lines arising from the same ions (but with different upper energy levels) were required to be within the ratio limits defined by atomic physics — for example, $0.44 <$ [SII](6717/6731) < 1.45 (determined using the PyNeb Python module).

The log-likelihood function used in the MCMC fits was

$$\ln L = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^{k}\left(\frac{F_{\lambda,\rm i} - F^{\rm m}_{\lambda,\rm i}}{F^{\rm err}_{\lambda,\rm i}}\right)^2, \tag{5.3}$$

where, at the wavelength step i (and up to the final wavelength step k), $F_{\lambda,\rm i}$ is the observed flux density, $F^{\rm m}_{\lambda,\rm i}$ is the modelled flux density, and $F^{\rm err}_{\lambda,\rm i}$ is the uncertainty associated with the observed flux density.

The fitting routine begins with $N_g = 0$ (i.e. only a first-order polynomial), for which a fit to the data is produced using the MCMC Ensemble. The Bayesian probabilities for the initial run are recorded, and this process is repeated for $N_g = N_g + 1$ until the ratio of posterior probabilities (Bayesian odds) of successive runs is less than two[6]. If this condition is not met, the routine continues until it is fulfilled. In this way, the minimum number of statistically-meaningful Gaussian components required to describe the emission-line profiles is determined by the routine, avoiding over-fitting.

Cases where only a first-order polynomial was required to adequately describe the spectrum (i.e. $N_g = 0$) were considered to be non-detections, whereas in cases that required one or more Gaussian components, the value for each model parameter was taken to be the 50th percentile for the marginalised probability distribution (i.e. the probability distribution for each parameter), and the 1σ uncertainties were taken as the 16th and 84th percentiles.

5.3.2 The effect of atmospheric seeing on outflow extents and kinematics

Nuclear aperture extraction and modelling

Given that compact ($r < 100$ pc), warm-ionised outflows have been detected and characterised near the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (Holt et al., 2003, 2011; Rose et al., 2018; Tadhunter et al., 2018), it is possible that the beam-smearing effects of atmospheric seeing have artificially spread this emission to larger spatial scales in the MUSE-DEEP datacube FOV. To account for this, I first extracted a circular aperture centred on the primary nucleus, the radius of which was set to be 0.4 arcseconds (~0.9 kpc), corresponding to the half width at half maximum (HWHM = FWHM/2) of the seeing value for the dataset ($\mathrm{HWHM}_\star = 0.40 \pm 0.10$ arcseconds: Section 5.2.3). This radius was selected because intermediate and broad components of any line profiles within it are expected to be due to the prominent compact outflows (Holt et al., 2003, 2011), and there was sufficient signal for the robust modelling and fitting of these profiles. The spaxels contained in the nuclear aperture were summed to give a total nuclear spectrum, while the flux uncertainties of each spaxel were added in quadrature. Second, the Bayesian emission-line-fitting routine described above was used to produce and fit a model to the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda4959, 5007$ doublet of the nuclear spectrum. To ensure that the model accounted for the extended blue wings and dual-peaked line profiles seen in the nuclear spectrum, the results of a least-squares fit consisting of three Gaussian components were used as initial parameters for a run of the MCMC line-fitting routine. The resulting model is shown along with the spectrum extracted from the nuclear aperture in Figure 5.2, and its parameters are given in Table 5.1. The two broadest kinematic components of this model — henceforth referred to as the 'nuclear model' — are consistent with those of the 'broad' and 'very broad' components of the nuclear [OIII] fits for F13451+1232 presented by Rose et al. (2018), and correspond to nuclear outflows. The narrowest component of the nuclear spectrum fit is consistent with the 'narrow' component of the Rose et al. (2018) [OIII] model, and its kinematics correspond to those of the kpc-scale disk detected in CO(1–0) emission in Chapter 4 (see also Lamperti et al. 2022). Note that while the fit to the nuclear spectrum does not precisely describe the details of the emission-line profile, it is adequate for the purposes of this study.

---

[6] As a check on this criterion, I also performed this routine with the Bayesian Information Criterion (BIC), where the more-complex model was chosen if the difference of BIC values between successive runs was greater than 6. When applied to the MUSE-DEEP data, the resulting model parameters were not significantly different from those produced using the Bayesian odds criterion.

Emission-line fits of the extended emission

To determine the large-scale warm-ionised gas kinematics, for each spaxel in the deep datacube, the Bayesian emission-line fitting routine was used to fit a model consisting of the nuclear model (accounting for beam-smeared, nuclear-outflow emission) and N_g additional Gaussian components (accounting for genuine, non-beam-smeared emission) to the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet. The centroid wavelengths, widths and relative intensities of the Gaussian components of the nuclear model were fixed; only the peak flux density was allowed to vary. In this way, the line-fitting routine was able to determine the extent to which the nuclear-outflow emission was smeared across the MUSE field of view, as well as detect and isolate the contributions of genuine extended emission to line profiles in each spaxel. Similar approaches to PSF-subtraction and beam-smearing-correction have been taken by previous studies (e.g. Carniani et al. 2015; Kakkad et al. 2020; Speranza et al. 2024), although here, only broad components (FWHM > 500 km s^{-1}) are included in the nuclear model.

Beam smearing of compact outflow emission

As a measure of the extent of beam smearing of the compact nuclear-outflow emission, in the left panels of Figure 5.3 I present the spatial distribution of the peak flux intensity of the nuclear model in the central 7×7 arcsecond region around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232, as determined by fitting the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda 4959, 5007$ doublet in each spaxel. The flux of the nuclear-model components appears to be radially symmetric around the location of the primary nucleus, indicative of beam smearing.

Peak flux density ($\times 10^{-16}$ Å)	Centroid wavelength (Å)	Velocity shift (km s^{-1})	FWHM (Å)	FWHM (km s^{-1})
3.52 ± 0.34	5608.9 ± 0.8	-382.2 ± 43.9	18.8 ± 0.8	1006.1 ± 42.8
1.46 ± 0.06	5592.7 ± 0.7	-1248.2 ± 35.9	53.1 ± 1.3	2846.7 ± 68.1
1.05 ± 0.37	5615.8 ± 0.9	-19.5 ± 47.5	7.7 ± 3.8	412.9 ± 203.5

Table 5.1: Parameters for the [OIII] model derived from fitting the spectrum extracted from a circular aperture of radius $r = 0.4$ arcseconds around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232. The presented velocity shifts are relative to the galaxy rest frame, and the FWHM values have been corrected for instrumental broadening. The 'nuclear model' referred to in this work consists of the two broadest components presented here (the top two rows); the narrowest component (bottom row) is kinematically distinct, and corresponds to the kpc-scale disk in the nucleus of F13451+1232 (see Chapter 4).

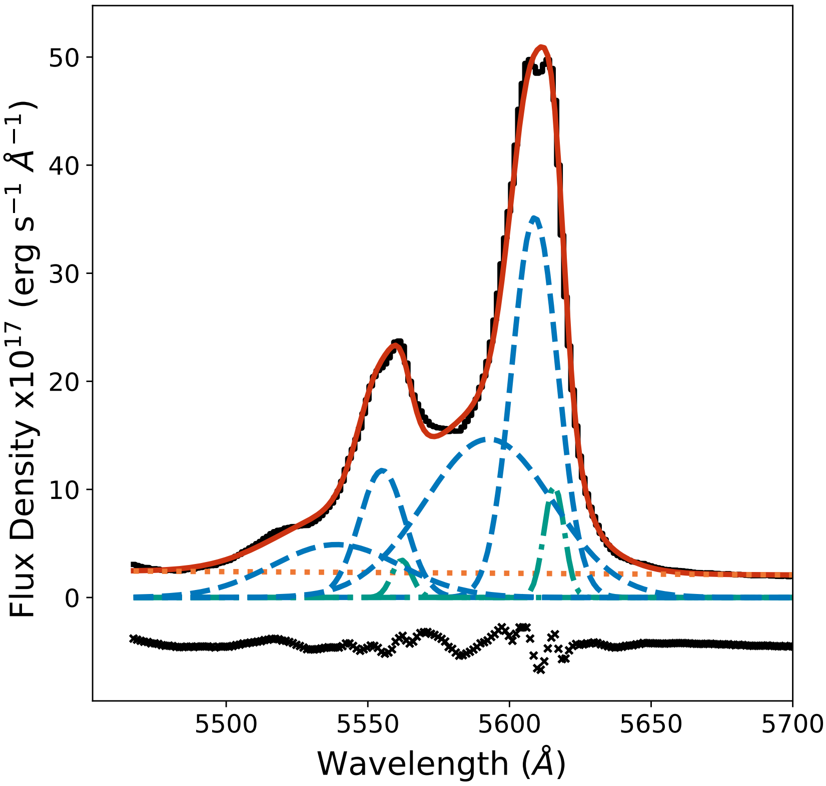


Figure 5.2: [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 line profile for the extracted circular $r = 0.4$ arcsec aperture centred on the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (black solid line). The overall fit to the line profile is shown as a solid red line; the broad Gaussian components of this fit (the 'nuclear model') are shown as dashed blue lines, the narrow Gaussian component is shown as a dash-dotted green line, and the first-order polynomial (accounting for the continuum) is shown as a dotted orange line. Residuals (flux − model) are shown as crosses below the line profile.

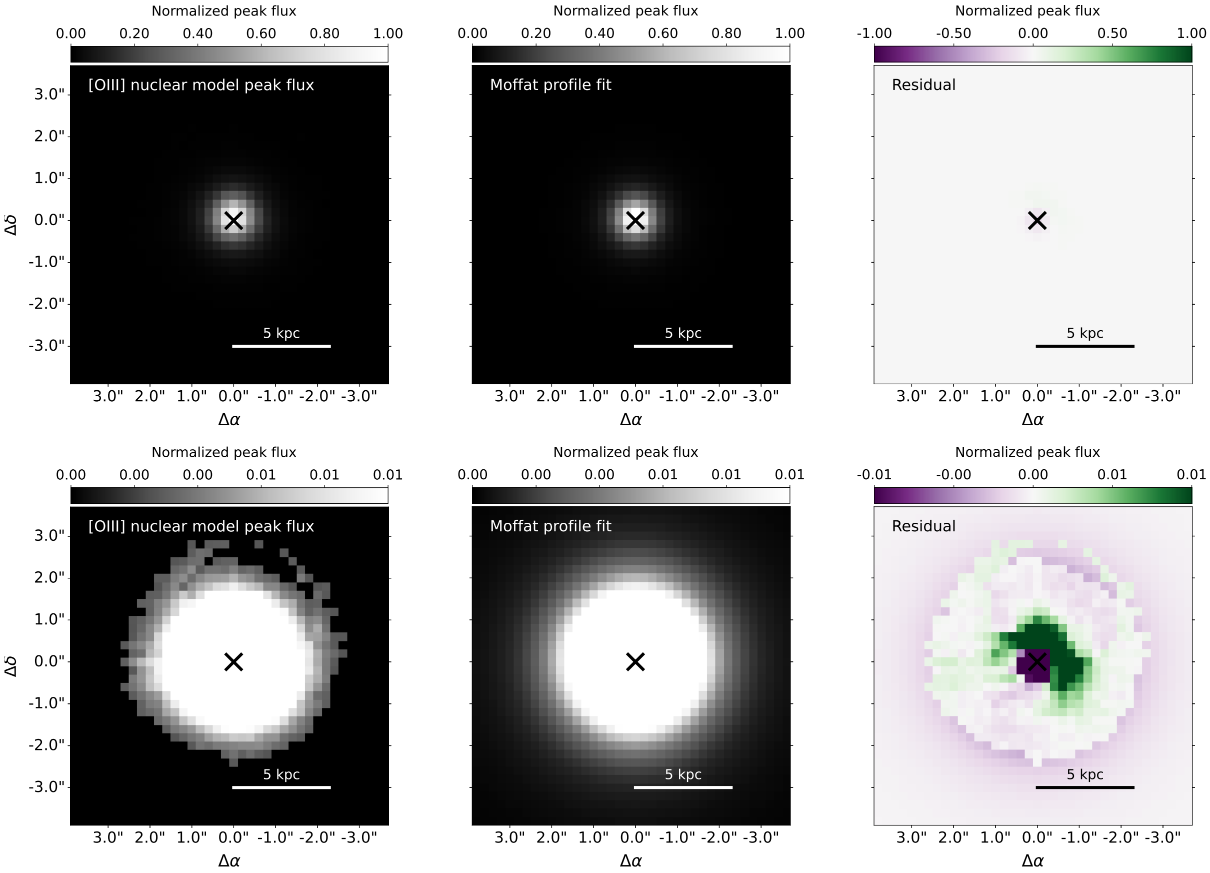


Figure 5.3: The spatial distribution of the peak flux of the nuclear model in the [OIII] fits (left panel), the results of two-dimensional Moffat profile fits to this distribution (middle panel), and residuals ([OIII] nuclear model peak flux − model; right panel) in the inner 7 arcseconds (15 kpc) of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (marked with a black cross). The flux in all cases is normalised to the highest flux value of the nuclear model (upper left panel); the top row shows the full range of normalised flux, while the bottom row shows a significantly reduced range for presentation purposes. It can be seen that the [OIII]-nuclear-model flux is well-described by a Moffat profile with an FWHM of 0.74 ± 0.02 arcseconds.

To investigate this further, a two-dimensional Moffat profile was fit to the spatial flux distribution of the nuclear model, which is shown along with residuals (the flux of the fitted two-dimensional Moffat profile subtracted from the peak flux of the nuclear model) in Figure 5.3 — it can be seen that the spatial distribution of the nuclear-model flux is well described by a Moffat profile of FWHM $= 0.74 \pm 0.02$ arcseconds. This value is consistent (within 1σ) with the seeing value measured from a star in the MUSE-DEEP data FOV ($\mathrm{FWHM}_{\star} = 0.79 \pm 0.10$ arcseconds: Section 5.2.3; see Figure 5.1), providing direct evidence that atmospheric seeing artificially spread emission from the nuclear outflows across the MUSE FOV.

To investigate the residual emission after the beam-smeared nuclear-outflow emission has been accounted for, I subtracted the [OIII] nuclear model from each spaxel of the

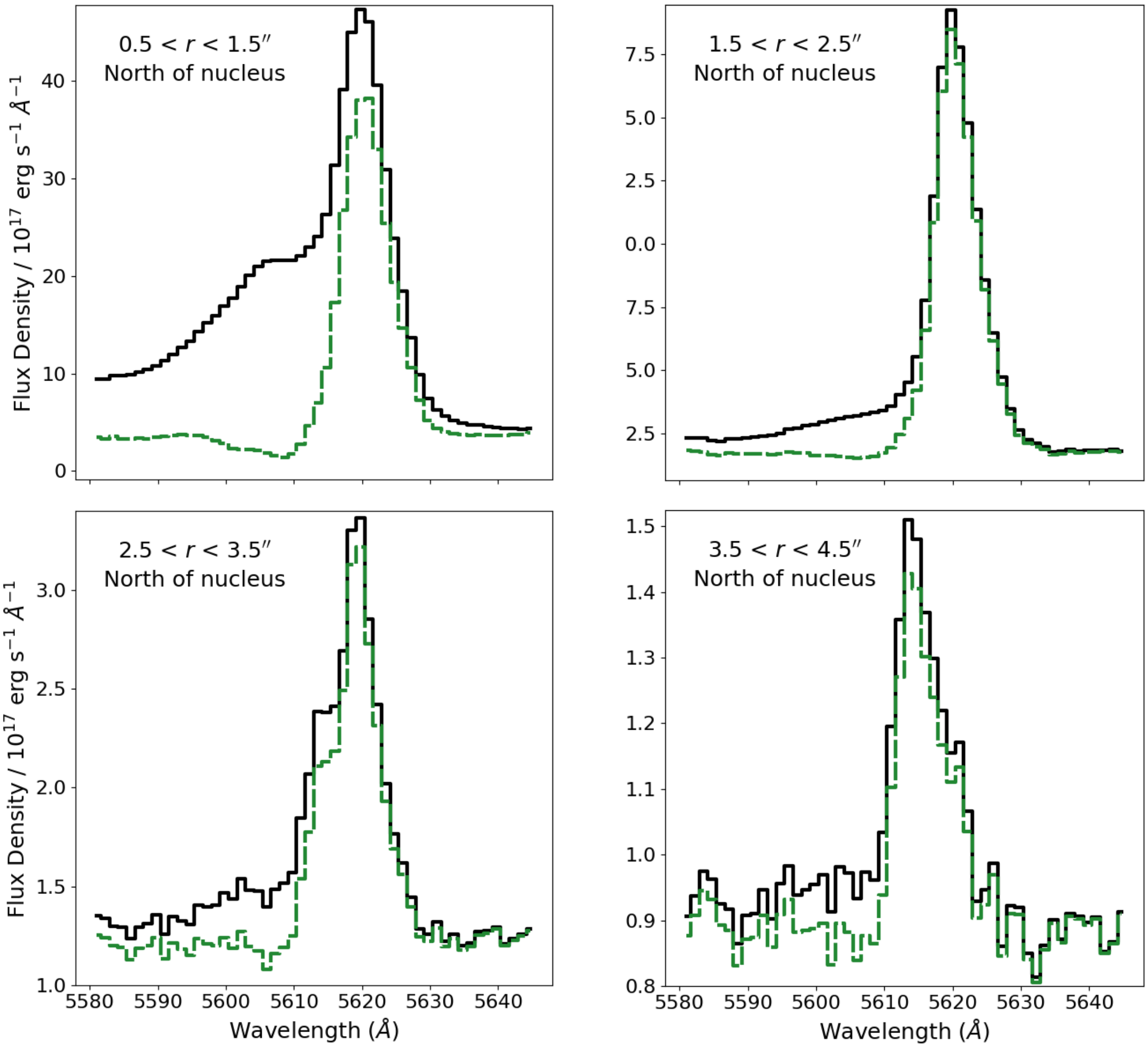


Figure 5.4: [OIII]λ5007 line profile extracted from rectangular 2×1 arcsecond apertures (centred on the primary nucleus in the east-west direction) at increasing radial distances (labelled) to the north of the nucleus, for the original datacube (solid black line) and the datacube with the nuclear model subtracted using a Moffat distribution (dashed green line). It can be seen that the beam-smeared nuclear outflow emission is significant between $5595 < \lambda < 5610$ Å ($-1200 < v < -420$ km s^{-1}) in all apertures.

datacube. This was done by first normalising the peak flux of the nuclear model to unity, multiplying it by the value of the Moffat profile fit to the [OIII] nuclear model flux distribution in each spaxel (middle panels of Figure 5.3; which is consistent with what is expected from atmospheric seeing, as noted above), and subtracting this from the original datacube. To demonstrate the radial extent to which the beam-smeared emission contributes significantly to the line profiles, I extracted a series of rectangular 2×1 arcsecond apertures — centred on the nucleus in the east-west direction — at increasing radial distances north of the nucleus from this datacube and the original datacube. I present the [OIII]λ5007 line profiles in these apertures for both datacubes in Figure 5.4, which demonstrate that the beam-smeared nuclear-outflow emission contributes significantly to the flux between $5595 < \lambda < 5610$ Å ($-1200 < v < -420$ km s^{-1}) in all apertures, including in an aperture that covers a radial extent of $3.5 < r < 4.5$ arcseconds north of the primary nucleus.

As further confirmation that beam smearing is responsible for the spatial extent of the broad [OIII] emission, a series of annuli were extracted from both around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 and the star in the MUSE-DEEP FOV that was used to measure the seeing in Section 5.2.3. In both cases, the annuli were centred on the brightest pixel of the flux distribution and had fixed widths of $\Delta r = 0.5$ arcseconds; the inner radius of the annuli was increased in 0.5 arcsecond steps from $r = 0.0$ arcseconds to 2.0 arcseconds. The pixels in each annulus around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 were summed (and uncertainties added in quadrature) to produce a spectrum, to which the nuclear model + N_g Gaussian components + first-order polynomial was fit. The normalised flux in each annulus, relative to the flux level of the innermost annulus (i.e. a circular aperture of radius $r = 0.5$ arcseconds), is shown for both the peak flux of these nuclear model fits and the monochromatic [OIII] flux of the star in Figure 5.5. With the exception of the $0.5 < r < 1.0$ arcsecond annulus, the flux distribution of the nuclear model closely follows that of the star (and therefore the PSF of the seeing disk). The discrepancy in flux in the $0.5 < r < 1.0$ arcsecond ($1.1 < r < 2.2$ kpc) annulus can be explained as genuine intermediate-velocity emission from the host galaxy system (consistent with what is expected in a merger) contributing to the line profiles on these scales. Overall, this is further strong evidence that beam-smeared compact-outflow emission can be significant up to at least a radial distance of 2.5 arcseconds — six times the HWHM of the seeing disk ($\mathrm{HWHM}_\star = 0.40 \pm 0.10$ arcseconds).

Accounting for atmospheric seeing in velocity maps

In order to determine the impact of the beam-smeared nuclear-outflow emission on measurements of outflow radial extents and kinematics, the fitting procedure was repeated as outlined in Sections 5.3.1 and 5.3.2 for every spaxel in the cube, but the nuclear model was not included in the fits. This is henceforth referred to as the 'free-fitting' case, and was done to provide a test of what would be found if the beam smearing of the nuclear-outflow emission had not been accounted for.

W_{80} ($v_{90} - v_{10}$: Section 1.2.2) maps were created for the results of both line-fitting approaches (i.e. including the nuclear-model Gaussian components, and the free fits). To create the W_{80} maps, first, any spaxels for which the peak flux density value of the highest-flux Gaussian component was less than $1\sigma_{\mathrm{std}}$ from the continuum were not considered. In the free-fitting case, all Gaussian components were used to measure W_{80}, while in the fits that included the nuclear model, only the additional (non-nuclear-model) Gaussian components were used. For each case, the total fluxes of the Gaussian components involved

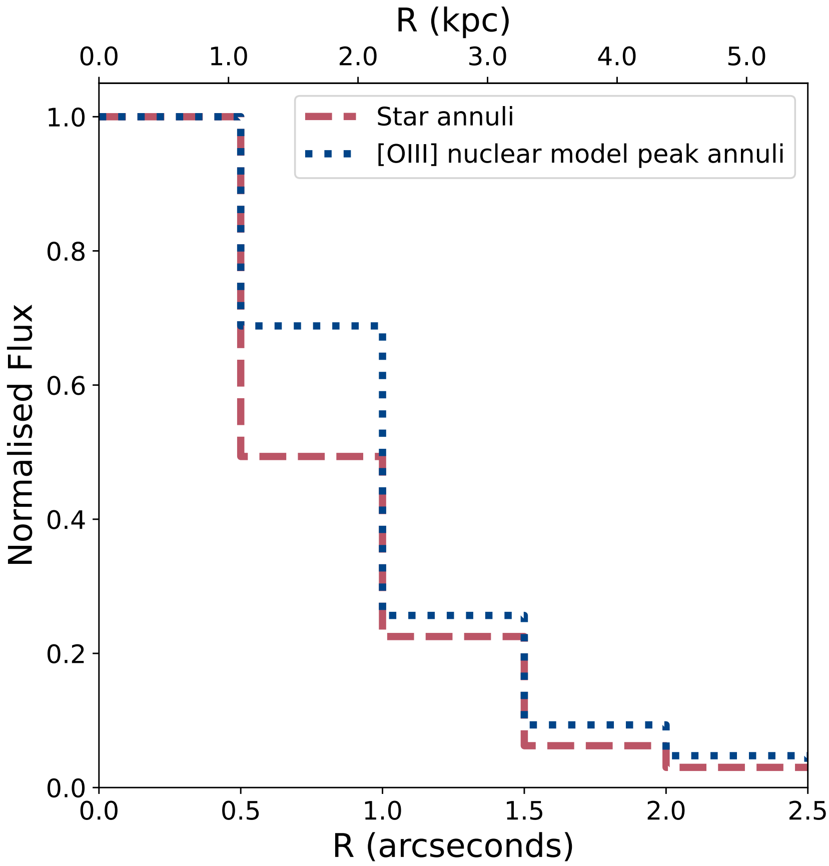


Figure 5.5: Peak flux values of nuclear-model fits to spectra extracted from annuli around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (dotted blue line), and the total monochromatic [OIII] flux of the pixels in each annulus around a star in the field of view of the MUSE observations (red dashed line); the fluxes have been normalised to the value of the innermost annulus in both cases. With the exception of the $0.5 < r < 1.0$ arcsecond annulus — which likely also contains real intermediate-velocity emission from the host galaxy/merger — the normalised-flux profiles are similar, indicating that the spatial extent of the broad lines around the primary nucleus is due to the beam smearing of nuclear-outflow emission.

were calculated, and the v_{90} and v_{10} percentile velocities (the velocities containing 90 and 10 per cent of the total line flux, respectively) were determined following the method described in Section 2.3.1 (see also Rose et al. 2018). These percentile velocities were then used to calculate the W_{80} parameter. The resulting maps for the inner 6×6 arcsecond region around the primary nucleus are shown in Figure 5.6. Furthermore, flux-weighted velocity shifts (v_w) in each spaxel for both cases were determined using Equation 2.1 (see also Rose et al. 2018); these maps are presented in Figure 5.7.

In the velocity maps produced from the free fits (left panel of Figure 5.6), very-high velocity widths ($W_{80} \sim 2500$ km s^{-1}) and shifts ($v_w \sim -1000$ km s^{-1}) are seen in a circular region of maximum radial extent $r \sim 1$ arcsecond ($r \sim 2.2$ kpc) centred on the nucleus, in addition to high velocity widths ($W_{80} \sim 1500$ km s^{-1}) and shifts ($v_w \sim -500$ km s^{-1}) seen

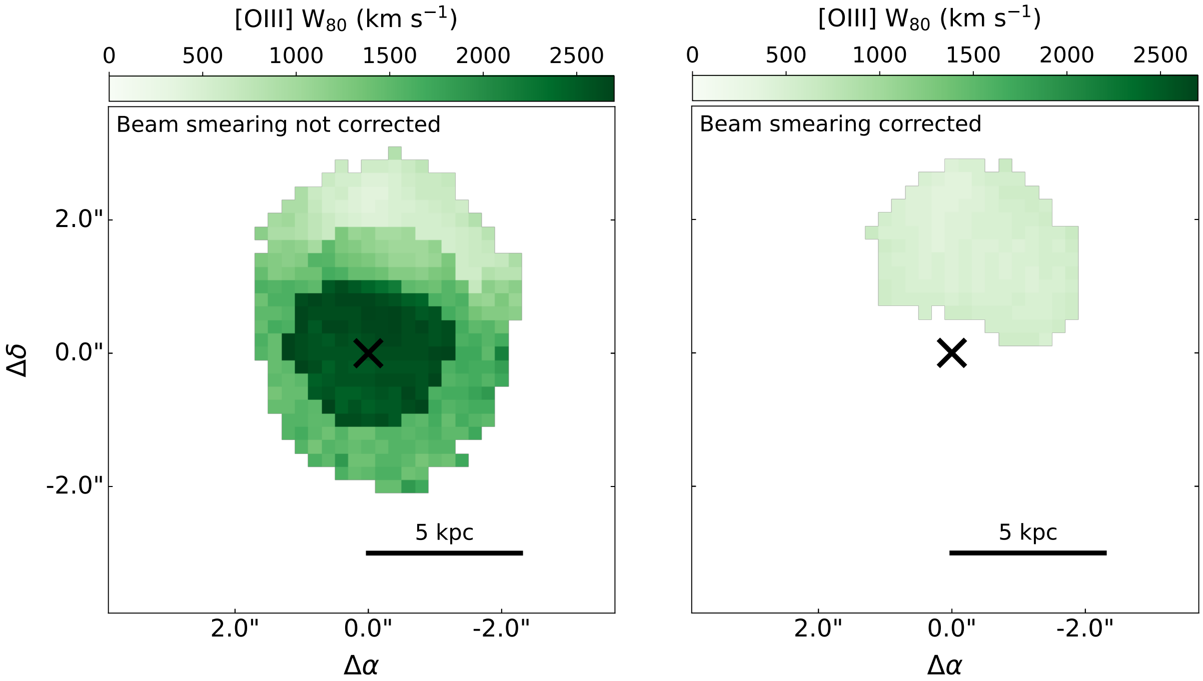


Figure 5.6: Non-parametric velocity width ($W_{80} = v_{90} - v_{10}$) maps of the central 6×6 arcsecond (13×13 kpc) region around the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 (black cross), as measured from free-fitting Gaussian components (left panel) and fitting the nuclear model and $N_{\rm g}$ Gaussian components (in which only the $N_{\rm g}$ Gaussian components were used to measure W_{80}; right panel). The former case (left panel) is what would be expected had the beam smearing of compact high-velocity outflow emission not been accounted for, while the latter case (right panel) accounts for this beam smearing.

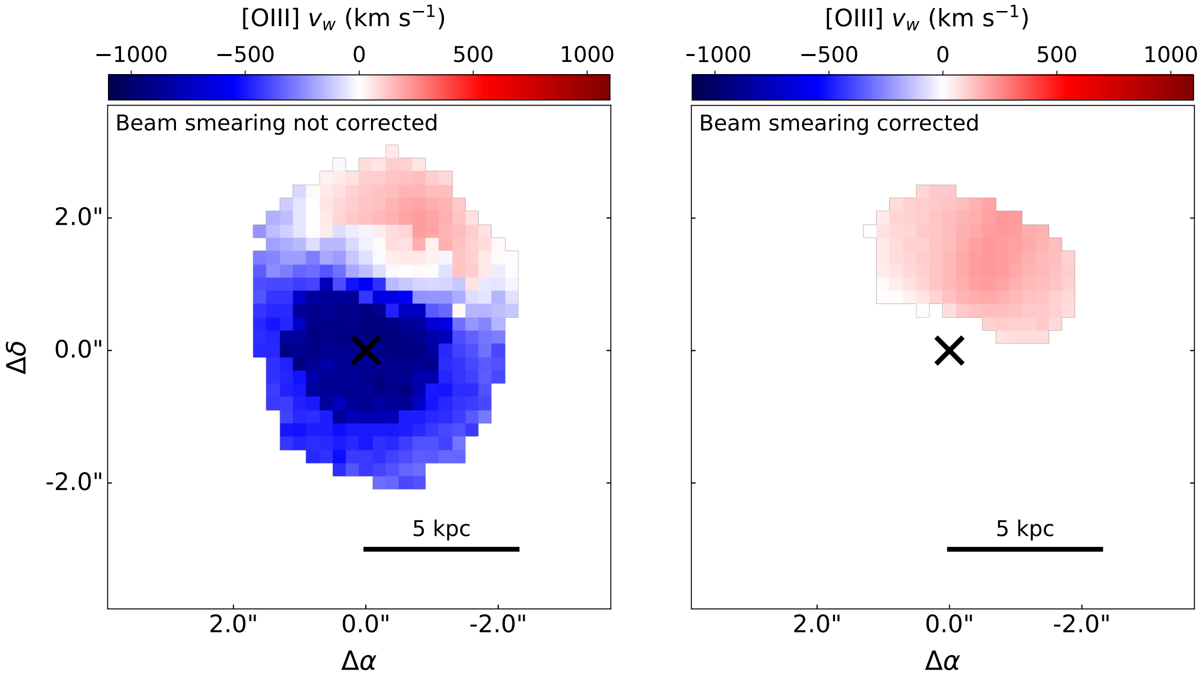


Figure 5.7: As for Figure 5.6, but for flux-weighted velocity shift (v_w).

in a larger circular region ($r \sim 2$ arcseconds; $r \sim 4.4$ kpc), also centred on the nucleus. The maximum radial extent of detected emission is $r \sim 2.5$ arcseconds ($r \sim 5.5$ arcseconds) NW of the nucleus, where intermediate velocity widths ($W_{80} \sim 500$ km s^{-1}) and low velocity shifts ($v_w < 210$ km s^{-1}) are seen. Although this map could be taken as evidence for kinematically-disturbed gas on large scales (up to a radius of $r = 2.5$ arcseconds $= 5.5$ kpc), crucially, the effects of beam smearing (Figures 5.3 and 5.5) have not been accounted for.

By including the nuclear model (Figure 5.2) in the spaxel fits and only measuring the kinematics of the additional Gaussian components (i.e. those representing genuine, non-nuclear emission), the velocity maps presented in the right panel of Figures 5.6 and 5.7 were produced. Here, the spatially-extended circular region ($r \sim 2.5$ arcseconds) of high velocity widths ($1000 < W_{80} < 2700$ km s^{-1}) and shifts ($350 < W_{80} < 1000$ km s^{-1}) produced in the free-fitting case is not seen, as it is accounted for by the nuclear model components. The only region where additional emission is detected is in a region that extends ~2.5 arcseconds to the NW of the nucleus, albeit the velocity widths are lower ($W_{80} < 500$ km s^{-1}) than those seen in the same region in the free-fitting case. Given that, in this region, the emission-line fitting routine required further Gaussian components in addition to the nuclear model to describe the line profiles, I take this as representing genuine, spatially-extended emission. Conversely, given that the extended ($r \sim 2.5$ arcseconds) region of high-velocity emission seen in the free-fits velocity maps can be accounted for by the nuclear model, and that the peak flux distribution of this model follows the PSF of the seeing disk (Figures 5.3 and 5.5), I argue that the extended, high-velocity emission in the free-fitting case represents emission from the compact outflows in the nucleus of F13451+1232 that has been artificially spread across the FOV by atmospheric seeing. In this context, it is important to note that this region of high-velocity emission seen in the free-fitting case ($r < 2.5$ arcseconds; left panel) extends far beyond the HWHM of the seeing disk ($\mathrm{HWHM}_\star = 0.40 \pm 0.10$ arcseconds: Section 5.2.3), and that, when accounted for, the resulting gas kinematics of any real emission (right panel) are much more modest.

5.3.3 Energetics of the extended warm-ionised emission

Aperture extraction from the MUSE-DEEP datacube

In order to quantify the properties of the spatially-extended ($r > 5$ kpc) warm-ionised gas robustly, and to investigate further the radial extent to which beam smearing of the nuclear-outflow emission may affect the derived gas kinematics and energetics, rectangular apertures of various sizes and positions in the MUSE-DEEP FOV were selected. Following the same process as outlined in Sections 2.2.4 and 3.2.3, the spaxels contained in a given aperture were summed to give a single one-dimensional spectrum, and the flux errors of each spaxel were added in quadrature. In this way, the signal of important diagnostic emission lines (and the potential contamination from the beam-smeared nuclear emission) was sufficient for robust characterisation.

The locations and sizes of the apertures — shown in Figure 5.8 — were chosen to cover distinct flux structures seen in Hα+[NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584+[SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 images produced from the MUSE-DEEP cube and high-spatial-resolution (0.05 arcseconds pix^{-1}) [OIII] imaging presented by Tadhunter et al. (2018). Furthermore, the sizes of the apertures were also chosen to include sufficient signal in the required diagnostic lines. Aperture 1 was selected as it was the furthest location (in radial distance) to the north of the primary nucleus in which the fainter emission lines were well-detected; Aperture 2 was chosen to cover the arc-like structure to the NW of the nucleus that is seen in the high-resolution [OIII] HST imaging by Tadhunter et al. (2018); Aperture 3 covers the approximate area of genuinely-extended emission seen in the velocity maps (right panels of Figures 5.6 and 5.7), and Apertures 4 and 5 were placed at the furthest radial distances to the south and west respectively that contained sufficient signal in the required diagnostic lines. It was not possible to extract an aperture covering the secondary nucleus ($r \sim 2$ arcseconds east of the primary nucleus), as the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda 4959, 5007$ doublet at this location has a low equivalent width, is dominated by beam-smeared emission from the primary nucleus, and the underlying continuum is complex. Likewise, the region that presents bright Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 + [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 emission $r \sim 4$ arcseconds to the southeast of the primary nucleus (Figure 5.8) — corresponding to a known HII region in this object (Rodríguez Zaurín et al., 2007) — does not contain sufficient signal in the [OIII] lines for measurement.

Aperture emission-line fits

For each aperture, the line profiles of the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet (used for kinematics), the Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 blend (the former used to determine gas masses), and the [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 doublet (used to determine electron densities) were fit with two methods: one using the nuclear model and N_g Gaussian components, and the other using only N_g Gaussian components (free-fitting), mirroring the approach taken earlier. For the nuclear-model fits, in the case of the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet, the nuclear model described in Section 5.3.2 (Figure 5.2; Table 5.1) was used, while a distinct model for the Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 blend was created using the Bayesian emission line routine with the nuclear aperture. The Hα and [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 line profiles were significantly blended, and so the nuclear model consisted of a single Gaussian for each of the lines (with equal line widths, and wavelength separations and [NII] flux ratio taken from atomic physics) and N_g Gaussian components for the broad blend. For the [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 doublet, the nuclear

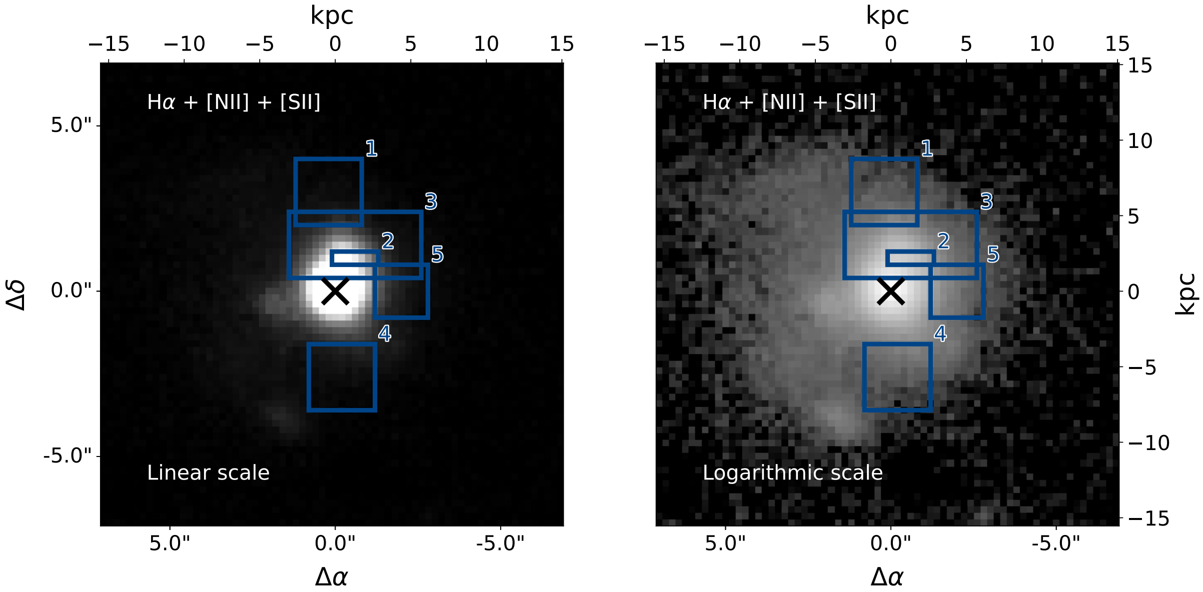
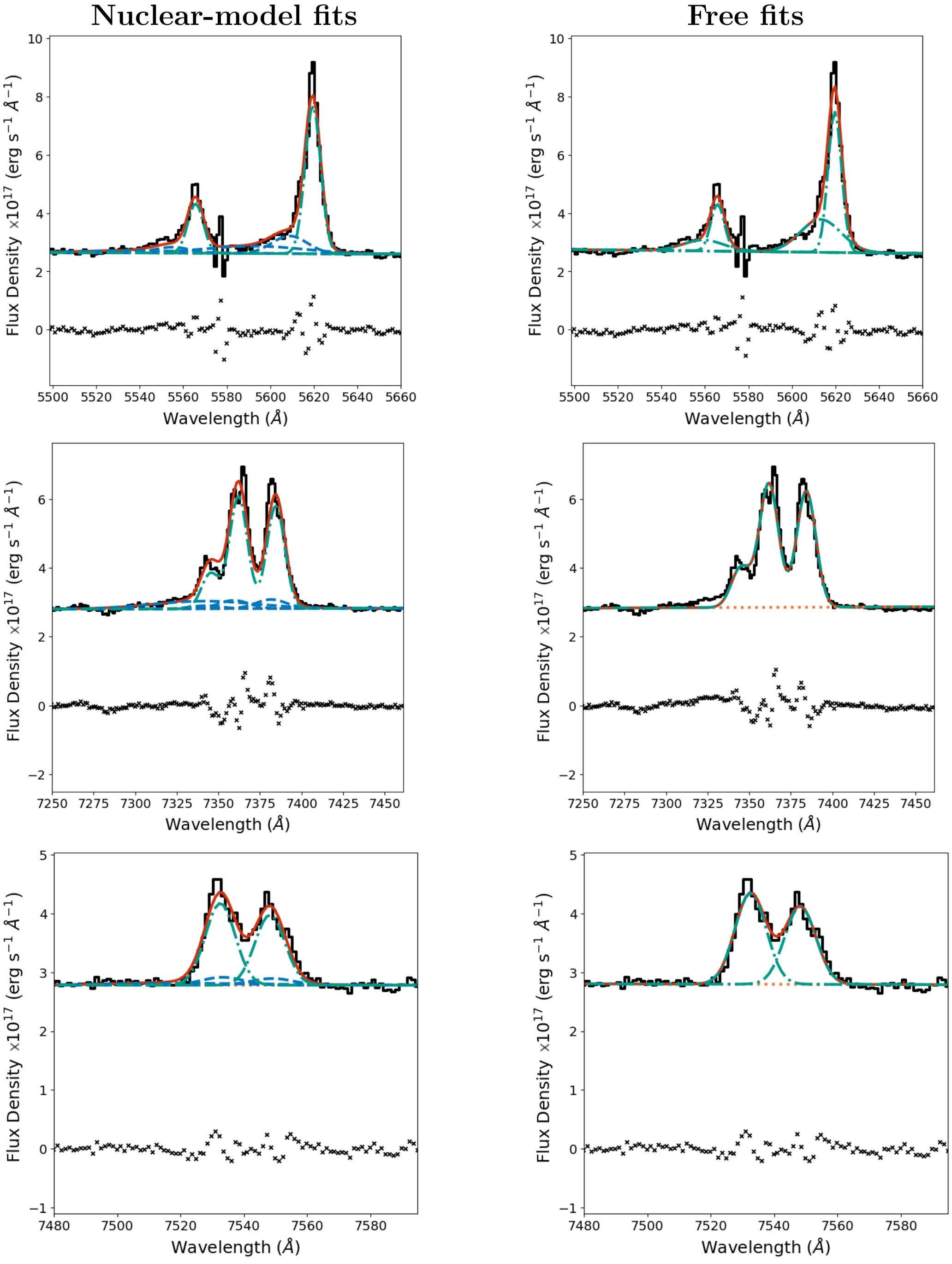


Figure 5.8: Continuum-subtracted Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 + [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 image (left: linear scale; right: logarithmic scale) of F13451+1232 with the locations and sizes of the selected apertures shown in blue. The aperture numbers are labelled at the top right of each, and the position of the primary nucleus is marked with a black cross.

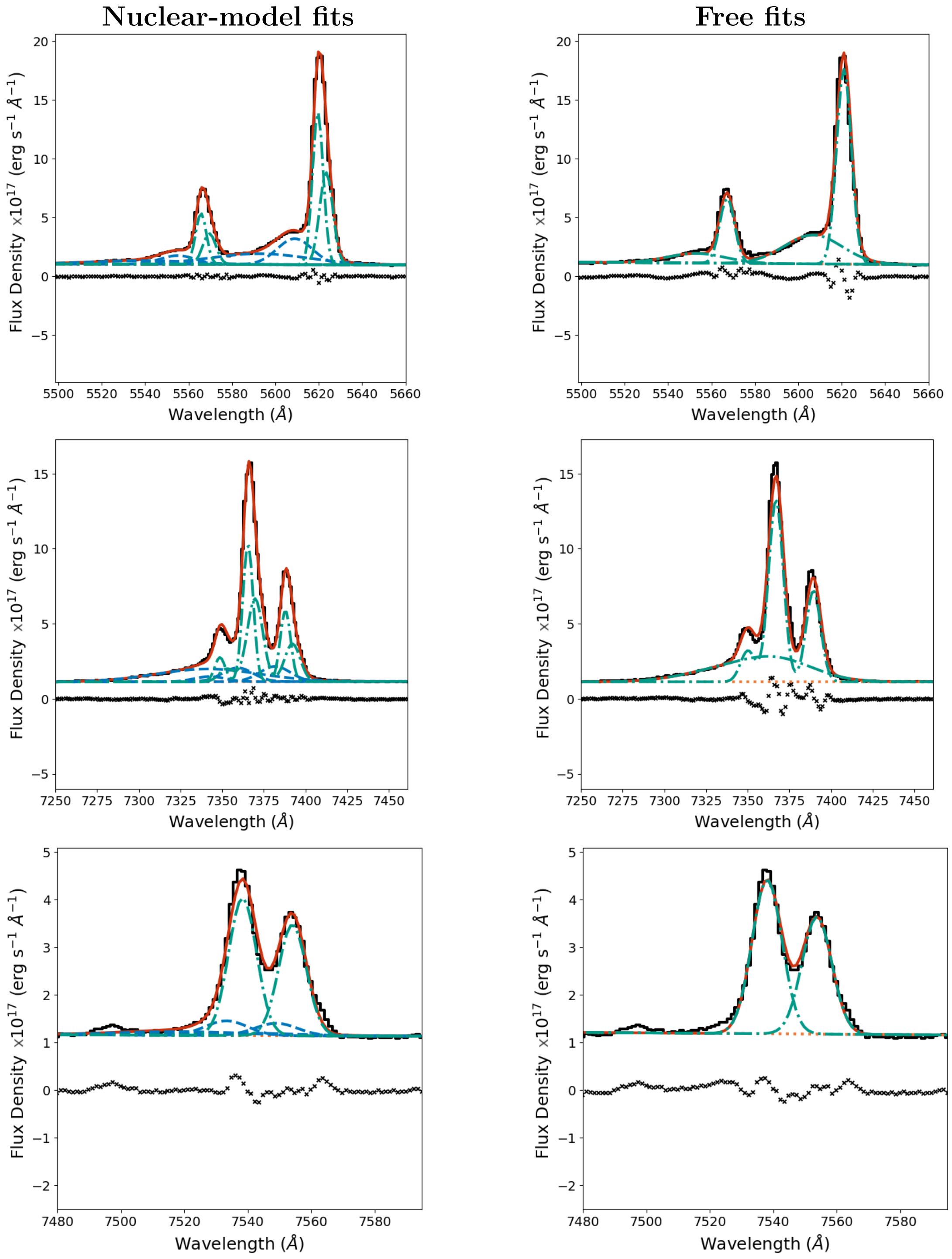
model was defined using a similar method to that of [OIII]: N_g Gaussian components were used for each line; constraints from atomic physics (Osterbrock & Ferland, 2006) were used to fix the wavelength separation of the lines, and the widths of the lines were set to be equal. However, in this case, the relative peak flux densities of the lines were required to be in the range $0.44 < \text{[SII]}(6717/6731) < 1.45$.

The emission-line fits produced by both methods (the nuclear model + N_g Gaussian components, and the free fits) for each aperture are shown in Figure 5.9. For each of the diagnostic lines ([OIII], [SII], Hα + [NII]), the Bayesian odds of the nuclear-model fits and free fits was used to determine if the nuclear model was required: the more-complex model (i.e. that consisting of the greater number of parameters) was selected if the ratio of its posterior probability to that of the less-complex model was greater than two. The results of this selection for each line blend in each aperture are given in Table 5.2. In the case where the nuclear model was preferred, only the additional (non-nuclear-component) Gaussian components were used to derive gas kinematics and velocities, while in the free-fitting case, all Gaussian components were used.

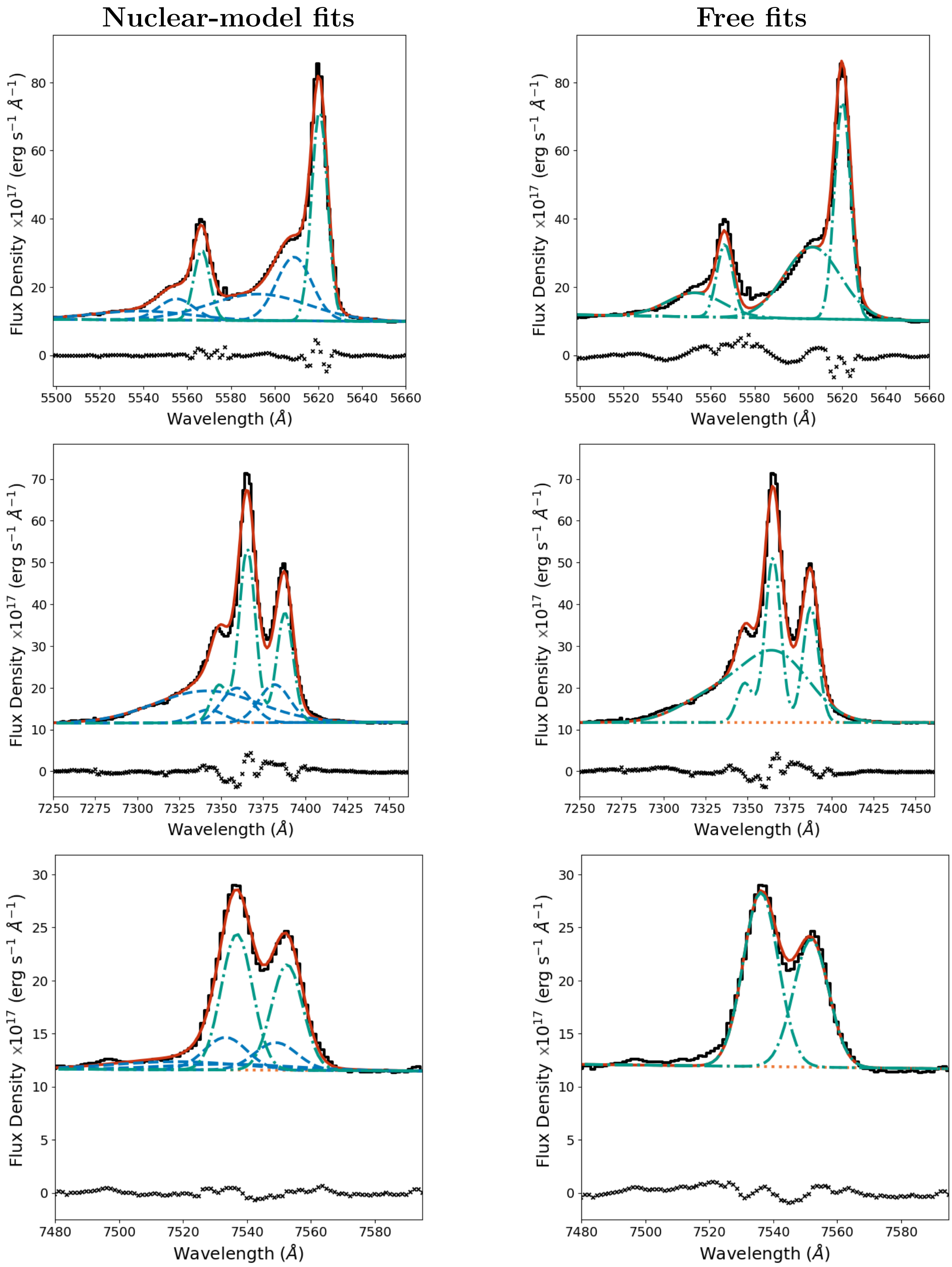
Figure 5.9: Fits to the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda 4959, 5007$ doublet (top rows), Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584 blend (middle rows), and [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 doublet (bottom rows) in the apertures using the nuclear model + $N_{\rm g}$ Gaussian components (left column) and free-fitting (right column) approaches. The spectrum extracted from the aperture is shown as a black solid line, the overall fit in each case is shown as a solid red line, the first-order polynomial fit (accounting for the continuum) is shown as a dotted orange line, the components from the nuclear model (left panels only) are shown as a dashed blue line, and the additional Gaussian components (left panels) / free-fit components (right panels) are shown as green dash-dotted lines.



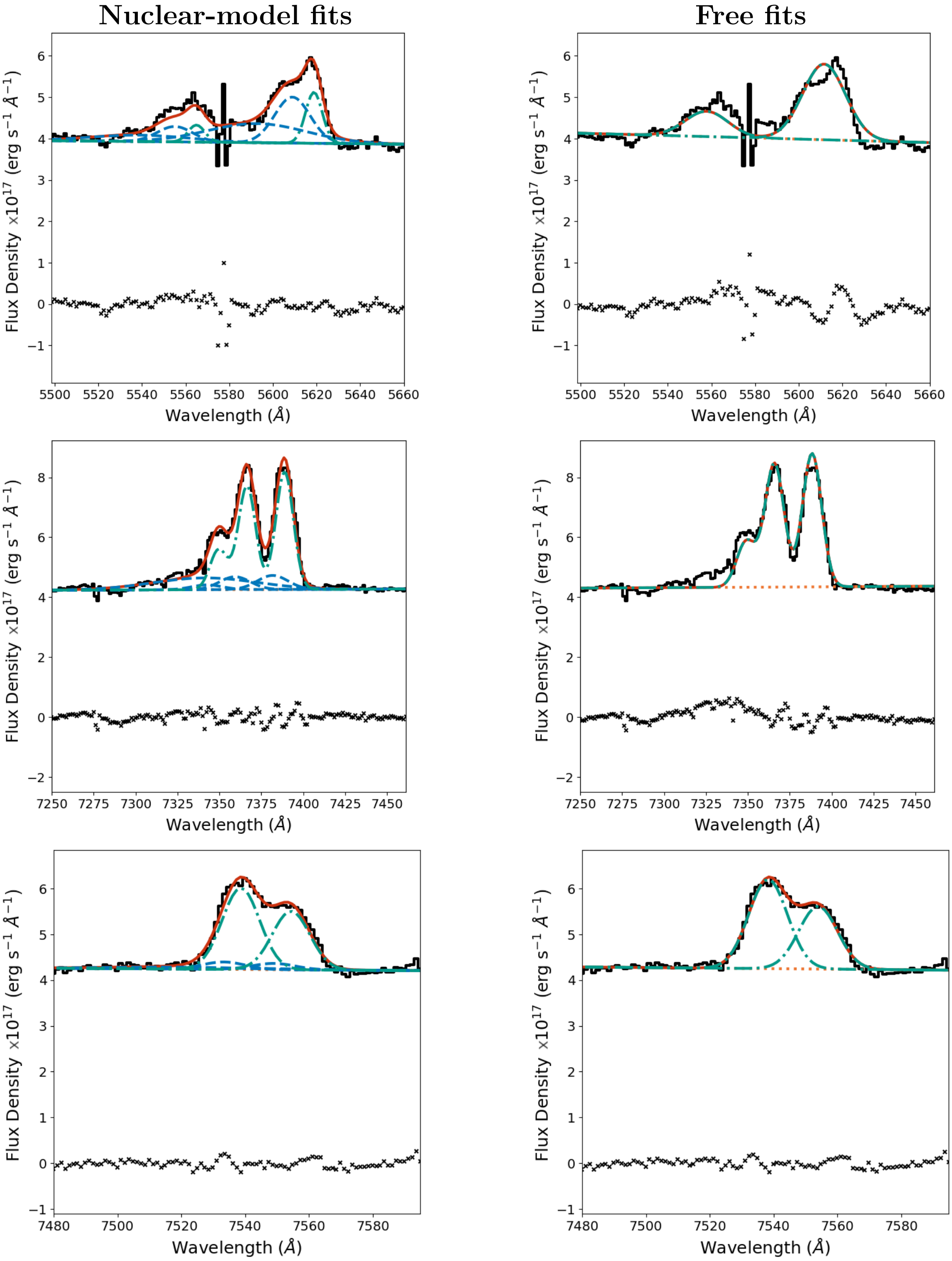
(a) The line fits for the spectrum extracted from Aperture 1. The feature at ~5580 Å is instrumental, and did not have a significant impact on the resulting fits.



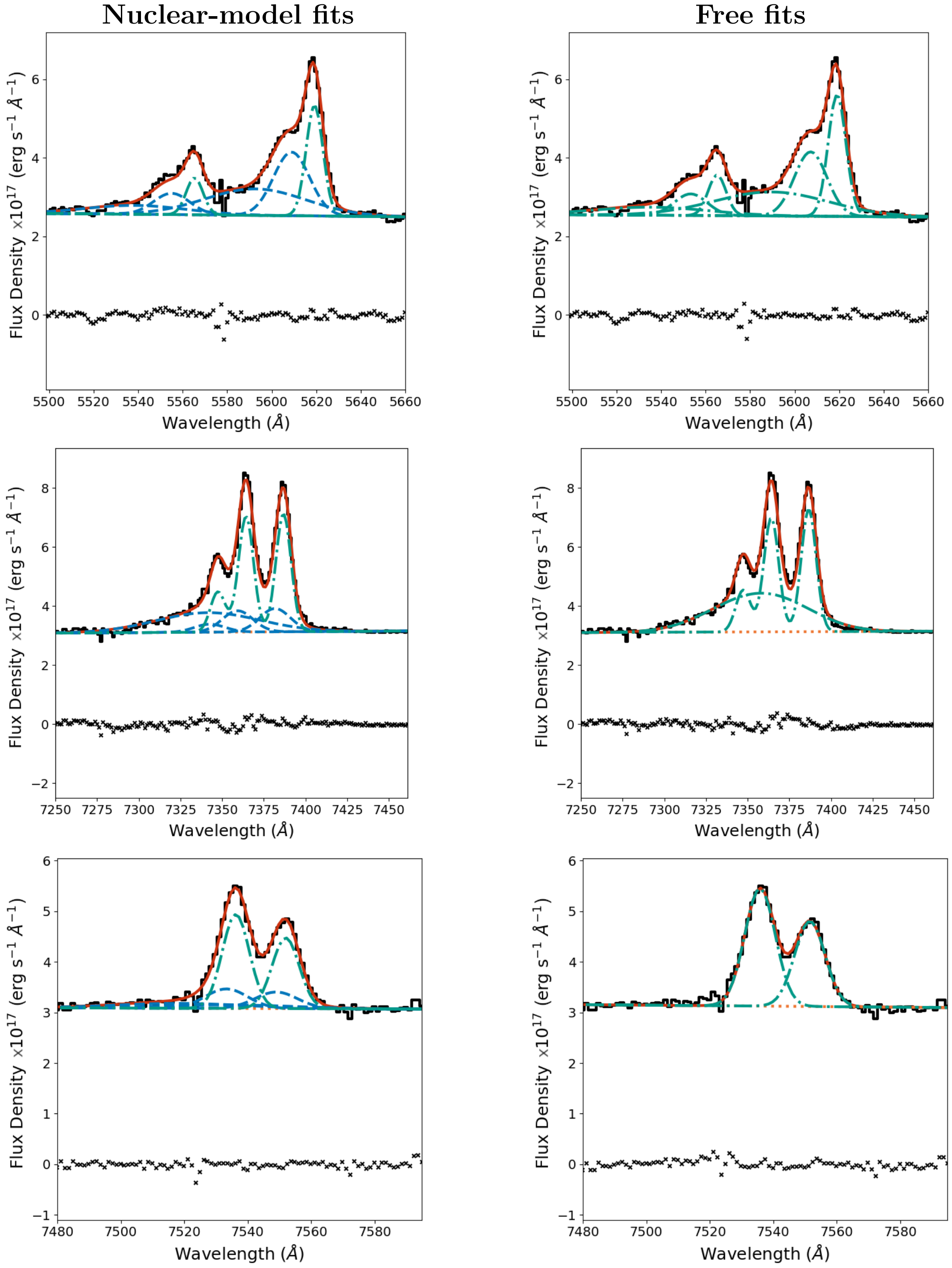
(b) The line fits for the spectrum extracted from Aperture 2.



(c) The line fits for the spectrum extracted from Aperture 3.



(d) The line fits for the spectrum extracted from Aperture 4.



(e) The line fits for the spectrum extracted from Aperture 5.

Kinematics, physical conditions, and energetics of the extended emission

In order to place upper limits on the energetics of any real, spatially-extended warm-ionised outflows, the masses, mass outflow rates, and kinetic powers of the warm-ionised gas in each aperture were calculated under the assumption that it is outflowing. As discussed and demonstrated in Chapters 1, 2, and 3, a major source of uncertainty in deriving warm-ionised outflow kinetic powers is the electron density; proper measurement requires robust diagnostics that are sensitive to a range of values and insensitive to emission-line blending effects, such as the transauroral-line technique (Holt et al., 2011). Since the required transauroral lines of [SII] and [OII] are not contained in the spectral coverage of MUSE, here the electron density for each aperture was determined using the traditional [SII](6717/6731) ratio with strict measurement criteria, as was previously done for VLT/Xshooter spectra of the Sey 2 galaxy IC 5063 in Section 2.3.1: if a measured ratio was not 3σ away from the theoretical lower or upper ratio limit ($0.30 <$ [SII](6717/6731) < 1.45), then a 3σ limit was taken in the opposite direction (to give an upper or lower limit). In this way, it was ensured that the measured densities were accurate, and not subject to effects resulting from the ratio saturating at high or low values. The measured [SII] ratios (or upper/lower limits) were then used to determine electron densities using the PyNeb Python module. Due to the necessary lines (namely [OIII]λ4363) not being well detected in the apertures, it was not possible to measure electron temperatures for the extended gas. Therefore, a temperature of $T_e = 10,000$ K (typical for the warm ionised phase: Chapters 2 and 3) was assumed in the electron density calculations.

Next, the flux of the Hα line was determined by measuring the total flux of all Gaussian components that corresponded to the Hα line in the fitted blends (i.e. not the nuclear-model components). Note that the Hβ line itself was not measured due to its significantly lower flux compared to Hα, resulting in it not being well detected in the majority of the apertures. To estimate the Hβ flux — required to estimate gas masses — the emissivity ratio $j_{\mathrm{H}\alpha}/j_{\mathrm{H}\beta} = 2.863$ at $T_e = 10,000$ K and $n_e = 10^2$ cm^{-3} (Osterbrock & Ferland, 2006) was used. Warm-ionised gas masses for each aperture were then calculated using the derived Hβ luminosities with Equation 1.3, taking $\alpha^{\mathrm{eff}}_{\mathrm{H}\beta} = 3.02 \times 10^{-14}$ cm^{-3} s^{-1} (for $T_e = 10,000$ K and $n_e = 10^2$ cm^{-3}) and the derived electron density for the aperture.

The gas kinematics in each aperture were determined using the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959, 5007 doublet in two ways, following the methodology outlined in Section 2.3.1 (see also Rose et al. 2018). Flux-weighted velocity shifts (v_{w}) and FWHMs (FWHM$_{\mathrm{w}}$) were determined using Equations 2.1 and 2.2, respectively; the flux-weighted FWHMs were corrected for instrumental broadening by subtracting the instrumental width of MUSE from the width of each constituent Gaussian component in quadrature. 10th and 90th percentile velocity shifts (v_{10} and v_{90}: the velocity containing 10 and 90 per cent of the total emission-line-component flux, respectively) were also determined and used to produce the non-parametric W_{80} velocity width for each aperture. The resulting kinematics are given in Tables 5.2 and 5.3. The percentile velocity shifts were subsequently used with Equation 1.4 to produce mass outflow rates, assuming $A = 1$ (see Section 1.2.1) and taking the outflow radius (ΔR) to be the radial extent of the given aperture in the direction from the nucleus. Finally, kinetic powers were determined using Equation 1.5 with the estimated mass flow rates and the percentile velocities (and assuming no velocity width; i.e. $\sigma = 0$ km s^{-1}) — percentile velocities were used because any potential outflowing gas in the apertures would not be spatially-resolved (see discussion in Section 1.2.2), and in this way, any real outflow kinematics will not be underestimates. Coupling efficiencies for each aperture were estimated by comparing the measured kinetic powers to the AGN bolometric luminosity of F13451+1232 ($L_{\rm bol} = 4.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: Rose et al. 2018). The resulting gas properties for each aperture are presented in Tables 5.2 and 5.3.

For the beam-smearing-corrected case (in which the nuclear model was used in the fits to the extended emission; Table 5.2), the kinematics are modest ($50 < v_w < 180$ km s^{-1}; $370 < v_p < 440$ km s^{-1}; $300 < \mathrm{FWHM}_w < 470$ km s^{-1}; $400 < W_{80} < 470$ km s^{-1}). Similarly, the mass outflow rates and kinetic powers — despite being lower limits for apertures 2 and 4 — are also low ($0.14 < \dot{M}_{\rm out} < 1.50$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}; $1.21 \times 10^{-4} < \dot{E}_{\rm kin} < 1.88 \times 10^{-3}$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$). For all apertures, the inclusion of the nuclear model in the fits to the extended emission produced statistically-better fits to the [OIII] emission lines, further demonstrating that beam-smeared nuclear-outflow emission contributes significant flux up to radial distances of $r \sim 4$ arcseconds ($r \sim 9$ kpc; i.e. the maximum radial distance of the apertures from the primary nucleus). Furthermore, when beam smearing is not accounted for — demonstrated here by the free-fitting case (Table 5.3) — the derived mass outflow rates are significantly higher (up to $\dot{M}_{\rm out} = 7.4 \pm 4.8$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}). However, even in this case, the mass outflow rates are much lower than that of the total nuclear outflow in F13451+1232 ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} \sim 230$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}: Chapter 4), and the maximum measured kinetic power (Aperture 3: $\dot{E}_{\rm kin} = 0.06 \pm 0.02$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$) is far below the range of values required by models of galaxy evolution (> 0.15 per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$: e.g. Springel et al. 2005; Hopkins & Elvis 2010; Schaye et al. 2015; Dubois et al. 2016).

Finally, I highlight that the mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies presented here are likely to represent upper limits for any real, spatially-extended outflows, as it is assumed (but not established) that the additional non-nuclear components represent outflowing gas, although their kinematics are not consistent with this scenario.

Aperture	Nuclear model required	v_w (km s^{-1})	FWHM$_w$ (km s^{-1})	v_p (km s^{-1})	W_{80} (km s^{-1})	EW$_{\mathrm{H}\alpha}$ (Å)
1	[OIII] — —	88 ± 2	427 ± 16	370 ± 10	401 ± 10	-19.5 ± 1.2
2	[OIII] Hα —	179 ± 96	311 ± 191	437 ± 174	401 ± 175	-113.1 ± 28.8
3	[OIII] — [SII]	141 ± 1	432 ± 5	437 ± 4	467 ± 4	-40.8 ± 3.7
4	[OIII] — —	51 ± 4	460 ± 49	370 ± 17	467 ± 27	-14.4 ± 1.2
5	[OIII] Hα —	73 ± 3	467 ± 15	370 ± 14	467 ± 15	-11.1 ± 0.9

Aperture	$\log_{10}(n_e[\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])$	M ($\times10^6$ M$_\odot$)	$\dot{M}$ (M$_\odot$ yr^{-1})	$\dot{E}_{\mathrm{kin}}$ ($\times10^{40}$ erg s^{-1})	ϵ_f ($\times10^{-4}$ per cent)
1	$2.53^{+0.34}_{-0.64}$	1.57 ± 0.42	0.14 ± 0.04	0.58 ± 0.16	1.21 ± 0.33
2	< 2.53	> 4.10	> 0.94	> 4.07	> 8.48
3	$2.24^{+0.36}_{-0.62}$	29.5 ± 8.3	1.50 ± 0.42	9.04 ± 0.91	18.8 ± 3.5
4	< 2.41	> 2.34	> 0.20	> 0.87	> 1.81
5	< 2.42	> 1.74	> 0.15	> 0.65	> 1.35

Table 5.2: Beam-smearing-corrected [OIII] kinematics (flux weighted velocity shift, intrinsic flux-weighted FWHM, percentile velocity, and non-parametric velocity width W_{80}), electron densities, masses, flow rates, kinetic powers, and coupling efficiencies for the apertures extracted from the MUSE-DEEP datacube (Figure 5.8). The 'Nuclear model required' column indicates if including the nuclear models (e.g. Figure 5.2) in the modelling of the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda4959, 5007$, Hα + [NII], and [SII]$\lambda\lambda6717, 6731$ line profiles produced better fits — if so, only the additional (non-nuclear-model) Gaussian components were used to derive gas properties. Equivalent widths (EW) for the Hα line are also given.

Aperture	v_w (km s^{-1})	FWHM$_w$ (km s^{-1})	v_p (km s^{-1})	W_{80} (km s^{-1})
1	-48 ± 9	695 ± 158	-498 ± 93	868 ± 116
2	-109 ± 3	868 ± 31	-898 ± 19	1335 ± 21
3	-266 ± 4	1057 ± 21	-1099 ± 13	1469 ± 14
4	-331 ± 10	1226 ± 54	-898 ± 26	1268 ± 28
5	-740 ± 119	1683 ± 437	-2300 ± 249	2600 ± 250

Aperture	$\log_{10}(n_e[\mathrm{cm}^{-3}])$	M ($\times 10^6$ M$_\odot$)	$\dot{M}$ (M$_\odot$ yr^{-1})	$\dot{E}_{\mathrm{kin}}$ ($\times 10^{40}$ erg s^{-1})	ϵ_f ($\times 10^{-4}$ per cent)
1	$2.53^{+0.34}_{-0.64}$	1.57 ± 0.42	0.18 ± 0.06	1.42 ± 0.54	2.97 ± 1.13
2	< 2.53	> 4.28	> 2.99	> 76.1	> 159
3	$1.95^{0.36}_{0.57}$	57.4 ± 32.6	7.36 ± 4.79	280 ± 98	584 ± 240
4	< 2.41	> 2.34	> 0.49	> 12.5	> 26.0
5	< 2.42	> 3.18	> 1.71	> 285	> 593

Table 5.3: Non-beam-smearing-corrected [OIII] kinematics (flux weighted velocity shift, intrinsic flux-weighted FWHM, percentile velocity, and non-parametric velocity width W_{80}), electron densities, and energetics (mass, flow rate, kinetic power, and coupling efficiencies) for the apertures extracted from the MUSE-DEEP datacube (Figure 5.8). In this case, the nuclear models for [OIII]$\lambda\lambda 4959, 5007$, H$\alpha$ + [NII], and [SII]$\lambda\lambda 6717, 6731$ were not included in the fits to those lines.

The potential impact of underlying stellar continua

As the underlying stellar continuum in each aperture was not modelled and subtracted before emission-line fitting (i.e. as was done for IC 5063: Section 2.2.5), I estimated the potential effect that this might have had on the resulting outflow properties by measuring the equivalent width (EW) of the Gaussian components of the Hα line fits, which are given for each aperture in Table 5.2. As outlined in Section 3.2.4, the maximum expected EW for Balmer lines (in absorption) from modelling by González Delgado et al. (1999) is $\mathrm{EW_H} \sim 10$ Å. Therefore, in this case, the impact on derived Hα luminosity, and hence outflow mass, would be approximately a factor of two at most (for Aperture 5, where the lowest EWs are measured), although I note that this is an upper limit. Importantly, when the Hα luminosity for each aperture is corrected for an assumed stellar-absorption feature of $\mathrm{EW_H} = 10$ Å, the beam-smearing-corrected kinetic powers remain low ($\epsilon_\mathrm{f} < 2.5 \times 10^{-3}$ per cent of L_bol). Therefore, the lack of stellar-continuum modelling and correction does not affect the interpretations and conclusions made in this chapter.

5.4 Discussion

By modelling the emission from compact outflows in the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 and including this model in the fits to spatially-extended [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959, 5007, Hα + [NII]$\lambda\lambda$6548,6584, and [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 emission, it is found that the warm-ionised gas has modest kinematics ($v < 300$ km s^{-1}; FWHM < 500 km s^{-1}: Figure 5.6; Table 5.2) on radial scales of $r > 2.5$ arcseconds (5.5 kpc), consistent with gravitational gas motions that are expected in a merger and the stellar velocities previously measured on these scales for this object by Perna et al. (2021). Therefore, this careful analysis of deep MUSE observations has found no evidence for galaxy-wide ($r > 5$ kpc) warm-ionised outflows in F13451+1232. Furthermore, I have directly demonstrated that failure to account for the beam-smearing effects of atmospheric seeing can lead to significant overestimations of outflow radii, kinematics, mass outflow rates, and kinetic powers. In this section, I discuss the implication of the results presented here for models of galaxy evolution, compare them to the findings of previous observational studies, and highlight the importance of accounting for beam smearing when deriving the properties of AGN-driven outflows.

5.4.1 Comparison to models of galaxy evolution

(Semi-)analytic (e.g. Silk & Rees 1998; Fabian 1999; King 2003; Zubovas & King 2014) and hydrodynamical (e.g. Di Matteo et al. 2005; Curtis & Sijacki 2016; Barai et al. 2018; Costa et al. 2018, 2022; Zubovas & Maskeliūnas 2023) models of galaxy evolution that include AGN-driven outflows as a feedback mechanism require them to extend to galaxy-wide scales and heat, entrain, and eject material needed for star formation. Despite being a physical representation of the situation considered in such models — and therefore an ideal laboratory to verify this prediction — here, no evidence of galaxy-wide outflows is seen in the warm ionised gas phase in the ULIRG F13451+1232. If taken as an indication that there are no galaxy-wide outflows at all in this object, then the results presented in this work contradict the predictions of the models, potentially indicating that the outflows will not have a significant, direct effect on the evolution of the system.

Conversely, it is *possible* that galaxy-wide outflows are present in F13451+1232, but the deep MUSE observations were not sensitive to them. For example, there may be a galaxy-wide warm-ionised component that has a surface brightness below the limit of the observations. However, I note that, in this case, the fluxes measured here could be considered upper limits; given these fluxes and the outflow masses and kinetic powers that are derived (Table 5.2), unphysically low electron densities for the warm-ionised gas ($n_e < 10^{-4}$ cm^{-3}) would be required to produce kinetic powers that are consistent with model predictions ($\dot{E}_{\rm kin} > 0.5$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$). Alternatively, some hydrodynamical models (e.g. Costa et al. 2015, 2018; Curtis & Sijacki 2016; Barai et al. 2018) predict galaxy-wide outflows in a tenuous ($n \ll 10^1$ cm^{-3}), highly-ionised hot phase ($T > 10^6$ cm^{-3}), which MUSE observations are not sensitive to[7]. A direct test of this scenario would require X-ray spectroscopy of low-surface-brightness emission, which could be enabled by future facilities such as LYNX.

Another consideration is that the models that predict galaxy-wide outflows commonly invoke radiatively-driven winds as the outflow acceleration mechanism. As argued in Chapter 4, the coincidence of the small-scale radio structure and compact outflows indicates that the nuclear outflows in the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 are jet-driven, although acceleration from radiatively-driven winds cannot be ruled out. While this may explain why galaxy-wide outflows are not seen in this object (i.e. they are not radiatively driven), I note that simulations that invoke this mechanism to drive galaxy-wide outflows require a range of AGN luminosities ($44 < \log_{10}(L_{\rm bol}$ [erg s^{-1}] < 47) that includes the luminosity of F13451+1232 ($L_{\rm bol} = 4.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: Rose et al. 2018). Considering this, it is not clear why the situation in this object would drastically differ from the situation considered in the models.

5.4.2 Comparison to previous observational studies

The scenario for the outflows in F13451+1232

High-spatial resolution HST/ACS [OIII] imaging by Tadhunter et al. (2018) revealed compact ($r_{\rm [OIII]} \sim 69$ pc) warm-ionised emission near the primary nucleus of F13451+1232, consistent with outflow radii determined for the neutral atomic ($r_{\rm [HI]} < 100$ pc: Morganti et al. 2013a) and cold molecular ($r_{\mathrm{CO(1-0)}} < 120$ pc: Chapter 4) phases. The analysis of MUSE-DEEP data presented here thus provides evidence that, at least in these phases, the AGN-driven outflows in F13451+1232 are limited to a compact region around the primary nucleus, rather than being galaxy-wide. Deep IFU observations of other ULIRGs hosting AGN (such as those in the QUADROS sample: Rose et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2018; Spence et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2019) will be important for establishing if the outflow extents determined for F13451+1232 are representative of the wider population of this important subclass of active galaxy.

---

[7] The density of the theoretical galaxy-wide, tenuous, highly-ionised gas discussed here is too low to produce emission lines in optical spectra (such as those arising from Ne V and Fe X).

Regarding the genuine extended emission seen in the beam-smearing-corrected velocity maps (right panels of Figures 5.6 and 5.7), the low-velocity-width ($W_{80} < 500$ km s^{-1}) structure (with low velocity shifts: $v_w < 210$ km s^{-1}) that is seen to the NW of the primary nucleus is likely associated with the arc-like structure seen in high-spatial-resolution HST [OIII] imaging by Tadhunter et al. (2018). I note that it is possible that other non-outflowing, [OIII]-emitting structures may be present on galaxy-wide scales for which the MUSE-DEEP data did not have a sufficient signal to detect in individual spaxels: for example, the intermediate-velocity-width structures seen in CO(1–0) emission (Chapter 4, Figure 4.1).

AGN-driven outflow spatial extents measured by other methods

Long-slit spectroscopy studies of active galaxies of various types, including quasars and Seyferts (Das et al. 2006; Villar-Martín et al. 2016; Chapters 2 & 3), ULIRGs (Spence et al., 2016; Rose et al., 2018; Spence et al., 2018; Tadhunter et al., 2019), and CSS/GPS/Flat Spectrum (FS) radio AGN (Santoro et al., 2020), have found similar outflow spatial extents for the warm ionised outflow phase, reaching maximum radial distances of ∼6 kpc from the AGN (although the majority find radial distances that are much smaller than this). Similarly, high-spatial-resolution HST [OIII]-imaging (e.g. Fischer et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2018) and spectroscopic (e.g. Chapter 3; Das et al. 2005, 2006; Tadhunter et al. 2019) studies have also found outflows to only extend up to these radial distances, as has a technique that makes use of IR SED fitting of dust emission (Baron & Netzer, 2019a). Considering that no high-velocity ($W_{80} > 500$ km s^{-1}) [OIII] kinematics are determined on galaxy-wide scales from the MUSE-DEEP observations presented here, the results of this chapter thus provide further support for warm-ionised, AGN-driven outflows being limited to the central regions of active galaxies.

5.4.3 The impact of beam-smearing on outflow spatial extents and kinematics

In contrast to the results of this work and other studies that use a range of techniques to measure outflow extents, some previous ground-based IFU studies of active galaxies of various types have claimed evidence for galaxy-wide outflows in the warm ionised phase (Liu et al., 2013, 2014; Harrison et al., 2014; McElroy et al., 2015), with radial extents of $r > 10$ kpc being reported in some cases. I highlight that, in the velocity width (e.g. W_{70}, W_{80}) maps presented in those studies, the extended ($r > 1$ arcsecond; $r > 5$ kpc) regions of high velocity width (> 500 km s^{-1}) often appear to be circular, with little variation in the measured velocity width (as noted by Husemann et al. 2016 for the results of Liu et al. 2013, 2014). These regions — which have previously been considered to represent genuine galaxy-wide outflow emission — bear striking resemblance to the W_{80} map produced in this work for the case in which beam smearing is not accounted for (left panel of Figure 5.6). Considering that this region is not present when beam smearing is accounted for (by including the nuclear outflow model in the [OIII] line fits: right panel of Figure 5.6), I argue that in many (if not all) cases, the galaxy-wide high-velocity kinematics claimed in those studies were, in reality, due to atmospheric seeing effects. In this context, it is important to note that, in the case presented here, the seeing smears compact outflow emission over an angular radius ($r \sim 2.5$ arcseconds) that is six times that of the HWHM of the seeing disk ($\mathrm{HWHM}_\star = 0.40 \pm 0.10$ arcseconds: Section 5.2.3). Therefore, I argue that an outflow cannot be claimed to be genuinely spatially-resolved based solely on its measured radius being greater than the HWHM of the seeing disk, as was done in past studies. Moreover, I highlight that the impact of seeing on derived outflow radii will be greater at larger redshifts since the spatial scale (kpc/arcsecond) increases with redshift.

Hainline et al. (2014) and Husemann et al. (2016) investigated the impact of atmospheric seeing on the measured spatial extents of extended narrow line regions (ENLRs) of QSOs in the redshift range $0.4 < z < 0.7$ based on long-slit and IFU observations, respectively. Those studies showed that failure to account for beam smearing can lead to overpredictions of ENLR sizes by up to a factor of two. In addition, in reanalysing the dataset presented by Liu et al. (2014) to account for beam smearing, Husemann et al. (2016) showed that the high [OIII] velocity widths ($W_{80} > 1000$ km s^{-1}) claimed in the ENLRs ($r > 1$ kpc) were actually due to the beam smearing of compact NLR outflows. In agreement with this, this chapter directly shows (for outflows in an object at lower redshift) that when beam smearing is accounted for, extended ($r > 1$ kpc) high-velocity emission is not detected, and that only moderate velocity widths ($W_{80} < 500$ km s^{-1}) and low velocity shifts ($v_w < 210$ km s^{-1}) are measured on these scales (Figures 5.6 and 5.7). Furthermore, this work reinforces this crucial point by quantifying the radial extent of this effect to be $r \sim 2.5$ arcseconds, and showing that, had beam smearing not been considered, outflow radii may have been overestimated by $r \sim 5.5$ kpc — more than an order of magnitude larger than the true outflow extent ($r \sim 100$ pc).

It is interesting that, when accounting for beam smearing using a similar technique to that used in this work, Speranza et al. (2024) measured warm-ionised outflow radial extents up to $r \sim 12.6$ kpc using ground-based IFU observations of a sample of nearby QSO2s that have similar bolometric luminosities to F13451+1232. It is possible that the outflows detected in that study are genuinely spatially-extended on galaxy scales, however, it is also possible that the measured extents were overestimated by the PSF-subtraction method used. In the analysis presented here, the components of the nuclear model are broad (FWHM > 500 km s^{-1}: Table 5.1), while the nuclear model used by Speranza et al. (2024) included narrow components ($150 <$ FWHM < 460 km s^{-1}), which were likely produced by non-outflowing nuclear gas. When included in the fits to the spatially-extended emission line profiles, these narrow components may have reduced the total flux that the nuclear model accounted for in a given spaxel, therefore underestimating the contribution of beam-smeared emission. Therefore, in this scenario, the outflow extents measured would be overestimates. This explanation for the disagreement between the results of this chapter and those of Speranza et al. (2024) is supported by the outflow emission in that study not extending beyond an angular radius of $r = 2.5$ arcseconds (see Figure 3 of Speranza et al. 2024), consistent with what is seen in the case where beam smearing is not corrected for in this work (left panels of Figures 5.6 and 5.7).

Finally, using spectroastrometry (a technique in which the centroid position of an emission line is determined in each velocity channel: Bailey 1998; Santoro et al. 2020) with SINFONI infrared IFU observations, Carniani et al. (2015) determined high [OIII] line widths (> 500 km s^{-1}) up to maximum radial distances of $r < 2$ kpc in quasars at high redshift ($z \sim 2.4$). Similar warm-ionised outflow radii were measured with spectroastrometry of long-slit spectra ($r < 2$ kpc) for a sample of radio AGN (Santoro et al. 2018, 2020; $0.06 < z < 0.64$), and a sample of local quasars and Sey 2 galaxies (Villar-Martín et al. 2016; $0.3 < z < 0.6$). Since spectroastrometry can provide estimates of outflow radii that are insensitive to beam-smearing effects, this lends further support to the argument that, when beam-smearing effects are accounted for, the measured spatial extents of the warm ionised phase are limited to the inner regions of host galaxies. However, I note that spectroastrometry is biased towards the high-surface-brightness nuclear components.

5.4.4 The impact of beam-smearing on mass outflow rates and kinetic powers

When atmospheric seeing is accounted for in the analysis of the MUSE-DEEP data of F13451+1232, it is found that the resulting spatially-extended kinematics are modest

($v_{\rm w} < 200$ km s^{-1}; W$_{80} < 500$ km s^{-1}: Figure 5.6; Table 5.2) — consistent with merger-like gravitational motions that would be expected for a ULIRG (see Perna et al. 2021). Even if this emission was considered to represent outflowing gas, the mass outflow rates (a few solar masses per year at maximum) are much lower than those of the compact outflows in the nucleus of F13451+1232 ($\dot{M}_{\rm out,WI} = 11.3$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}: Rose et al. 2018; $\dot{M}_{\rm out,HI} \sim 6$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}: Morganti et al. 2013a; Chapter 4; $\dot{M}_{\rm out,CO(1-0)} \sim 230$ M$_\odot$ yr^{-1}: Chapter 4), and the kinetic powers ($\dot{E}_{\rm kin} < 1 \times 10^{-3}$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$) are far below both the requirements of models of galaxy evolution ($0.5 < \dot{E}_{\rm kin} < 15$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$: e.g. Di Matteo et al. 2005; Hopkins & Elvis 2010; Schaye et al. 2015; Dubois et al. 2016) and the total estimated kinetic power of the compact outflow (∼2 per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$: Chapter 4).

By considering two cases — one in which beam smearing is accounted for (Table 5.2) and one in which it is not (Table 5.3) — this work shows that the beam smearing of nuclear outflow emission can artificially increase the derived flow rates of the extended emission by up to an order of magnitude, and kinetic powers by one-to-two orders of magnitude. This is in close agreement with the findings of Husemann et al. (2016), who found that accounting for beam smearing of the compact emission decreased the derived energetics by these factors. Therefore, this chapter directly demonstrates that accounting for the effect of beam smearing on IFU studies of AGN-driven outflows is crucial: not only can atmospheric seeing artificially spread emission across the FOV (which may be interpreted as powerful, galaxy-wide outflows), but in the case of genuinely-extended emission, can artificially increase the derived energetics significantly.

Further investigation of this effect would be applying the beam-smearing-correction technique used in this work to the re-analysis of the ground-based IFU observations that were used by previous studies that claim the presence of galaxy-wide outflows. Moreover, a complementary approach would be measuring outflow properties for the same AGN samples using techniques that are insensitive to (or completely unaffected by) the beam-smearing effects of atmospheric seeing, such as ground-based spectroastrometry or high-resolution space-based IFU observations.

5.5 Chapter conclusions

By accounting for the beam smearing of compact-outflow emission in the analysis of deep MUSE observations of the ULIRG F13451+1232, the following has been found.

- There is no evidence for spatially-extended, galaxy-wide ($r > 5$ kpc) warm-ionised outflows in the ULIRG F13451+1232, despite it representing the situation considered by models of galaxy evolution that require galaxy-wide outflows. Considering that outflows have previously been detected and characterised on compact scales

($r < 100$ pc) in this object, I take this as confirmation that the outflows are limited to the central regions of the galaxy.

- Even under the assumption that the spatially-extended, kinematically-modest gas is outflowing, the mass outflow rates and kinetic powers are far below both those of the nuclear outflows and the requirements of theoretical models. This indicates that, even if this gas is truly outflowing, it is likely to have little effect on the evolution of the system.
- Failure to account for atmospheric seeing in ground-based IFU studies of AGN-driven outflows can lead to beam-smeared compact emission being interpreted as galaxy-wide outflows. Crucially, the contribution from such a beam-smeared component is significant far beyond the FWHM of the seeing disk (up to radial distances of at least 2.5 arcseconds), and therefore considering emission detected on radial scales that are larger than the FWHM (or HWHM) of the seeing disk as spatially-resolved is not a robust interpretation.
- When the beam-smearing effect of atmospheric seeing is accounted for, the derived kinematics of any real outflows are significantly less, mass outflow rates decrease by up to an order of magnitude, and outflow kinetic powers decrease by up to two orders of magnitude.

Overall, the analysis and results of this chapter directly challenge a key prediction of theoretical models of galaxy evolution, and demonstrate that accounting for beam-smearing in ground-based IFU studies of AGN-driven outflows is essential.

Chapter acknowledgements

Based on observations collected at the European Southern Observatory under ESO programme 0103.B-0391 and data obtained from the ESO Science Archive Facility with DOI(s) under https://doi.eso.org/10.18727/archive/42. This research has made use of the NASA/IPAC Infrared Science Archive, which is funded by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and operated by the California Institute of Technology. I thank Stuart Littlefair for his helpful discussion in the development of the Bayesian emission-line-fitting routine used in this work.

Data availability

The data used in this chapter is available from the ESO Science Archive Facility (http://archive.eso.org/cms.html) with Run/Program ID 0103.B-0391 (PI: Arribas) and Archive ID ADP.2019-10-11T08:03:08.399.

Chapter 6

Conclusions and future work

“For broken, now the stayed
are last to toe the line.
To beyond the burning valleys where the eye,
to defy, will only see the sky.”

— Stygian Bough (Bell Witch & Aerial Ruin), *The Unbodied Air*

6.1 Thesis conclusions

Outflows of gas accelerated by active galactic nuclei are routinely invoked by theoretical models of galaxy evolution to explain empirical scaling relations between supermassive black hole and host galaxy properties (e.g. Silk & Rees 1998; King 2003; Di Matteo et al. 2005), as well as the observed properties of the local galaxy population (e.g. Schaye et al. 2015; Davé et al. 2019; Zinger et al. 2020). In these models, prominent AGN-driven outflows heat and expel gas, suppressing the star formation rates of the host galaxies.

Therefore, over the past 25 years, many observational studies have focused on comparing measured outflow properties to those required and predicted by the models (Figure 1.5; see Harrison et al. 2018). However, there are many uncertainties involved in deriving outflow properties from observations, and the validity of the comparisons to theoretical models is not clear. Principally, the true masses, mass outflow rates, kinetic powers, spatial extents, and acceleration mechanisms of AGN-driven outflows are highly uncertain — this has limited robust interpretations regarding the role of outflows in galaxy evolution.

In this thesis, I have presented a series of detailed, multi-wavelength observational studies of four nearby active galaxies that address these sources of uncertainty. By developing, verifying, and using precise outflow-diagnostic techniques, I have precisely quantified key outflow properties and investigated their true natures and impacts on host galaxies. The results of these studies — and their implications for the role of AGN in galaxy evolution — are summarised and discussed here in the context of the major outstanding questions presented in Chapter 1.

6.1.1 Which outflow phase(s) is dominant in terms of energetics, and how are the different phases physically linked?

AGN-driven outflows are routinely observed in different gas phases (Table 1.1, Section 1.2.1; see Cicone et al. 2018 for a review), including the coronal (e.g. Riffel et al. 2013b; Speranza et al. 2022; Villar Martín et al. 2023; Fonseca-Faria et al. 2023), warm ionised (e.g. Villar-Martín et al. 1999; Holt et al. 2003; Rodríguez Zaurín et al. 2013; Harrison et al. 2014; Rose et al. 2018; Tadhunter et al. 2019; Revalski et al. 2021), neutral atomic (e.g. Morganti et al. 1998; Oosterloo et al. 2000; Rupke et al. 2005b; Schulz et al. 2018; Su et al. 2023), warm molecular (e.g. Tadhunter et al. 2014; May & Steiner 2017), and cold molecular (e.g Alatalo et al. 2011; Cicone et al. 2014; Morganti et al. 2015; Oosterloo et al. 2017; Ramos Almeida et al. 2022; Audibert et al. 2023). Several outflow phases have been observed to be simultaneously present in a small number of objects (e.g. Morganti et al. 2005; Holt et al. 2011; Tadhunter et al. 2014; Riffel et al. 2015; Feruglio et al. 2015; Morganti et al. 2016; Finlez et al. 2018; Fluetsch et al. 2019), and in some cases, these phases have been observed to be co-spatial and co-kinematic

(Morganti et al., 2007, 2013a, 2015; Tadhunter et al., 2014; Oosterloo et al., 2017; Rose et al., 2018), indicating that they form part of the same outflow. However, due to the lack of objects for which there are robust outflow mass and kinetic power measurements of such multi-phase outflows, the relative importance of the different phases is unclear.

Using detailed, wide-wavelength-coverage, high-spatial-resolution optical/NIR observations of IC 5063 — a nearby Sey 2 galaxy that presents prominent, multi-phase, jet-driven outflows — I have precisely measured the mass outflow rates and kinetic powers of its warm ionised outflow phase for the first time (Chapter 2). Extensive previous multi-wavelength observations of the outflows in this object (Morganti et al., 2005; Oosterloo et al., 2017; Venturi et al., 2021) allowed the energetics of the warm-ionised gas to be placed into an important multi-phase context: by recalculating the masses, mass outflow rates, and kinetic powers of the other observed phases with a consistent methodology, I showed that the neutral atomic outflow phase is dominant in terms of mass (which is three times that of the warm ionised and cold molecular phases combined) and kinetic power (which is two orders of magnitude higher than those of the other phases).

Similarly, the ULIRG/QSO2/GPS source F13451+1232 has been the focus of previous studies covering all gas phases. While compact ($r < 100$ pc) outflows had been previously detected and characterised in the primary nucleus of F13451+1232 in multiple gas phases (Morganti et al., 2013a; Rose et al., 2018; Tadhunter et al., 2018; Villar Martín et al., 2023), there had not been a robust detection of molecular outflows on any spatial scale (see discussion in Villar Martín et al. 2023). To address this and provide a complete multi-phase understanding of this important object, in Chapter 4, I presented and analysed high-spatial resolution (0.113×0.091 arcsecond or 247×119 pc beam-size) ALMA CO(1–0) observations of the primary nucleus of F13451+1232, tracing the cold-molecular gas. High-velocity ($400 < v < 680$ km s^{-1}), compact ($r < 120$ pc) emission close to the location of the primary nucleus is seen in the ALMA observations, which is interpreted as the cold-molecular component of the nuclear outflow. The mass outflow rate ($\dot{M}_{\rm out} \sim 230$ M$_{\odot}$) is more than an order of magnitude larger than those of the other phases, and the kinetic power ($\dot{E}_{\rm kin} \sim 1.4$ per cent of the AGN bolometric luminosity; $L_{\rm bol} = 4.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}: Rose et al. 2018) is several times that of the other phases combined. Crucially, including the cold-molecular outflow in calculating the *total* multi-phase outflow kinetic power increases it to be in the range required by models of galaxy evolution, potentially indicating that it may play a role in the evolution of the merging galaxy system.

In all, the results of Chapters 2 and 4 directly show that the colder, non-ionised phases of AGN-driven outflows comprise the majority of the outflowing mass and kinetic power in the objects studied. This is a critical result: many observational studies of AGN-driven outflows only consider a single phase, and therefore may have significantly underestimated *total* outflow masses and kinetic powers, potentially by orders of magnitude. Moreover, these chapters show that the warm ionised phase — the most commonly observed outflow phase (e.g. Kraemer & Crenshaw 2000a; Villar-Martín et al. 1999; Das et al. 2006; Harrison et al. 2014; Tadhunter et al. 2019) — can only account for a small fraction of the overall outflowing gas.

In addition to determining multi-phase outflow energetics for two objects (see also Chapter 3 for a discussion on the outflow phases in the Sey 2 galaxy NGC 1068), in Chapter 2 I investigated how the different outflow phases are physically related. As noted earlier, previous studies had identified co-kinematic and co-spatial outflowing gas in different phases for a small number of objects, however, it was not clear why multiple phases are seen in a given outflow. This is particularly important to determine, as molecular gas is seen to be outflowing in some cases (e.g. Tadhunter et al. 2014): it would perhaps be expected that any outflow-driving mechanism would destroy the molecules, and so it is unclear how molecules can be accelerated to the high velocities observed. The high spatial resolution and wide wavelength coverage (from the UV to NIR) of the VLT/Xshooter observations allowed me to investigate the spatial flux distributions of various emission lines that are produced by different phases of outflowing gas at the NW radio lobe of IC 5063 (where the highest-velocity outflows are observed). Combining this with emission-line-ratio diagnostic diagrams ([OIII](5007/4363) vs HeIIλ4686/Hβ: Villar-Martín et al. 1999; [FeII]λ12570/Paβ vs $H_2\lambda$21218/Brγ: Larkin et al. 1998; Rodríguez-Ardila et al. 2005; Riffel et al. 2013a; Colina et al. 2015; Riffel et al. 2021) that provide information regarding the ionisation/excitation mechanisms (shock- or photoionisation) of the outflowing and non-outflowing warm-ionised and warm-molecular gas, I proposed that the observed outflow phases in IC 5063 represent a post-shock cooling sequence (Section 2.4.2, Figure 2.17). In this scenario, quiescent gas in the galaxy passes through shocks produced by jet-ISM interactions, is heated to the highly ionised hot phase ($T > 10^6$ K), and subsequently cools through the warm ionised, neutral atomic, and warm molecular phases, eventually accumulating in cold-molecular gas. This provides an explanation for why different gas phases are seen to be co-kinematic and co-spatial in IC 5063 (and other active galaxies), and how molecular gas can be accelerated to high velocities: the molecules are destroyed, and then reform post-acceleration.

Taken together, this thesis demonstrates that the cooler, non-ionised gas phases can dominate the energetics of AGN-driven outflows — therefore, the multi-phase nature of AGN-driven outflows must be carefully considered in order to ensure that outflow energetics are not significantly underestimated. Furthermore, this work presents evidence in support of post-acceleration cooling being a (or the) physical link between the different outflow phases.

6.1.2 What are the true electron densities of the warm ionised outflow phase, and what is the impact on outflow masses and kinetic powers?

The greatest source of uncertainty regarding the kinetic powers of the most commonly observed outflow phase — the warm ionised — is the electron density of the outflowing gas. Principally, this is because the most commonly used methods, which involve measuring the traditional [SII](6717/6731) or [OII](3726/3729) emission-line ratios, are only sensitive up to moderate values of density, leading to many studies estimating or assuming densities of $n_e < 10^3$ cm^{-3} (e.g. Liu et al. 2013; Harrison et al. 2014; Fiore et al. 2017; Mingozzi et al. 2019). However, true electron densities may be much higher (potentially by orders of magnitude), as indicated by recent studies that make use of different techniques that are sensitive to a wider range of electron densities (up to $n_e \sim 10^7$ cm^{-3}: Holt et al. 2011; Baron & Netzer 2019b; Revalski et al. 2021). Considering that observationally-derived warm-ionised outflow masses (Equation 1.3), mass outflow rates (Equation 1.4), and kinetic powers (Equation 1.5) are inversely proportional to the measured or assumed electron density, this indicates that much of the past work that used the traditional [SII](6717/6731) and [OII](3726/3729) ratios (or assumed low values of electron density) could have overestimated outflow energetics by orders of magnitude. This may have had a significant impact on the interpretations made regarding the role of warm-ionised outflows in galaxy evolution.

In Chapters 2 and 3, I made use of a technique involving the transauroral [SII](4068+4076)/(6717+6731) and [OII](3726+3729)/(7319+7331) emission-line ratios (Holt et al., 2011; Rose et al., 2018; Santoro et al., 2020; Spence et al., 2018; Davies et al., 2020; Speranza et al., 2022, 2024) — which are sensitive to a wider range of electron density ($2.0 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 5.5$) than the commonly-used ratios — to derive precise electron densities. Using high-spatial-resolution, wide-wavelength-coverage observations, I derived spatially-resolved electron densities with the transauroral-line technique and found them to be above the sensitivity limit of the commonly-used methods ($n_e = 10^{3.2-3.4}$ cm^{-3} for IC 5063: Chapter 2; $n_e = 10^{4.1-4.7}$ cm^{-3} for NGC 1068, and $n_e = 10^{3.7-4.0}$ cm^{-3} for NGC 4151: Chapter 3), in some cases by two orders of magnitude. For IC 5063 (Chapter 2), I was able to measure the electron density of the same outflowing gas with both the transauroral-line technique and the traditional [SII](6717/6731) ratio, allowing me to directly show that the [SII](6717/6731) ratio underestimated the electron density by half-an-order of magnitude. These studies mark the first (and to date, only) time that the transauroral-line technique has been used to derive electron densities for spatially-resolved outflows, ensuring that the densities measured were for the same outflowing gas as those determined with the traditional [SII](6717/6731) and [OII](3726/3729) ratios.

In the case of the prototypical Seyfert galaxies NGC 1068 and NGC 4151, the densities measured with the transauroral-line ratios were in agreement with those previously derived for these objects by detailed photoionisation modelling (Revalski et al. 2021; see also Revalski et al. 2022). Taken together, the results of these studies show that electron densities can be higher than the sensitivity limit of the traditional emission-line ratios, and that methods that are sensitive to a wider range of density values are required for robust measurements. The transauroral-line method is ideal for this, as it does not depend on a large number of emission lines nor require computationally-expensive modelling (such as in the Revalski et al. 2021 approach).

Subsequently, the densities derived with the transauroral-line ratios for IC 5063, NGC 1068, and NGC 4151 were used to derive energetics for the spatially-resolved warm-ionised outflows in these objects. The resulting mass outflow rates ($\dot{M}_{\rm out}$ = 0.03–0.18 $\rm M_\odot$ for IC 5063; $\dot{M}_{\rm out}$ = 0.6–3.7 $\rm M_\odot$ for NGC 1068; $\dot{M}_{\rm out}$ = 3.4–6.9 $\rm M_\odot$ for NGC 1068) and kinetic powers ($\dot{E}_{\rm kin} < 3.0 \times 10^{-3}$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$ for IC 5063; $\dot{E}_{\rm kin} < 0.5$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$ for NGC 1068; $\dot{E}_{\rm kin} < 1.0$ per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$ for NGC 4151) were modest in all cases. This demonstrates the importance of precise electron-density diagnostics: underestimating electron densities can lead to mass outflow rates and kinetic powers being overestimated by orders of magnitude. The many previous observational studies that likely underestimated electron densities concluded that the high kinetic powers they measured (>5 per cent of $L_{\rm bol}$) implied that the outflows will have a significant impact on their host galaxies. Therefore, in showing that true outflow kinetic powers may be significantly lower, this work challenges the common interpretation that warm-ionised outflows play an important role in galaxy evolution.

Prior studies that made use of the transauroral-line technique had been spatially unresolved. This led to concerns that the lines involved are emitted by dense clumps of gas within outflowing cloud complexes, and therefore do not trace the same outflowing gas clouds as other key diagnostic lines such as [OIII]4959, 5007 and Hβ, casting uncertainty on the validity of the transauroral lines as a measure of outflow density (Sun et al., 2017; Rose et al., 2018; Spence et al., 2018). Given that the VLT/Xshooter observations of IC 5063 presented in Chapter 2 are spatially resolved, I was able to demonstrate that the transauroral [SII] and [OII] lines are emitted in the same locations — and with the same kinematics as — other key diagnostic lines (namely [OIII]4959, 5007 and Hβ), providing strong evidence that they are emitted by the same cloud systems and thus alleviating concerns regarding their use in observational outflow studies. Moreover, in Chapter 3, I argued that, since the transauroral [SII] and [OII] lines have critical densities that are closer to those of the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 doublet (commonly used to determine outflow kinematics), they are a better representation of the outflowing gas than the traditional [SII]$\lambda\lambda$6717,6731 and [OII]$\lambda\lambda$3726,3729 lines.

Finally, while the impact of varying photoionisation properties on transauroral-line-derived densities had been established to be less than an order of magnitude (Santoro et al., 2020), the effect of shock-ionisation on derived densities was not clear. This was particularly important for the case of NGC 4151, as evidence of shock-ionisation in the NLR of this object was found in Chapter 3. To address this, I quantified the impact of shock-ionisation of varying parameters on the derived electron densities (including the case in which photoionisation is erroneously assumed), and found this to be a factor of a few in total — much less than the potential orders-of-magnitude error incurred by using techniques that are not sensitive to a wide range of densities.

Overall, the analyses and results of Chapters 2 and 3 demonstrate the importance of robust density diagnostics in observational studies of the warm ionised phase of AGN-driven outflows, and provide strong support for the use of the transauroral lines for this purpose.

6.1.3 What are the spatial extents of AGN-driven outflows?

Theoretical models of galaxy evolution that invoke AGN-driven outflows as a feedback mechanism predict them to extend to galaxy-wide scales ($r > 5$ kpc: Silk & Rees 1998; Di Matteo et al. 2005; Curtis & Sijacki 2016; Zubovas & Maskeliūnas 2023). However, long-slit observations of active galaxies — combined with a technique called spectroastrometry (in which the spatial centroid position of an emission line is measured as a function of velocity along the slit; Carniani et al. 2015; Villar-Martín et al. 2016; Santoro et al. 2020) — and direct HST imaging/spectroscopy (Fischer et al., 2018; Tadhunter et al., 2018) have determined outflow radii to be less than a few kiloparsecs. This indicates that the impact of outflows is limited to the central regions of galaxies, in contradiction to the predictions of models.

Consistent with these results, by using high-spatial-resolution (0.113×0.091 arcsecond or 247×119 pc beam-size) ALMA CO(1–0) observations of the primary nucleus of the ULIRG F13451+1232 — an object that is representative of the situation considered in models of galaxy evolution — I detected a cold-molecular outflow with a radius of $r < 120$ pc (in agreement with the radii of the other outflow phases in this object: Morganti et al. 2013a; Tadhunter et al. 2018). This demonstrates that multi-phase AGN-driven outflows — even when accelerated by luminous radio sources and bolometrically-luminous quasars — can be compact, and therefore that high-spatial-resolution observations are required to robustly characterise them.

However, in contrast to this, studies making use of ground-based IFU observations of the warm ionised outflow phase have claimed evidence for outflows having galaxy-wide spatial extents (Fu & Stockton, 2009; Westmoquette et al., 2012; Liu et al., 2014; McElroy et al., 2015; Wylezalek et al., 2017). Crucially, these studies did not account for the effects of atmospheric seeing, which may have beam-smeared compact-outflow emission across the IFU field of view, artificially producing the appearance of galaxy-wide outflows. To directly address this, in Chapter 5 I presented a ground-based IFU study of F13451+1232: by carefully accounting for the beam-smeared emission of the well-known compact outflows discussed earlier, no evidence for warm-ionised outflows on galaxy scales was found, in direct contradiction to the predictions of models.

Moreover, the IFU study of F13451+1232 presented in Chapter 5 also demonstrates the importance of accounting for atmospheric seeing in ground-based IFU observations: the contribution from the beam-smeared compact-outflow emission to the line profiles of the extended emission was significant to (at minimum) a radial distance ($r \sim 2.5$ arcseconds) that was six times that of the HWHM of the seeing disk. If not accounted for, this may have been misinterpreted as genuine galaxy-wide outflows, significantly altering the interpretation of the impact of the AGN on the host galaxy. Furthermore, I demonstrated that failure to account for beam smearing can lead to mass outflow rates being overestimated by an order of magnitude, and kinetic powers being overestimated by two orders of magnitude.

Combined with the analyses presented in Chapters 2 and 3 (the observations and techniques of which traced gas in the central kiloparsecs of active galaxies), the compactness of the cold-molecular outflow presented in Chapter 4 and the lack of warm-ionised galaxy-wide outflows determined in Chapter 5 provide evidence that AGN-driven outflows are limited to the central regions of their host galaxies. This contradicts a prediction of galaxy-evolution models, and could be interpreted as AGN-driven outflows not having a significant impact on galaxy-wide scales.

6.1.4 How do AGN accelerate outflows?

Although AGN-driven outflows are now routinely observed in active galaxies of various types, it is not clear how they are accelerated (see Wylezalek & Morganti 2018 for a review). Theoretical models can explain observed outflow kinematics in two general ways: via radiation pressure (either broad, radiatively-driven winds that shock the colder ISM: e.g. Hopkins & Elvis 2010; Meena et al. 2021, or 'in situ': e.g. Crenshaw et al. 2015; Revalski et al. 2018) or via shocks induced by jet-ISM interactions (e.g. Sutherland & Bicknell 2007; Wagner & Bicknell 2011; Mukherjee et al. 2016, 2018). However, in many cases, observed outflow and NLR properties can be explained by both of these mechanisms (e.g. Ulvestad et al. 1981; Axon et al. 1998; Das et al. 2005, 2006; Mukherjee et al. 2016, 2018; Meena et al. 2021), and *both* may be present in a given galaxy, with their relative contributions to outflow acceleration being unclear. Determining how to observationally distinguish between these mechanisms, and clarifying their relative importance, is crucial: theoretical models can now predict specific outflow properties for a particular acceleration mechanism (e.g. Richings et al. 2021; Meenakshi et al. 2022a,b), allowing observational studies to directly verify their physical mechanisms and assumptions. Moreover, detailed understandings of outflow acceleration are required to inform the sub-grid physics of large-scale cosmological simulations (such as EAGLE: Schaye et al. 2015, HORIZON-AGN: Dubois et al. 2016, and SIMBA: Davé et al. 2019).

Typically, observational studies make use of gas ionisation or excitation conditions to infer information about outflow acceleration (e.g. Mingozzi et al. 2019; Venturi et al. 2021; Revalski et al. 2021): it is assumed that different ionisation/excitation mechanisms correspond to different acceleration mechanisms. However, the regions of photo- and shock-ionisation overlap considerably in the most commonly used diagnostic diagrams (Dopita & Sutherland, 1995, 1996; Allen et al., 2008; Ji et al., 2020), and it is not clear if a direct relation between outflow ionisation/excitation and acceleration exists.

Chapter 2 presents a detailed study of the Sey 2 galaxy IC 5063, for which the strong spatial and kinematic relation between the radio jet and outflows implies acceleration by jet-ISM interactions. Using the [OIII](5007/4363) vs He IIλ4686/Hβ diagnostic diagram (Villar-Martín et al., 1999) — for which photo- and shock- ionisation are better separated than in commonly-used diagrams — the warm-ionised outflowing and non-outflowing gas in IC 5063 was found to be AGN-photoionised. While this may have been interpreted as the outflows being radiatively-driven, employing the NIR [FeII]λ12567/Paβ and H_2(1–0)S(1) 2.212 μm/Brγ diagram (Larkin et al., 1998; Rodríguez-Ardila et al., 2005; Riffel et al., 2013a; Colina et al., 2015; Riffel et al., 2021) revealed that the outflowing warm-molecular gas had some contribution from shock-excitation. This is consistent with a scenario in which the gas in IC 5063 is shocked by jet-ISM interactions, cools, and then is re-ionised by radiation from the AGN. Importantly, this demonstrates that photoionisation cannot be used as a proxy for radiative acceleration.

In Chapter 3, the [OIII](5007/4363) vs He IIλ4686/Hβ and [NeV]3426/[NeIII]3869 vs HeII/Hβ diagrams were used to show that the $r < 200$ pc NLR gas in NGC 1068 is predominantly photoionised with matter-bounded geometry (Binette et al., 1996), while the NLR in NGC 4151 presents evidence for shock ionisation and/or radiation-bounded photoionisation. Notably, in both cases, the outflows are limited to the spatial extents of the radio structures, similar to what is observed in IC 5063 — this indicates that, for all three objects, the outflows are accelerated by radio jets. Despite this, the ionisation conditions vary significantly, demonstrating that the relationship between outflow ionisation/excitation and acceleration is complex.

Similarly, the compact molecular outflow detected in the primary nucleus of the ULIRG/QSO F13451+1232 — which has much higher radio and optical luminosities than the Seyfert galaxies discussed earlier — is spatially offset along the direction of the small-scale radio jet, indicating that it is jet-driven (Chapter 4). In addition, spatially-extended ($r \sim 440$ pc), lower-velocity molecular gas is seen beyond the extent of the radio structure, which may constitute a radiatively-driven component.

Overall, this thesis shows that the link between outflow ionisation/excitation and acceleration is complex and that determining outflow acceleration mechanisms requires detailed multi-wavelength information. By taking this approach for the objects considered in this thesis — each having different radio and bolometric luminosities — I argue that the dominant acceleration mechanism is jet-ISM interactions in all cases.

6.2 Future work

Further significant progress in understanding the natures of AGN-driven outflows and their role in galaxy evolution will require distinct, yet complementary approaches. This includes spatially-resolved, detailed, multi-wavelength studies of individual active galaxies (such as those presented in this thesis), large-scale statistical studies of AGN populations, and improved comparisons between observation and theory.

6.2.1 Detailed studies of active galaxies

Undertaking further detailed, multi-wavelength studies that make use of precise outflow diagnostics will permit robust outflow properties and acceleration mechanisms to be determined in active galaxies of all types, informing the nature of feedback in galaxies of different host and AGN properties. A particularly useful sample would be one consisting of nearby, non-quasar-like ($L_{\rm bol} < 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}), intermediate-radio-luminosity ($23 < \log_{10}(L_{1.4\,\rm GHz}\ [\rm W\ Hz^{-1}]) < 25$) active galaxies: the radio luminosities would be in the range for which prominent outflows would be expected (Whittle et al., 1988; Mullaney et al., 2013), while the non-quasar-like optical luminosities would mean that any observable signatures of jet-accelerated outflows would be less likely to be obscured by photo-ionisation/excitation. Therefore, such a sample would permit further robust determinations of ionisation/excitation and acceleration mechanisms, in addition to determining precise outflow properties — this would allow the true impact of outflows to be determined for a larger sample of AGN than is studied here, thus establishing how representative the outflow properties of the objects studied in Chapters 2 and 3 are of the general population of such AGN.

Detailed studies that use high-spatial-resolution, wide-wavelength-coverage observations can also further develop and expand upon the diagnostic methods used in this thesis, such as improved discrimination between acceleration by jets and radiation pressure: as demonstrated in Chapters 2, 3, and 4, this requires detailed, multi-wavelength observations. Further advances in comprehensively determining the relative importance of different driving mechanisms will require investigating the origins of NLR shocks (i.e. jets or radiatively-driven winds) — detailed investigations into gas (e.g. excitation/ionisation states, pre- and post-shock densities) and radio-emission (e.g. multi-frequency fluxes, spectral indices) properties will likely play a role in this. Moreover, these approaches can be used in further investigations of the physical link(s) between different outflow phases, such as the post-shock cooling sequence proposed in Chapter 2; clarifying this situation in particular will require observing nearby objects that host prominent jet-ISM interactions with high-spatial-resolution IR spectroscopy (for example with instruments such as VLT/ERIS and JWST/NIRSpec).

One of the key points made in this thesis is that multi-wavelength observations of active galaxies are needed to determine the total mass outflow rates and kinetic powers of multi-phase outflows. However, to date, there are only a few objects for which this has been done robustly (including IC 5063, NGC 1068, and F13451+1232: Chapters 2, 3, and 4, respectively). In addition to ongoing projects that are investigating the impact of multi-phase outflows in nearby quasars — such as QSOFEED (Ramos Almeida et al., 2022) and QFeedS (Jarvis et al., 2019) — observing existing samples of other AGN types that already have well-characterised outflows in one or more phases will enable multi-phase measurements to be rapidly expanded to a higher number of objects. For example, for the QUADROS sample of ULIRGs (Rose et al., 2018; Spence et al., 2018; Tadhunter et al., 2018, 2019), the energetics of warm-ionised outflows have been precisely quantified using densities derived with the transauroral-line technique. Therefore, observations at different wavelengths (but on the same spatial scales) would provide further insights into the dominant outflow phases and reveal total outflow properties.

Moreover, the crucial result determined throughout this thesis (and supported by the analyses of Chapters 4 and 5 in particular) — that AGN-driven outflows appear to be limited to the central regions ($r < 5$ kpc) of host galaxies — requires verification, principally to ensure that the situation in F13451+1232 is representative of the general AGN population. Further IFU (e.g. VLT/MUSE) observations of ULIRGs such as F13451+1232 — which bear resemblance to the situation considered in models of galaxy evolution — will be ideal for this. For example, using the beam-smearing-corrected techniques and analyses presented in Chapter 5 with IFU observations of other ULIRGs in the QUADROS sample will allow true warm-ionised outflow extents to be determined for several objects that would be expected to host galaxy-wide outflows. Complementary to this, the observations used in previous ground-based IFU studies of QSOs that claimed evidence for galaxy-wide outflows (but did not account for beam smearing) can be revisited using the techniques developed in Chapter 5, thus providing a direct test of outflow spatial extents in objects of different types and further quantifying the impact of atmospheric seeing on observationally-derived outflow properties.

6.2.2 Statistical studies of precise outflow properties

Complementary to the approach taken in this thesis, future statistical studies of AGN-driven outflows will be required to determine how representative the results of detailed studies are, establish scaling relations between the properties of AGN / host galaxies and outflows, and determine the role of outflows in AGN-feedback at the population level. Previous large-scale statistical studies have been limited to determining outflow kinematics (e.g. with the [OIII] emission-line velocity width: Mullaney et al. 2013), but significant advances in our understanding will require outflow kinetic powers to be calculated for a large number of objects. Such an approach was attempted by Fiore et al. (2017) (see Figure 1.9), however, the parameters used to derive the mass outflow rates and kinetic powers presented in that study were aggregated from various prior studies, each with different object-selection functions (hence different observational biases), and none of which accounted for the key uncertainties that this thesis demonstrates are important. Therefore, applying the techniques developed, verified and used in this thesis to spectroscopic survey data will permit — for the first time — statistical studies of precise outflow energetics with uniform methodology.

The improved sensitivity and wavelength coverages of the next generation of multi-object spectrographs such as the Dark Energy Spectroscopic Instrument (DESI; Levi et al. 2019) and the William Herschel Telescope (WHT) Enhanced Area Velocity Explorer (WEAVE: Jin et al. 2023) will be ideal for this: they will enable statistical studies that make use of faint diagnostic lines (such as the transauroral [OII] and [SII] doublets) for the local AGN population, in addition to careful analysis of brighter spectral features (such as [OIII]$\lambda\lambda4959, 5007$ and [SII]$\lambda\lambda6717, 6731$; see discussions in Sections 2.3.1 and 5.3.3) for objects at higher redshift. Furthermore, the intermediate spectral resolutions of these instruments ($60 < \Delta V < 160$ km s^{-1}) will allow for outflowing and non-outflowing gas to be kinematically separated, permitting precise measurements of outflow properties in addition to gas ionisation mechanisms (which will provide indications of acceleration mechanisms for a large number of objects).

In particular, the WEAVE-LOFAR survey (Smith et al., 2016; Jin et al., 2023) will be ideal for this type of work: in addition to the key features outlined above, the survey will be radio-selected based on LOFAR (LOw Frequency ARray: van Haarlem et al. 2013) low-frequency (10–240 MHz) observations, meaning that previous results determined with optically-selected surveys (such as SDSS: York et al. 2000) can be verified for a different selection function based on low-frequency radio observations. In addition to observing a large number of HERGs (high excitation radio galaxies: Laing et al. 1994; Tadhunter et al. 1998; Best & Heckman 2012) — objects similar in their observable properties to the galaxies considered in this thesis — the majority of the expected AGN observed by WEAVE-LOFAR will be low excitation radio galaxies (LERGs). Despite being the dominant radio galaxy population in the local Universe (Hardcastle et al., 2007), relatively few studies of AGN-driven outflows in LERGs have been performed (Ruffa et al., 2022). Moreover, complementary low-frequency radio observations for all WEAVE-LOFAR sources will be available (at 6 arcsecond resolution from the LoTSS survey: Shimwell et al. 2017), thus the variation of outflow properties in optical and radio AGN-subclasses can be investigated.

6.2.3 Improved comparisons between observational and theoretical work

Since the advent of the field of AGN-driven outflows three decades ago, many observational studies have sought to verify the role of outflows in galaxy evolution by comparing observationally-derived outflow properties to the requirements and predictions of theoretical models. However, as discussed in Section 1.2.3, in many cases it is not clear if such comparisons are valid, casting uncertainty regarding the interpretations made. Therefore, significant progress in the field of AGN-driven outflows will require consistent dialogue and collaboration between observers and theorists, which will be crucial to avoiding the misunderstanding and misinterpretation of results and improving interpretations. Principally, this dialogue has the potential to produce meaningful observables that can be used to verify the requirements and predictions of models, and the results of observational studies can inform the physical mechanisms included in the models themselves.

Such improved comparisons between theory and observation will likely involve detailed observations of individual objects and tailored simulations of those objects: for example, such as has been performed for IC 5063 (Morganti et al., 2015; Mukherjee et al., 2018) and the Teacup galaxy (Audibert et al., 2023). While *exact* comparisons of values (such as coupling efficiencies and spatial extents) should be avoided due to the uncertainties and limitations inherent in both observationally-derived properties and modelling, these studies can test if the physics and assumptions of models are broadly valid.

Moreover, simulations of different outflow acceleration mechanisms can now predict a range of physical conditions and properties for gas in multiple phases (e.g. Richings et al. 2021; Meenakshi et al. 2022a,b) — verifying these observationally with multi-wavelength observations and precise gas diagnostics provides an unprecedented opportunity to understand how outflows are accelerated, as well as their impact on host galaxies. The improved understanding of the underlying physical mechanisms can then be used to inform both further detailed modelling and the sub-grid physics of large-scale cosmological simulations; the predictions of the latter can be directly verified using the results of statistical studies made with spectroscopic surveys.

In conclusion, the precise diagnostic techniques presented in this thesis, applied to both detailed observations and large-scale statistical studies, in addition to improved dialogue between observers and theorists, will be crucial in making further advances in our understanding of AGN-driven outflows and their role in galaxy evolution.

Chapter acknowledgements

I thank Giovanna Speranza and Evgenii Chaikin — my co-chairs of the ‘Improving comparisons between theoretical models and observations of AGN-driven outflows’ breakout session at the ‘The importance of jet-induced feedback on galaxy scales’ Lorentz Center workshop which informed the discussion in Section 6.2.3 of this chapter — for their assistance in organising, hosting, and documenting the session; I also thank the attendees of the session for their insightful discussion. Furthermore, I thank Chris Harrison and Jarlath McKenna for their assistance in developing the ideas presented in Section 6.2.1 of this chapter.

Bibliography

Abbott D. C., 1982, ApJ, 259, 282

Alatalo K., et al., 2011, ApJ, 735, 88

Allen M. G., Groves B. A., Dopita M. A., Sutherland R. S., Kewley L. J., 2008, ApJS, 178, 20

Alonso-Herrero A., et al., 2011, ApJ, 736, 82

Alonso-Herrero A., Pereira-Santaella M., Rieke G. H., Rigopoulou D., 2012, ApJ, 744, 2

Alonso-Herrero A., et al., 2018, ApJ, 859, 144

Anderson K. S., 1970, ApJ, 162, 743

Antonucci R. R. J., Miller J. S., 1985, ApJ, 297, 621

Arav N., Li Z.-Y., Begelman M. C., 1994, ApJ, 432, 62

Asada K., Nakamura M., 2012, ApJ, 745, L28

Astropy Collaboration et al., 2013, A&A, 558, A33

Astropy Collaboration et al., 2018, ApJ, 156, 123

Audibert A., et al., 2019, A&A, 632, A33

Audibert A., et al., 2023, A&A, 671, L12

Axon D. J., Marconi A., Capetti A., Macchetto F. D., Schreier E., Robinson A., 1998, ApJ, 496, L75

Baade W., Minkowski R., 1954, ApJ, 119, 206

Bailey J., 1998, MNRAS, 301, 161

Baldwin J. A., 1975, ApJ, 201, 26

Baldwin J. A., Phillips M. M., Terlevich R., 1981, PASP, 93, 5

Barai P., Gallerani S., Pallottini A., Ferrara A., Marconi A., Cicone C., Maiolino R., Carniani S., 2018, MNRAS, 473, 4003

Barbosa F. K. B., Storchi-Bergmann T., McGregor P., Vale T. B., Rogemar Riffel A., 2014, MNRAS, 445, 2353

Baron D., Netzer H., 2019a, MNRAS, 482, 3915

Baron D., Netzer H., 2019b, MNRAS, 486, 4290

Baron D., Netzer H., Poznanski D., Prochaska J. X., Förster Schreiber N. M., 2017, MNRAS, 470, 1687

Benson A. J., Bower R. G., Frenk C. S., Lacey C. G., Baugh C. M., Cole S., 2003, ApJ, 599, 38

Best P. N., Heckman T. M., 2012, MNRAS, 421, 1569

Best P. N., Kaiser C. R., Heckman T. M., Kauffmann G., 2006, MNRAS, 368, L67

Bicknell G. V., Dopita M. A., O'Dea C. P. O., 1997, ApJ, 485, 112

Binette L., Wilson A. S., Storchi-Bergmann T., 1996, A&A, 312, 365

Binney J., Tabor G., 1995, MNRAS, 276, 663

Blandford R. D., Rees M. J., 1974, MNRAS, 169, 395

Bolatto A. D., Wolfire M., Leroy A. K., 2013, ARA&A, 51, 207

Bolton J. G., Stanley G. J., Slee O. B., 1949, Nature, 164, 101

Booth C. M., Schaye J., 2009, MNRAS, 398, 53

Booth C. M., Agertz O., Kravtsov A. V., Gnedin N. Y., 2013, ApJ, 777, L16

Bowen I. S., 1927, Nature, 120, 473

Bower G., Wilson A., Morse J. A., Gelderman R., Whittle M., Mulchaey J., 1995, ApJ, 454, 106

Boyce J. C., Menzel D. H., Payne C. H., 1933, Proceedings of the National Academy of Science, 19, 581

Bruzual G., Charlot S., 2003, MNRAS, 344, 1000

Burbidge G. R., 1958, PASP, 70, 83

Burbidge E. M., Burbidge G. R., Prendergast K. H., 1959, ApJ, 130, 26

Buttiglione S., Capetti A., Celotti A., Axon D. J., Chiaberge M., Macchetto F. D., Sparks W. B., 2010, A&A, 509, A6

CASA Team et al., 2022, PASP, 134, 114501

Callingham J. R., et al., 2015, ApJ, 809, 168

Campbell W. W., Moore J. H., 1918, Publications of Lick Observatory, 13, 75

Cano-Díaz M., Maiolino R., Marconi A., Netzer H., Shemmer O., Cresci G., 2012, A&A, 537, L8

Capetti A., Macchetto F., Axon D. J., Sparks W. B., Boksenberg A., 1995a, ApJ, 448, 600

Capetti A., Axon D. J., Kukula M., Macchetto F., Pedlar A., Sparks W. B., Boksenberg A., 1995b, ApJ, 454, L85

Capetti A., Macchetto F. D., Lattanzi M. G., 1997, ApJ, 476, L67

Cardelli J. A., Clayton G. C., Mathis J. S., 1989, ApJ, 345, 245

Carilli C. L., Perley R. A., Dreher J. W., Leahy J. P., 1991, ApJ, 383, 554

Carnall A. C., 2017, arXiv e-prints, p. arXiv:1705.05165

Carniani S., et al., 2015, A&A, 580, A102

Carral P., Turner J. L., Ho P. T. P., 1990, ApJ, 362, 434

Castor J. I., Abbott D. C., Klein R. I., 1975, ApJ, 195, 157

Cattaneo A., et al., 2009, Nature, 460, 213

Cecil G., Bland J., Tully R. B., 1990, ApJ, 355, 70

Chiu H.-Y., 1964, Physics Today, 17, 21

Choi E., Ostriker J. P., Naab T., Johansson P. H., 2012, ApJ, 754, 125

Cicone C., et al., 2014, A&A, 562, A21

Cicone C., Brusa M., Ramos Almeida C., Cresci G., Husemann B., Mainieri V., 2018, Nat. Astron., 2, 176

Cid Fernandes R., Mateus A., Sodré L., Stasińska G., Gomes J. M., 2005, MNRAS, 358, 363

Cid Fernandes R., Stasińska G., Mateus A., Vale Asari N., 2011, MNRAS, 413, 1687

Coldwell G. V., Alonso S., Duplancic F., Mesa V., 2018, MNRAS, 476, 2457

Colina L., et al., 2015, A&A, 578, A48

Collins N. R., Kraemer S. B., Crenshaw D. M., Bruhweiler F. C., Meléndez M., 2009, ApJ, 694, 765

Congiu E., et al., 2017, MNRAS, 471, 562

Costa T., Sijacki D., Haehnelt M. G., 2015, MNRAS, 448, L30

Costa T., Rosdahl J., Sijacki D., Haehnelt M. G., 2018, MNRAS, 473, 4197

Costa T., Arrigoni Battaia F., Farina E. P., Keating L. C., Rosdahl J., Kimm T., 2022, MNRAS, 517, 1767

Costero R., Osterbrock D. E., 1977, ApJ, 211, 675

Cox D. P., 1972, ApJ, 178, 143

Crenshaw D. M., Kraemer S. B., 2000a, ApJ, 532, 247

Crenshaw D. M., Kraemer S. B., 2000b, ApJ, 532, L101

Crenshaw D. M., Kraemer S. B., 2000c, ApJ, 532, L101

Crenshaw D. M., et al., 2000, AJ, 120, 1731

Crenshaw D. M., Fischer T. C., Kraemer S. B., Schmitt H. R., 2015, ApJ, 799, 83

Currie M. J., Berry D. S., Jenness T., Gibb A. G., Bell G. S., Draper P. W., 2014, in Manset N., Forshay P., eds, Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series Vol. 485, Astronomical Data Analysis Software and Systems XXIII. p. 391

Curtis H. D., 1918, Publications of Lick Observatory, 13, 9

Curtis M., Sijacki D., 2016, MNRAS, 457, L34

D'Agostino J. J., Kewley L. J., Groves B. A., Medling A., Dopita M. A., Thomas A. D., 2019, MNRAS, 485, L38

Danziger I. J., Goss W. M., Wellington K. J., 1981, MNRAS, 196, 845

Das V., et al., 2005, AJ, 130, 945

Das V., Crenshaw D. M., Kraemer S. B., Deo R. P., 2006, AJ, 132, 620

Das V., Crenshaw D. M., Kraemer S. B., 2007, ApJ, 656, 699

Dasyra K. M., Combes F., Oosterloo T., Oonk J. B. R., Morganti R., Salomé P., Vlahakis N., 2016, A&A, 595, L7

Davé R., Anglés-Alcázar D., Narayanan D., Li Q., Rafieferantsoa M. H., Appleby S., 2019, MNRAS, 486, 2827

Davies R., et al., 2020, MNRAS, 498, 4150

Di Matteo T., Springel V., Hernquist L., 2005, Nat, 433, 604

Di Teodoro E. M., Fraternali F., 2015, MNRAS, 451, 3021

Domínguez-Fernández A. J., et al., 2020, A&A, 643, A127

Dopita M. A., Sutherland R. S., 1995, ApJ, 455, 468

Dopita M. A., Sutherland R. S., 1996, ApJS, 102, 161

Dopita M. A., Groves B. A., Sutherland R. S., Binette L., Cecil G., 2002, ApJ, 572, 753

Dors Oli L. J., Riffel R. A., Cardaci M. V., Hägele G. F., Krabbe Á. C., Pérez-Montero E., Rodrigues I., 2012, MNRAS, 422, 252

Downes D., Solomon P. M., 1998, ApJ, 507, 615

Dubois Y., Peirani S., Pichon C., Devriendt J., Gavazzi R., Welker C., Volonteri M., 2016, MNRAS, 463, 3948

Earl N., et al., 2021, astropy/specutils: v1.2, doi:10.5281/zenodo.4603801

Elvis M., 2000, ApJ, 545, 63

Evans I. N., Ford H. C., Kinney A. L., Antonucci R. R. J., Armus L., Caganoff S., 1991, ApJ, 369, L27

Fabian A. C., 1999, MNRAS, 308, L39

Fabian A. C., Celotti A., Erlund M. C., 2006, MNRAS, 373, L16

Fanaroff B. L., Riley J. M., 1974, MNRAS, 167, 31P

Fath E. A., 1909, Lick Observatory Bulletin, 149, 71

Ferland G. J., Netzer H., 1983, ApJ, 264, 105

Ferland G. J., Netzer H., Shields G. A., 1979, ApJ, 232, 382

Ferland G. J., et al., 2017, RMXAA, 53, 385

Ferrarese L., Merritt D., 2000, ApJ, 539, L9

Feruglio C., et al., 2015, A&A, 583, A99

Finlez C., Nagar N. M., Storchi-Bergmann T., Schnorr-Müller A., Riffel R. A., Lena D., Mundell C. G., Elvis M. S., 2018, MNRAS, 479, 3892

Fiore F., et al., 2017, A&A, 601, A143

Fischer T. C., et al., 2017, ApJ, 834, 30

Fischer T. C., et al., 2018, ApJ, 856, 102

Fischer T., et al., 2019, ApJ, 887, 200

Fischer T. C., Johnson M. C., Secrest N. J., Crenshaw D. M., Kraemer S. B., 2023, ApJ, 953, 87

Fluetsch A., et al., 2019, MNRAS, 483, 4586

Fonseca-Faria M. A., Rodríguez-Ardila A., Contini M., Dahmer-Hahn L. G., Morganti R., 2023, MNRAS, 524, 143

Foreman-Mackey D., Hogg D. W., Lang D., Goodman J., 2013, PASP, 125, 306

Fosbury R. A. E., Mebold U., Goss W. M., Dopita M. A., 1978, MNRAS, 183, 549

Fotopoulou C. M., Dasyra K. M., Combes F., Salomé P., Papachristou M., 2019, A&A, 629, A30

Frederick S., et al., 2019, ApJ, 883, 31

Freudling W., Romaniello M., Bramich D. M., Ballester P., Forchi V., García-Dabló C. E., Moehler S., Neeser M. J., 2013, A&A, 559, A96

Fu H., Stockton A., 2009, ApJ, 690, 953

Fusco T., et al., 2020, A&A, 635, A208

Gaibler V., Khochfar S., Krause M., 2011, MNRAS, 411, 155

Gallimore J. F., Baum S. A., O'Dea C. P., Pedlar A., 1996, ApJ, 458, 136

García-Burillo S., et al., 2014, A&A, 567, A125

García-Burillo S., et al., 2019, A&A, 632, A61

Gaspari M., Skadowski A., 2017, ApJ, 837, 149

Gaspari M., Brighenti F., Ruszkowski M., 2013, Astronomische Nachrichten, 334, 394

Gebhardt K., et al., 2000, ApJ, 539, L13

Gibson R. R., et al., 2009, ApJ, 692, 758

Gilmore G., Shaw M. A., 1986, Nature, 321, 750

Girdhar A., et al., 2022, MNRAS, 512, 1608

Glaspey J. W., Eilek J. A., Fahlman G. G., Auman J. R., 1976, ApJ, 203, 335

González Delgado R. M., Leitherer C., Heckman T. M., 1999, ApJS, 125, 489

Goodman J., Weare J., 2010, Communications in Applied Mathematics and Computational Science, 5, 65

Grandi S. A., 1977, ApJ, 215, 446

Gravity Collaboration et al., 2020, A&A, 634, A1

Greenstein J. L., 1963, Nature, 197, 1041

Gronke M., Oh S. P., 2020, MNRAS, 492, 1970

Hainline K. N., Hickox R. C., Greene J. E., Myers A. D., Zakamska N. L., Liu G., Liu X., 2014, ApJ, 787, 65

Hardcastle M. J., Evans D. A., Croston J. H., 2007, MNRAS, 376, 1849

Hardee P. E., Norman M. L., 1990, ApJ, 365, 134

Harris C. R., et al., 2020, Nat., 585, 357

Harrison C. M., Alexander D. M., Mullaney J. R., Swinbank A. M., 2014, MNRAS, 441, 3306

Harrison C. M., Costa T., Tadhunter C. N., Flütsch A., Kakkad D., Perna M., Vietri G., 2018, Nat. Astron, 2, 198

Hazard C., Mackey M. B., Shimmins A. J., 1963, Nature, 197, 1037

Heckman T. M., 1980, A&A, 87, 152

Heckman T. M., 2002, in Mulchaey J. S., Stocke J. T., eds, Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series Vol. 254, Extragalactic Gas at Low Redshift. p. 292 (`arXiv:astro-ph/0107438`)

Heckman T. M., Balick B., 1983, ApJ, 268, 102

Heckman T. M., Miley G. K., van Breugel W. J. M., Butcher H. R., 1981, ApJ, 247, 403

Heckman T. M., Smith E. P., Baum S. A., van Breugel W. J. M., Miley G. K., Illingworth G. D., Bothun G. D., Balick B., 1986, ApJ, 311, 526

Herrera-Camus R., et al., 2020, A&A, 635, A47

Hey J. S., Parsons S. J., Phillips J. W., 1946, Nature, 158, 234

Hine R. G., Longair M. S., 1979, MNRAS, 188, 111

Holden L. R., Tadhunter C. N., 2023, MNRAS,

Holden L. R., Tadhunter C. N., Morganti R., Oosterloo T., 2023, MNRAS, 520, 1848

Holden L. R., Tadhunter C., Audibert A., Oosterloo T., Ramos Almeida C., Morganti R., Pereira-Santaella M., Lamperti I., 2024, Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society, 530, 446

Holt J., Tadhunter C. N., Morganti R., 2003, MNRAS, 342, 227

Holt J., Tadhunter C., Morganti R., Bellamy M., González Delgado R. M., Tzioumis A., Inskip K. J., 2006, MNRAS, 370, 1633

Holt J., Tadhunter C. N., Morganti R., 2008, MNRAS, 387, 639

Holt J., Tadhunter C. N., Morganti R., Emonts B. H. C., 2011, MNRAS, 410, 1527

Hopkins P. F., Elvis M., 2010, MNRAS, 401, 7

Hopkins P. F., Hernquist L., Cox T. J., Kereš D., 2008, ApJS, 175, 356

Hopkins P. F., Grudić M. Y., Wetzel A., Kereš D., Faucher-Giguère C.-A., Ma X., Murray N., Butcher N., 2020, MNRAS, 491, 3702

Hubble E. P., 1926, ApJ, 64, 321

Husemann B., Scharwächter J., Bennert V. N., Mainieri V., Woo J. H., Kakkad D., 2016, A&A, 594, A44

Hutchings J. B., et al., 1999, AJ, 118, 2101

Inglis M. D., Brindle C., Hough J. H., Young S., Axon D. J., Bailey J. A., Ward W. J., 1993, MNRAS, 263, 895

Jansky K. G., 1933a, Popular Astronomy, 41, 548

Jansky K. G., 1933b, Nature, 132, 66

Jarvis M. E., et al., 2019, MNRAS, 485, 2710

Jennison R. C., Latham V., 1959, MNRAS, 119, 174

Ji X., Yan R., Riffel R., Drory N., Zhang K., 2020, MNRAS, 496, 1262

Jin S., et al., 2023, MNRAS,

Johansson P. H., Naab T., Burkert A., 2009, ApJ, 690, 802

Johnston K. J., Elvis M., Kjer D., Shen B. S. P., 1982, ApJ, 262, 61

Junor W., Biretta J. A., Livio M., 1999, Nature, 401, 891

Kaiser M. E., et al., 2000, ApJ, 528, 260

Kakkad D., et al., 2018, A&A, 618, A6

Kakkad D., et al., 2020, A&A, 642, A147

Kausch W., et al., 2015, A&A, 576, A78

Kellerman K. I., Bouton E. N., 2023, Star Noise: Discovering the Radio Universe. Cambridge University Press, doi:10.1017/9781009023443.019

Kellermann K. I., Pauliny-Toth I. I. K., 1981, ARA&A, 19, 373

Kewley L. J., Groves B., Kauffmann G., Heckman T., 2006, MNRAS, 372, 961

Khachikian E. E., Weedman D. W., 1971, Astrofizika, 7, 389

Kim D. C., Sanders D. B., 1998, ApJS, 119, 41

King A., 2003, ApJ, 596, L27

King A. R., 2010, MNRAS, 402, 1516

Kormendy J., Richstone D., 1995, ARA&A, 33, 581

Koski A. T., Osterbrock D. E., 1976, ApJ, 203, L49

Kraemer S. B., Crenshaw D. M., 2000a, ApJ, 532, 256

Kraemer S. B., Crenshaw D. M., 2000b, ApJ, 544, 763

Kraemer S. B., Turner T. J., Couto J. D., Crenshaw D. M., Schmitt H. R., Revalski M., Fischer T. C., 2020, MNRAS, 493, 3893

Krause M. G. H., 2023, Galaxies, 11, 29

Krolik J. H., Vrtilek J. M., 1984, ApJ, 279, 521

Kukreti P., Morganti R., Tadhunter C., Santoro F., 2023, A&A, 674, A198

Laing R. A., Jenkins C. R., Wall J. V., Unger S. W., 1994, in Bicknell G. V., Dopita M. A., Quinn P. J., eds, Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series Vol. 54, The Physics of Active Galaxies. p. 201

Lamperti I., et al., 2022, A&A, 668, A45

Larkin J. E., Armus L., Knop R. A., Soifer B. T., Matthews K., 1998, ApJS, 114, 59

Law D. R., Steidel C. C., Erb D. K., Larkin J. E., Pettini M., Shapley A. E., Wright S. A., 2009, ApJ, 697, 2057

Le Borgne J. F., et al., 2003, A&A, 402, 433

Levi M., et al., 2019, in Bulletin of the American Astronomical Society. p. 57 (`arXiv:1907.10688`), doi:10.48550/arXiv.1907.10688

Lister M. L., Kellermann K. I., Vermeulen R. C., Cohen M. H., Zensus J. A., Ros E., 2003, ApJ, 584, 135

Liu G., Zakamska N. L., Greene J. E., Nesvadba N. P. H., Liu X., 2013, MNRAS, 436, 2576

Liu G., Zakamska N. L., Greene J. E., 2014, MNRAS, 442, 1303

Lobban A. P., Reeves J. N., Miller L., Turner T. J., Braito V., Kraemer S. B., Crenshaw D. M., 2011, MNRAS, 414, 1965

Lopez-Rodriguez E., et al., 2018, ApJ, 859, 99

Luridiana V., Morisset C., Shaw R. A., 2015, A&A, 573, A42

Lynden-Bell D., 1969, Nature, 223, 690

MacAlpine G. M., 1972, ApJ, 175, 11

Maddox N., Hess K. M., Obreschkow D., Jarvis M. J., Blyth S. L., 2015, MNRAS, 447, 1610

Magorrian J., et al., 1998, ApJ, 115, 2285

Mahony E. K., Oonk J. B. R., Morganti R., Tadhunter C., Bessiere P., Short P., Emonts B. H. C., Oosterloo T. A., 2016, MNRAS, 455, 2453

Maksym W. P., et al., 2021, ApJ, 917, 85

Mateus A., Sodré L., Cid Fernandes R., Stasińska G., Schoenell W., Gomes J. M., 2006, MNRAS, 370, 721

May D., Steiner J. E., 2017, MNRAS, 469, 994

May D., Steiner J. E., Menezes R. B., Williams D. R. A., Wang J., 2020, MNRAS, 496, 1488

McElroy R., Croom S. M., Pracy M., Sharp R., Ho I. T., Medling A. M., 2015, MNRAS, 446, 2186

McNamara B. R., Nulsen P. E. J., 2007, ARA&A, 45, 117

Meena B., Crenshaw D. M., Schmitt H. R., Revalski M., Fischer T. C., Polack G. E., Kraemer S. B., Dashtamirova D., 2021, ApJ, 916, 31

Meena B., et al., 2023, ApJ, 943, 98

Meenakshi M., Mukherjee D., Wagner A. Y., Nesvadba N. P. H., Morganti R., Janssen R. M. J., Bicknell G. V., 2022a, MNRAS, 511, 1622

Meenakshi M., et al., 2022b, MNRAS, 516, 766

Miller J. S., Goodrich R. W., 1990a, ApJ, 355, 456

Miller J. S., Goodrich R. W., 1990b, ApJ, 355, 456

Miller B. P., Brandt W. N., Schneider D. P., Gibson R. R., Steffen A. T., Wu J., 2011, ApJ, 726, 20

Mingozzi M., et al., 2019, A&A, 622, A146

Moffat A. F. J., 1969, A&A, 3, 455

Montgomery D. C., 2012, Introduction to linear regression analysis, fifth edition. edn. Wiley series in probability and statistics, John Wiley & Sons Ltd, Hoboken, New Jersey

Morganti R., 2017, Nature Astronomy, 1, 596

Morganti R., Oosterloo T., Tsvetanov Z., 1998, ApJ, 115, 915

Morganti R., Tadhunter C. N., Oosterloo T. A., 2005, A&A, 444, L9

Morganti R., Holt J., Saripalli L., Oosterloo T. A., Tadhunter C. N., 2007, A&A, 476, 735

Morganti R., Fogasy J., Paragi Z., Oosterloo T., Orienti M., 2013a, Science, 341, 1082

Morganti R., Frieswijk W., Oonk R. J. B., Oosterloo T., Tadhunter C., 2013b, A&A, 552, L4

Morganti R., Oosterloo T., Oonk J. B. R., Frieswijk W., Tadhunter C., 2015, A&A, 580, A1

Morganti R., Veilleux S., Oosterloo T., Teng S. H., Rupke D., 2016, A&A, 593, A30

Mukherjee D., Bicknell G. V., Sutherland R., Wagner A., 2016, MNRAS, 461, 967

Mukherjee D., Wagner A. Y., Bicknell G. V., Morganti R., Oosterloo T., Nesvadba N., Sutherland R. S., 2018, MNRAS, 476, 80

Mullaney J. R., Alexander D. M., Fine S., Goulding A. D., Harrison C. M., Hickox R. C., 2013, MNRAS, 433, 622

Müller Sánchez F., Davies R. I., Genzel R., Tacconi L. J., Eisenhauer F., Hicks E. K. S., Friedrich S., Sternberg A., 2009, ApJ, 691, 749

Müller-Sánchez F., Prieto M. A., Hicks E. K. S., Vives-Arias H., Davies R. I., Malkan M., Tacconi L. J., Genzel R., 2011, ApJ, 739, 69

Mundell C. G., Wrobel J. M., Pedlar A., Gallimore J. F., 2003, ApJ, 583, 192

Murray N., Chiang J., Grossman S. A., Voit G. M., 1995, ApJ, 451, 498

Nardini E., Risaliti G., Watabe Y., Salvati M., Sani E., 2010, MNRAS, 405, 2505

Nelson C. H., Weistrop D., Hutchings J. B., Crenshaw D. M., Gull T. R., Kaiser M. E., Kraemer S. B., Lindler D., 2000, ApJ, 531, 257

Nenkova M., Ivezić Ž., Elitzur M., 2002, ApJ, 570, L9

Nenkova M., Sirocky M. M., Nikutta R., Ivezić Ž., Elitzur M., 2008, ApJ, 685, 160

Nesvadba N. P. H., Lehnert M. D., Eisenhauer F., Gilbert A., Tecza M., Abuter R., 2006, ApJ, 650, 693

Nesvadba N. P. H., Lehnert M. D., De Breuck C., Gilbert A. M., van Breugel W., 2008, A&A, 491, 407

Netzer H., 2015, ARA&A, 53, 365

Nicastro F., Martocchia A., Matt G., 2003, ApJ, 589, L13

O'Dea C. P., 1998, PASP, 110, 493

O'Dea C. P., Saikia D. J., 2021, A&A Rev., 29, 3

Oke J. B., 1963, Nature, 197, 1040

Oosterloo T. A., Morganti R., Tzioumis A., Reynolds J., King E., McCulloch P., Tsvetanov Z., 2000, ApJ, 119, 2085

Oosterloo T., Raymond Oonk J. B., Morganti R., Combes F., Dasyra K., Salomé P., Vlahakis N., Tadhunter C., 2017, A&A, 608, A38

Oosterloo T., Morganti R., Tadhunter C., Raymond Oonk J. B., Bignall H. E., Tzioumis T., Reynolds C., 2019, A&A, 632, A66

Osterbrock D. E., Ferland G. J., 2006, Astrophysics of gaseous nebulae and active galactic nuclei. University Science Books

Osterbrock D. E., Koski A. T., 1976, MNRAS, 176, 61P

Osterbrock D. E., Koski A. T., Phillips M. M., 1976, ApJ, 206, 898

Pedlar A., Booler R. V., Spencer R. E., Stewart O. J., 1983, MNRAS, 202, 647

Pedlar A., Unger S. W., Booler R. V., 1984, MNRAS, 207, 193

Pedlar A., Howley P., Axon D. J., Unger S. W., 1992, MNRAS, 259, 369

Pedlar A., Kukula M. J., Longley D. P. T., Muxlow T. W. B., Axon D. J., Baum S., O'Dea C., Unger S. W., 1993, MNRAS, 263, 471

Penston M. V., Fosbury R. A. E., 1978, MNRAS, 183, 479

Pereira-Santaella M., et al., 2018, A&A, 616, A171

Perna M., et al., 2021, A&A, 646, A101

Pogge R. W., 1988, ApJ, 328, 519

Pogge R. W., 1989, ApJ, 345, 730

Pounds K. A., King A. R., 2013, MNRAS, 433, 1369

Pounds K. A., Vaughan S., 2011, MNRAS, 413, 1251

Pounds K. A., Reeves J. N., King A. R., Page K. L., 2004, MNRAS, 350, 10

Proga D., Stone J. M., Drew J. E., 1998, MNRAS, 295, 595

Proga D., Stone J. M., Kallman T. R., 2000, ApJ, 543, 686

Raban D., Jaffe W., Röttgering H., Meisenheimer K., Tristram K. R. W., 2009, MNRAS, 394, 1325

Ramos Almeida C., Tadhunter C. N., Inskip K. J., Morganti R., Holt J., Dicken D., 2011, MNRAS, 410, 1550

Ramos Almeida C., Acosta-Pulido J. A., Tadhunter C. N., González-Fernández C., Cicone C., Fernández-Torreiro M., 2019, MNRAS, 487, L18

Ramos Almeida C., et al., 2022, A&A, 658, A155

Reber G., 1944, ApJ, 100, 279

Rees M. J., 1984, ARAA, 22, 471

Revalski M., Crenshaw D. M., Kraemer S. B., Fischer T. C., Schmitt H. R., Machuca C., 2018, ApJ, 856, 46

Revalski M., et al., 2021, ApJ, 910, 139

Revalski M., et al., 2022, ApJ, 930, 14

Richings A. J., Faucher-Giguère C.-A., Stern J., 2021, MNRAS, 503, 1568

Riffel R., Rodríguez-Ardila A., Aleman I., Brotherton M. S., Pastoriza M. G., Bonatto C., Dors O. L., 2013a, MNRAS, 430, 2002

Riffel R. A., Storchi-Bergmann T., Winge C., 2013b, MNRAS, 430, 2249

Riffel R. A., Vale T. B., Storchi-Bergmann T., McGregor P. J., 2014, MNRAS, 442, 656

Riffel R. A., Storchi-Bergmann T., Riffel R., 2015, MNRAS, 451, 3587

Riffel R. A., Bianchin M., Riffel R., Storchi-Bergmann T., Schönell A. J., Dahmer-Hahn L. G., Dametto N. Z., Diniz M. R., 2021, MNRAS, 503, 5161

Robinson A., Binette L., Fosbury R. A. E., Tadhunter C. N., 1987, MNRAS, 227, 97

Robinson A., et al., 1994, A&A, 291, 351

Rodríguez-Ardila A., Riffel R., Pastoriza M. G., 2005, MNRAS, 364, 1041

Rodríguez Zaurín J., Holt J., Tadhunter C. N., González Delgado R. M., 2007, MNRAS, 375, 1133

Rodríguez Zaurín J., Tadhunter C. N., Rose M., Holt J., 2013, MNRAS, 432, 138

Rosario D. J., Whittle M., Nelson C. H., Wilson A. S., 2010a, MNRAS, 408, 565

Rosario D. J., Whittle M., Nelson C. H., Wilson A. S., 2010b, ApJ, 711, L94

Rosario D. J., Shields G. A., Taylor G. B., Salviander S., Smith K. L., 2010c, ApJ, 716, 131

Rose M., Tadhunter C. N., Holt J., Ramos Almeida C., Littlefair S. P., 2011, MNRAS, 414, 3360

Rose M., Tadhunter C., Ramos Almeida C., Rodríguez Zaurín J., Santoro F., Spence R., 2018, MNRAS, 474, 128

Ruffa I., Prandoni I., Davis T. A., Laing R. A., Paladino R., Casasola V., Parma P., Bureau M., 2022, MNRAS, 510, 4485

Rupke D. S., Veilleux S., Sanders D. B., 2002, ApJ, 570, 588

Rupke D. S., Veilleux S., Sanders D. B., 2005a, ApJS, 160, 115

Rupke D. S., Veilleux S., Sanders D. B., 2005b, ApJ, 632, 751

Salpeter E. E., 1964, ApJ, 140, 796

Sanders R. H., 1984, A&A, 140, 52

Sanders D. B., Mirabel I. F., 1996, ARA&A, 34, 749

Sanders D. B., Soifer B. T., Elias J. H., Madore B. F., Matthews K., Neugebauer G., Scoville N. Z., 1988, ApJ, 325, 74

Santoro F., Rose M., Morganti R., Tadhunter C., Oosterloo T. A., Holt J., 2018, A&A, 617, A139

Santoro F., Tadhunter C., Baron D., Morganti R., Holt J., 2020, A&A, 644, A54

Sault R. J., Teuben P. J., Wright M. C. H., 1995, in Shaw R. A., Payne H. E., Hayes J. J. E., eds, Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series Vol. 77, Astronomical Data Analysis Software and Systems IV. p. 433 (`arXiv:astro-ph/0612759`), doi:10.48550/arXiv.astro-ph/0612759

Scannapieco E., Brüggen M., 2015, ApJ, 805, 158

Schaye J., et al., 2015, MNRAS, 446, 521

Scheuer P. A. G., 1982, in Heeschen D. S., Wade C. M., eds, 1 Vol. 97, Extragalactic Radio Sources. pp 163–165

Schlafly E. F., Finkbeiner D. P., 2011, ApJ, 737, 103

Schlegel D. J., Finkbeiner D. P., Davis M., 1998, ApJ, 500, 525

Schmidt M., 1963, Nature, 197, 1040

Schmidt M., 1970, ApJ, 162, 371

Schulz R., Morganti R., Nyland K., Paragi Z., Mahony E. K., Oosterloo T., 2018, A&A, 617, A38

Serra P., et al., 2015, MNRAS, 448, 1922

Seyfert C. K., 1943, ApJ, 97, 28

Sharp R. G., Bland-Hawthorn J., 2010, ApJ, 711, 818

Shaw R. A., Dufour R. J., 1995, PASP, 107, 896

Shields G. A., 1999, PASP, 111, 661

Shields G. A., Oke J. B., 1975, ApJ, 197, 5

Shimwell T. W., et al., 2017, A&A, 598, A104

Silich S., Tenorio-Tagle G., Muñoz-Tuñón C., 2003, ApJ, 590, 791

Silk J., Rees M. J., 1998, A&A, 331, L1

Singh R., et al., 2013, A&A, 558, A43

Slipher V. M., 1917, Lowell Observatory Bulletin, 3, 59

Smette A., et al., 2015, A&A, 576, A77

Smith F. G., 1951, Nature, 168, 555

Smith D. J. B., et al., 2016, in Reylé C., Richard J., Cambrésy L., Deleuil M., Pécontal E., Tresse L., Vauglin I., eds, SF2A-2016: Proceedings of the Annual meeting of the French Society of Astronomy and Astrophysics. pp 271–280 (`arXiv:1611.02706`), doi:10.48550/arXiv.1611.02706

Soker N., White Raymond E. I., David L. P., McNamara B. R., 2001, ApJ, 549, 832

Solomon P. M., Vanden Bout P. A., 2005, ARA&A, 43, 677

Spence R. A. W., 2018, PhD thesis, University of Sheffield, `https://etheses.whiterose.ac.uk/23431/`

Spence R. A. W., Zaurín J. R., Tadhunter C. N., Rose M., Cabrera-Lavers A., Spoon H., Muñoz-Tuñón C., 2016, MNRAS, 459, L16

Spence R. A. W., Tadhunter C. N., Rose M., Rodríguez Zaurín J., 2018, MNRAS, 478, 2438

Speranza G., et al., 2022, A&A, 665, A55

Speranza G., et al., 2024, A&A, 681, A63

Springel V., Di Matteo T., Hernquist L., 2005, MNRAS, 361, 776

Sramek R. A., Tovmassian H. M., 1975, ApJ, 196, 339

Stanghellini C., O'Dea C. P., Baum S. A., Dallacasa D., Fanti R., Fanti C., 1997, A&A, 325, 943

Stanghellini C., O'Dea C. P., Dallacasa D., Cassaro P., Baum S. A., Fanti R., Fanti C., 2005, A&A, 443, 891

Storchi-Bergmann T., McGregor P. J., Riffel R. A., Simões Lopes R., Beck T., Dopita M., 2009, MNRAS, 394, 1148

Storchi-Bergmann T., Lopes R. D. S., McGregor P. J., Riffel R. A., Beck T., Martini P., 2010, MNRAS, 402, 819

Su R., et al., 2023, ApJ, 956, L28

Sun A.-L., Greene J. E., Zakamska N. L., 2017, ApJ, 835, 222

Sutherland R. S., Bicknell G. V., 2007, ApJS, 173, 37

Sutherland R. S., Dopita M. A., 2017, ApJS, 229, 34

Tadhunter C., 2008, New A Rev., 52, 227

Tadhunter C., 2016, A&A Rev., 24, 10

Tadhunter C. N., Fosbury R. A. E., Quinn P. J., 1989, MNRAS, 240, 225

Tadhunter C. N., Morganti R., Robinson A., Dickson R., Villar-Martin M., Fosbury R. A. E., 1998, MNRAS, 298, 1035

Tadhunter C., Morganti R., Rose M., Oonk J. B. R., Oosterloo T., 2014, Nat., 511, 440

Tadhunter C., et al., 2018, MNRAS, 478, 1558

Tadhunter C., Holden L., Ramos Almeida C., Batcheldor D., 2019, MNRAS, 488, 1813

Taylor D., Dyson J. E., Axon D. J., 1992, MNRAS, 255, 351

Tazaki F., Ueda Y., Terashima Y., Mushotzky R. F., 2011, ApJ, 738, 70

Thompson T. A., Quataert E., Zhang D., Weinberg D. H., 2016, MNRAS, 455, 1830

Tody D., 1986, in Crawford D. L., ed., Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series Vol. 627, Instrumentation in astronomy VI. p. 733, doi:10.1117/12.968154

Tody D., 1993, in Hanisch R. J., Brissenden R. J. V., Barnes J., eds, Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series Vol. 52, Astronomical Data Analysis Software and Systems II. p. 173

Tombesi F., Cappi M., Reeves J. N., Palumbo G. G. C., Braito V., Dadina M., 2011, ApJ, 742, 44

Travascio A., Fabbiano G., Paggi A., Elvis M., Maksym W. P., Morganti R., Oosterloo T., Fiore F., 2021, ApJ, 921, 129

Tremonti C. A., et al., 2004, ApJ, 613, 898

Ulvestad J. S., Wilson A. S., 1984, ApJ, 285, 439

Ulvestad J. S., Wilson A. S., Sramek R. A., 1981, ApJ, 247, 419

Veilleux S., Osterbrock D. E., 1987, ApJS, 63, 295

Veilleux S., Kim D. C., Sanders D. B., 2002, ApJS, 143, 315

Veilleux S., Maiolino R., Bolatto A. D., Aalto S., 2020, A&A Rev., 28, 2

Venturi G., et al., 2021, A&A, 648, A17

Venturi G., et al., 2023, A&A, 678, A127

Vignali C., Comastri A., Cappi M., Palumbo G. G. C., 1997, Mem. Soc. Astron. Italiana, 68, 139

Villar-Martín M., Tadhunter C., Morganti R., Axon D., Koekemoer A., 1999, MNRAS, 307, 24

Villar-Martín M., Arribas S., Emonts B., Humphrey A., Tadhunter C., Bessiere P., Cabrera Lavers A., Ramos Almeida C., 2016, MNRAS, 460, 130

Villar Martín M., et al., 2023, A&A, 673, A25

Wagner A. Y., Bicknell G. V., 2011, ApJ, 728, 29

Walker M. F., 1968a, ApJ, 151, 71

Walker M. F., 1968b, ApJ, 151, 71

Wang B., 1995, ApJ, 444, 590

Wang W., Liu X. W., Zhang Y., Barlow M. J., 2004, A&A, 427, 873

Wang J., Fabbiano G., Elvis M., Risaliti G., Mundell C. G., Karovska M., Zezas A., 2011a, ApJ, 736, 62

Wang J., et al., 2011b, ApJ, 742, 23

Weilbacher P. M., Streicher O., Palsa R., 2016, MUSE-DRP: MUSE Data Reduction Pipeline, Astrophysics Source Code Library, record ascl:1610.004 (ascl:1610.004)

Weilbacher P. M., et al., 2020, A&A, 641, A28

Weinberger R., et al., 2017, MNRAS, 465, 3291

Westmeier T., et al., 2021, MNRAS, 506, 3962

Westmoquette M. S., Clements D. L., Bendo G. J., Khan S. A., 2012, MNRAS, 424, 416

Whittle M., 1992a, ApJS, 79, 49

Whittle M., 1992b, ApJ, 387, 121

Whittle M., Pedlar A., Meurs E. J. A., Unger S. W., Axon D. J., Ward M. J., 1988, ApJ, 326, 125

Williams D. R. A., et al., 2017, MNRAS, 472, 3842

Wilson A. S., Heckman T. M., 1985, in Miller J. S., ed., Astrophysics of Active Galaxies and Quasi-Stellar Objects. pp 39–109

Wilson A. S., Ulvestad J. S., 1982, ApJ, 263, 576

Wilson A. S., Ulvestad J. S., 1983, ApJ, 275, 8

Wilson A. S., Ulvestad J. S., 1987, ApJ, 319, 105

Wilson A. S., Willis A. G., 1980, ApJ, 240, 429

Winge C., Axon D. J., Macchetto F. D., Capetti A., 1997, ApJ, 487, L121

Woltjer L., 1959, ApJ, 130, 38

Woo J.-H., Urry C. M., 2002, ApJ, 579, 530

Wright E. L., 2006, PASP, 118, 1711

Wylezalek D., Morganti R., 2018, Nature Astronomy, 2, 181

Wylezalek D., et al., 2017, MNRAS, 467, 2612

York D. G., et al., 2000, AJ, 120, 1579

Yuan W., et al., 2020, ApJ, 902, 26

Zamorani G., et al., 1981, ApJ, 245, 357

Zel'Dovich Y. B., 1964, Sov. Phys. Dokl., 158

Zinger E., et al., 2020, MNRAS, 499, 768

Zubovas K., King A. R., 2014, MNRAS, 439, 400

Zubovas K., Maskeliūnas G., 2023, MNRAS, 524, 4819

de Bruyn A. G., Wilson A. S., 1978, A&A, 64, 433

pandas development team T., 2020, pandas-dev/pandas: Pandas, doi:10.5281/zenodo.3509134, `https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.3509134`

van Haarlem M. P., et al., 2013, A&A, 556, A2

van der Kruit P. C., 1973, A&A, 29, 263

Abbreviations used in this work

AGN = Active Galactic Nucleus
ALMA = Atacama Large Millimeter Array
AO = Adaptive Optics
ATCA = Australia Telescope Compact Array
BAL = Broad Absorption Line
BLR = Broad Line Region
BLRG = Broad Line Radio Galaxy
BPT = Baldwin Phillips Terlevich [diagnostic diagrams: Baldwin et al. 1981]
CSS = Compact Steep Spectrum [source]
CCM89 = Cardelli, Clayton & Mathis 1989 [Cardelli et al. 1989]
CKN1068 = Crenshaw & Kraemer: NGC 1068 [Crenshaw & Kraemer 2000b]
CKN4151 = Crenshaw & Kraemer: NGC 4151 [Crenshaw et al. 2000]
DESI = Dark Energy Spectroscopic Instrument
ENLR = Extended Narrow Line Region
EVN = European VLBI Network
EW = Equivalent Width
FIR = Far Infrared
FOV = Field Of View
FR = Fanaroff-Riley [Class I or II]
FWHM = Full Width at Half Maximum
FWZI = Full Width at Zero Intensity
GPS = Gigahertz Peaked Spectrum [source]
HERG = High Excitation Radio Galaxy
HST = Hubble Space Telescope
HWHM = Half Width at Half Maximum
IC = Index Catalogue
ICM = Intracluster Medium
IGM = Intergalactic Medium
ISM = Interstellar Medium
kpc = kiloparsec
LERG = Low Excitation Radio Galaxy
LINER = Low Ionisation Nuclear Emission Region
LIRG = Luminous Infrared Galaxy
LOFAR = Low Frequency Array
LoTSS = LOFAR Two-metre Sky Survey
MCMC = Markov Chain Monte Carlo
(e-)MERLIN = (enhanced-)Multi-Element Radio Linked Interferometer Network
Mpc = Megaparsec

Mrk = **M**a**rk**arian
MUSE = **M**ulti **U**nit **S**pectroscopic **E**xplorer
NGC = **N**ew **G**eneral **C**atalogue
NIR = **N**ear **I**nfra**r**ed
NLR = **N**arrow **L**ine **R**egion
NLRG = **N**arrow **L**ine **R**adio **G**alaxy
OB = **O**bserving **B**lock
PA = **P**osition **A**ngle
pc = **p**arse**c**
PI = **P**rincipal **I**vestigator
PSF = **P**oint **S**pread **F**unction
PKS = **P**ar**k**e**s** [catalogue of Radio Sources]
PV = **P**osition **V**elocity [diagram]
QSO = **Q**uasi **S**tellar **O**bject
QSS = **Q**uasi **S**tellar **S**ource
RMS = **R**oot **M**ean **S**quare
SDSS = **S**loan **D**igital **S**ky **S**urvey
SED = **S**pectral **E**nergy **D**istribution
Sey 1 = **Sey**fert **1** [galaxy]
Sey 2 = **Sey**fert **2** [galaxy]
SF = **S**tar **F**ormation
SFR = **S**tar **F**ormation **R**ate
SF11 = **S**chlafly & **F**inkbeiner 20**11** [Schlafly & Finkbeiner 2011]
SLRG = **S**trong **L**ine **R**adio **G**alaxy
SMBH = **S**uper **M**assive **B**lack **H**ole
STIS = **S**pace **T**elescope **I**maging **S**pectrograph
S98 = **S**chlegel et al. 19**98** [Schlegel et al. 1998]
ULIRG = **U**ltra **L**uminous **I**nfra**r**ed **G**alaxy
UV = **U**ltra**v**iolet
VLBI = **V**ery **L**ong **B**aseline **I**nterferometry
VLT = **V**ery **L**arge **T**elescope
WFM = **W**ide **F**ield **M**ode
WFPC2 = **W**ide **F**ield **P**lanetary **C**amera **2**
WHT = **W**illiam **H**erschel **T**elescope
WEAVE = **W**HT **E**nhanced **A**rea **V**elocity **E**xplorer
WLRG = **W**eak **L**ine **R**adio **G**alaxy
3C = **3**rd **C**ambridge [Catalogue of Radio Sources]
4C = **4**th **C**ambridge [Catalogue of Radio Sources]

Definitions used in this work

Compact Steep Spectrum (CSS) source = A luminous radio source ($L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}} > 10^{25}$ W) with a steep spectral index ($\alpha < -0.5$): see O'Dea (1998) and O'Dea & Saikia (2021) for reviews.

Coronal emission lines = Warm-ionised ($10{,}000 < T < 30{,}000$ K) emission lines arising from species with ionisation energies above $E_{\mathrm{ion}} > 100$ eV.

Emission-line ratio = A ratio of the fluxes of two (or more) emission lines.

Galaxy-wide / galaxy scales = Spatial scales similar to that of a typical AGN host galaxy; here, I define this as $r > 5$ kpc.

Gigahertz Peaked Spectrum (GPS) source = A luminous radio source ($L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}} > 10^{25}$ W Hz^{-1}) with a radio spectrum that peaks at gigahertz frequencies: see O'Dea (1998) and O'Dea & Saikia (2021) for reviews.

High radio luminosities (radio-luminous) = $\log_{10}(L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}}\ [\mathrm{W\ Hz^{-1}}]) > 25$.

Intermediate radio luminosities = $23 < \log_{10}(L_{1.4\,\mathrm{GHz}}\ [\mathrm{W\ Hz^{-1}}]) < 25$.

Matter-bounded geometry = Nebular geometry in which the outer edge of the ionised region of a gas cloud is the outer edge of the cloud itself; the cloud is completely ionised, and lacks a partially-ionised or neutral-atomic zone.

Outflow = Bulk motions of gas that are accelerated by AGN (e.g. via radiation pressure or shocks).

Outflow energetics = Outflow masses (Equation 1.3), mass outflow rates (Equation 1.4), and kinetic powers (Equation 1.5); see also coupling efficiencies (Equation 1.2).

Quasar = A galaxy that shows AGN-like emission in its nucleus (line ratios consistent with the AGN regions of the Baldwin et al. 1981 diagnostic diagrams, and line widths of FWHM > 200 km s^{-1}), with a bolometric luminosity of $L_{\mathrm{bol}} > 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}.

Quiescent = Non-outflowing; kinematically-quiescent.

Radiation-bounded geometry = Nebular geometry in which the edge of the ionised region of a gas cloud is within the cloud itself, so that there exists an ionisation front; ionised, partially-ionised, and neutral-atomic gas is present within the cloud.

(Radio) jet = A collimated stream of very fast ($v \sim 0.1c$) plasma produced by magnetohydrodynamical processes in the central AGN engine.

Radio structure = The observed structure of radio emission in an active galaxy, often consisting of a core and/or lobe(s).

Seyfert galaxy = A galaxy that shows AGN-like emission in its nucleus (line ratios consistent with the AGN regions of the Baldwin et al. 1981 diagnostic diagrams, and line widths of FWHM > 200 km s^{-1}), with a bolometric luminosity of $L_{\rm bol} < 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1}.

Ultra Luminous Infrared Galaxy (ULIRG) = A galaxy with an infrared luminosity above 10^{12} L$_{\odot}$ ($L_{5-500\,\mu{\rm m}} > 3.8 \times 10^{45}$ erg s^{-1} Sanders & Mirabel 1996).

Wind = Very fast ($v >$ 10,000 km s^{-1}) gas that has been accelerated by radiation pressure close to the accretion disk of an AGN (see Hopkins & Elvis 2010).

Appendices

“When shadows grow longer,
and the sun sets for the forthcoming night...”

— Empyrium, *When Shadows Grow Longer*

Appendix A

The impact of varying photoionisation model parameters on the [OIII](5007/4363) vs HeIIλ4686/Hβ diagnostic diagram

As noted in Section 2.3.1, the modelled values of the [OIII](5007/4363) and HeIIλ4686/Hβ ratios depend on the electron density and metallicity of the emitting gas, the spectral index of the AGN continuum, and the ionisation parameter. In order to investigate the impact of this on ionisation-mechanism diagnostics, I present photoionisation models with varied values of these parameters here. The principal goal of this analysis is to determine if there exists a reasonable set of parameters which can explain the measured ratios for IC 5063 (Chapter 2; Figure 2.11) as being entirely due to AGN photoionisation, which would remove the need to include a contribution from shocks.

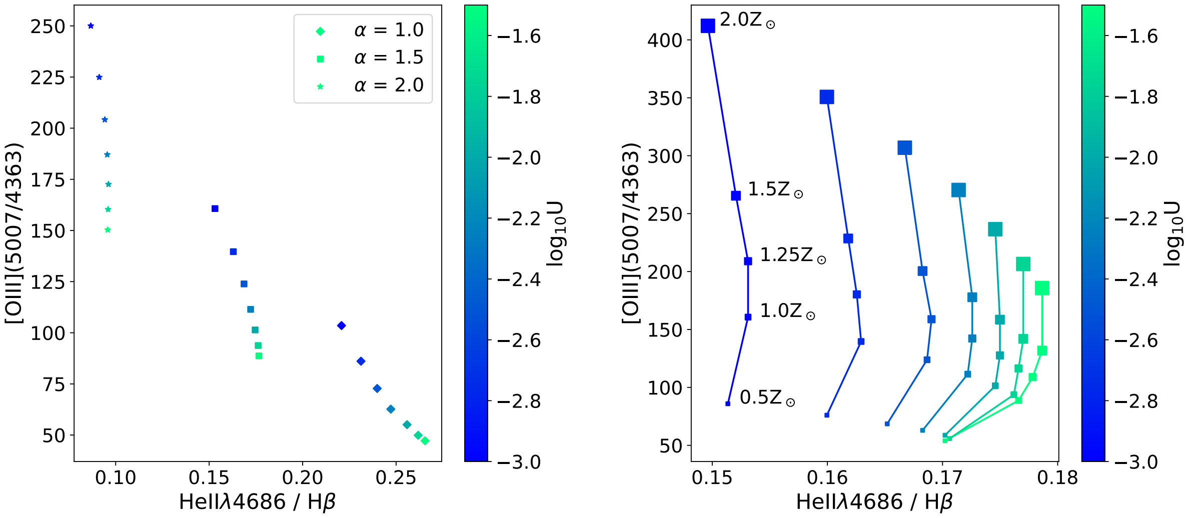
The Cloudy photoionisation code was used for this purpose. The models were set up in the same way as described in Sections 2.3.1 and 3.3.1, in which they were used to produce grids for the transauroral-line ratios. Single-slab, plane-parallel, radiation-bounded models of dust-free photoionised gas with an electron density of $n_e = 10^3$ cm^{-3} were produced for varying metallicities, spectral indices and ionisation parameters.

In Figure A.1a the modelled ratios for a solar-composition gas of density $n_e = 10^3$ cm^{-3} with three different spectral indices of the AGN-photoionising continuum ($\alpha = 1.0, 1.5$, and 2.0; each marked with different symbols) and ionisation parameters ranging between $-3.0 < \log_{10}U < -1.5$ are presented. It can be seen that varying the ionisation parameter for a given spectral index can change the [OIII](5007/4363) ratio by a factor of two, while the effect on the HeIIλ4686/Hβ ratio is only a factor of ~1.25 in the most extreme case. Changing the spectral index has a similar effect on the [OIII] ratio: the modelled ratio for $\alpha = 1.5$ is a factor of ~1.5 higher than for $\alpha = 1.0$. Furthermore, the chosen spectral index also has a non-negligible effect on the HeIIλ4686/Hβ ratio, with the ratio for $\alpha = 1.5$ being a factor of $\sim$1.5 higher than for $\alpha = 1.0$.

The variation in the modelled ratios for $\alpha = 1.5$ with gas metallicities ranging from 0.5–2.0 $Z_\odot$ is shown in Figure A.1b, with higher metallicities having larger marker sizes. As with spectral index and ionisation parameter, the chosen gas metallicity also has a significant effect on the modelled [OIII] ratio, however, the effect on HeIIλ4686/Hβ is negligible. Finally, I investigate the effect that electron density has on the modelled ratios by fixing the ionisation parameter to $\log U = -2.75$ for a solar-metallicity gas with three spectral indices ($\alpha = 1.0, 1.5$, and 2.0), and varying the electron density between $2.0 < \log_{10}(n_e\,[\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 5.0$, as is shown in Figure A.1c.

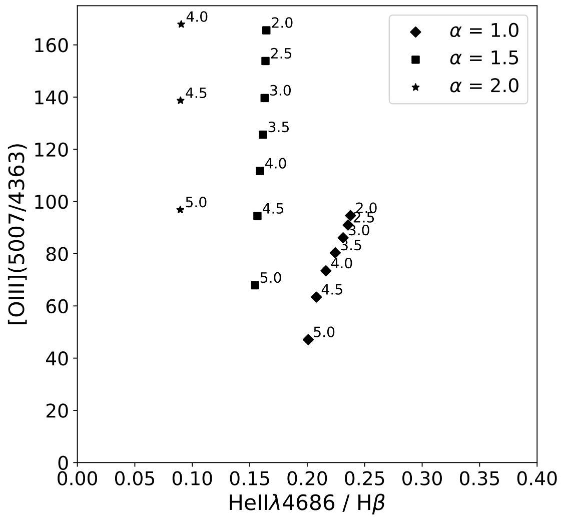
Given the ratios that are measured from the apertures of the outflowing regions in IC 5063 (Chapter 2, Figure 2.11), it is found that for $\alpha = 1.5$, only metal-poor gas ($\sim$0.5 $Z_\odot$), a higher electron density than is measured ($n_e > 10^{3.5}$ cm^{-3}; Section 2.3.1), and a much higher ionisation parameter can explain the observed ratios as being solely due to AGN photoionisation. The gas mass contained in the disk of IC 5063 is $M_{\mathrm{disk}} \gtrapprox 1 \times 10^9$ M$_\odot$ (from the molecular phase; Morganti et al. 2015), corresponding to an approximate stellar mass of $M_* \sim 10^9$ M$_\odot$ (Maddox et al., 2015), which would imply a metallicity of $12 + \log(\mathrm{O/H}) \approx 8.6$ using the relation given by Tremonti et al. (2004). A metallicity of 0.5 Z$_\odot$ corresponds to $12 + \log(\mathrm{O/H}) \approx 8.3$, lower than would be expected for IC 5063 given the mass of its disk.

However, the spectral index of $\alpha = 1.5$ is an assumption — it is feasible that some combination of ionisation parameter (which varies between kinematic components), along with a different spectral index, can produce line ratios similar to those found for the warm-ionised gas in IC 5063 without the need for an additional shock component.



(a) Modelled line ratios for a gas density of $n_e = 10^3$ cm^{-3} and an ionising source of varying spectral index and ionisation parameter. Spectral indices of $\alpha = 1.0, 1.5,$ and 2.0 are shown by diamonds, squares and stars respectively.

(b) Modelled line ratios for $\alpha = 1.5$ and varying metallicities. The different fractions of solar abundance, ranging from 0.5–2 $Z_\odot$ in steps of 0.5 $Z_\odot$, are shown with different marker sizes (labelled). Points with the same ionisation parameter are joined to show the variation with metallicity.



(c) Modelled line ratios for log$U$ = −2.75 and varying electron densities in the range $2.0 < \log_{10}(n_e\ [\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]) < 5.0$ (labelled).

Figure A.1: HeIIλ4686/Hβ vs [OIII]λ5007/4363 line ratios from photoionisation modelling of a solar-composition gas with plane-parallel geometry and varying model parameters. In the top two panels, the variation in ionisation parameter is shown by the colour bar (ranging between $-3.0 < \log_{10}U < -1.5$ in steps of 0.25). Note that the axis limits are different than those used in Figure 2.11.

Appendix B

Critical densities and ionisation energies for key diagnostic emission lines

Table B.1 presents critical densities and ionisation energies for the lines used in the analyses presented in Chapters 2 3, and 5, calculated using the PyNeb Python module (Luridiana et al., 2015) for a gas of temperature $T_{\rm e} = 15,000$ K.

There have previously been concerns that the transauroral lines — used to derive electron densities and reddenings in Chapters 2 and 3 — do not trace the same gas that is emitting other key diagnostic lines such as Hβ and [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 (see Section 1.2.1; Sun et al. 2017; Rose et al. 2018; Spence et al. 2018). I note that, if the transauroral lines originate from denser clumps of gas within the same cloud complexes as the clouds emitting other lines (Sun et al., 2017), those clumps would also be expected to radiate strongly in Hβ, since the recombination line emissivity scales with n^2. Furthermore, I highlight that the transauroral lines have critical densities that are closer to the critical density of the [OIII]$\lambda\lambda$4959,5007 lines than the traditional [SII] and [OII] lines (Table B.1), so they are more likely to trace the [OIII]-emitting clouds than the traditional lines (Rose et al., 2018; Spence et al., 2018). Furthermore, the transauroral ratios involve emission lines that arise from transitions within the [OII] ion, which has an ionisation energy that is closer to the ionisation energy of [OIII] than [SII]. This highlights that the transauroral lines are likely better tracers of the [OIII]-emitting gas than the commonly-used [SII](6717/6731) ratio.

Emission line	n_{crit} (cm^{-3})	E_{ion} (eV)
[FeVII]λ6087	1.9×10^7	99.0
[FeVII]λ3759	3.5×10^8	99.0
[NeV]λ3426	1.8×10^7	97.2
[NeIII]λ3869	1.3×10^7	41.0
[OIII]λ4959,5007	7.8×10^5	35.1
Transauroral [OII] and [SII] lines		
[OII]λ7320,7331	6.9×10^6	13.6
[OII]λ7319,7330	4.7×10^6	13.6
[SII]λ4069	3.2×10^6	10.4
[SII]λ4076	1.6×10^6	10.4
Traditional [OII] and [SII] lines		
[OII]λ3726	4.8×10^3	13.6
[OII]λ3729	1.4×10^3	13.6
[SII]λ6716	1.9×10^3	10.4
[SII]λ6731	5.1×10^3	10.4

Table B.1: Critical densities and ionisation energies at $T_e = 15,000$ K for several key diagnostic lines that trace the warm ionised outflow phase: the [NeV]λ3426 and [NeIII]λ3869 lines are used to investigate the presence of matter-bounded gas in Chapter 3; the lines in the [FeVII](6087/3759) ratio are used to determine densities for high-ionisation gas in Chapter 3; the [OIII]λ4959,5007 doublet is used for kinematics in Chapters 2, 3, 5, and the 'traditional' [SII](6717/6731) and [SII](3726/3729) density ratios and the transauroral lines are used to derive electron densities and reddenings in Chapters 2, 3, 5. The PyNeb Python module was used to produce the values in this table.

Appendix C

Modelling the effect of shock-ionisation on the transauroral-line-ratio diagnostic grid

In order to investigate the effect of shock-ionisation on the transauroral-line technique of electron density measurement[1] (Holt et al., 2011), in Figure C.1 I plot the expected TR([OII]) and TR([SII]) line ratios with the radiation-bounded diagnostic grid for photoionised gas that was previously presented in Section 3.3.1, Figure 3.4 (see also Section 2.3.1, Figure 2.9). The shock models shown on this grid were taken from the library presented by Allen et al. (2008) (generated with the MAPPINGS III code), and are for solar-composition gas.

First, the effect of varying the shock velocity between $0 < v_{\mathrm{shock}} < 1000$ km s^{-1} with a constant magnetic parameter of $B/\sqrt{n} = 2\,\mu\mathrm{G\,cm}^{3/2}$ and pre-shock densities of $n = 1$, 10, 100, 1000 cm^{-3} was investigated. Assuming a compression factor of ∼100 if the gas cools in pressure equilibrium behind the shock (Sutherland & Dopita, 2017; Santoro et al., 2018), these correspond to post-shock densities of $n = 10^2$, 10^3, 10^4, 10^5 cm^{-3}. From Figure C.1, it can be seen that for high shock velocities ($\gtrsim 500$ km s^{-1}) at a given density, the modelled line ratios are similar to those predicted by photoionisation modelling. However, for lower shock velocities (a few hundred km s^{-1}), the predicted densities may differ by ±0.22 orders of magnitude. Similarly, shock-ionisation may affect the derived colour excesses by $\mathrm{E(B-V)_{TR}} \pm 0.13$.

Secondly, I investigate the effect of varying the magnetic parameter between typical values for the ISM ($2 < B/\sqrt{n} < 4\,\mu\mathrm{G\,cm}^{3/2}$: Dopita & Sutherland 1995; Allen et al.

---

[1] The effect of shock-ionisation on the transauroral-line density and reddening diagnostic was investigated in a preliminary fashion by Spence (2018).

2008). This was done for three values of shock velocity ($v_{\rm shock} = 400, 600, 800$ km s^{-1}), which is shown in Figure C.2. The impact on derived electron densities is greater at higher densities (±0.25 orders of magnitude) than at lower densities (±0.10 orders of magnitude), with little effect on the derived reddening value.

Finally, I quantify the effect of simultaneously varying the velocity (between $0 < v_{\rm shock} < 1000$ km s^{-1}) and the magnetic parameter ($2 < B/\sqrt{n} < 4\ \mu$G cm$^{3/2}$) on the TR-derived electron densities and reddenings (Figure C.3). It is found that the effect on the derived density is ±0.38 orders of magnitude, regardless of the density of the modelled gas, and that the effect on derived reddening values is the same as varying the velocity ($\rm E(B-V) \pm 0.13$).

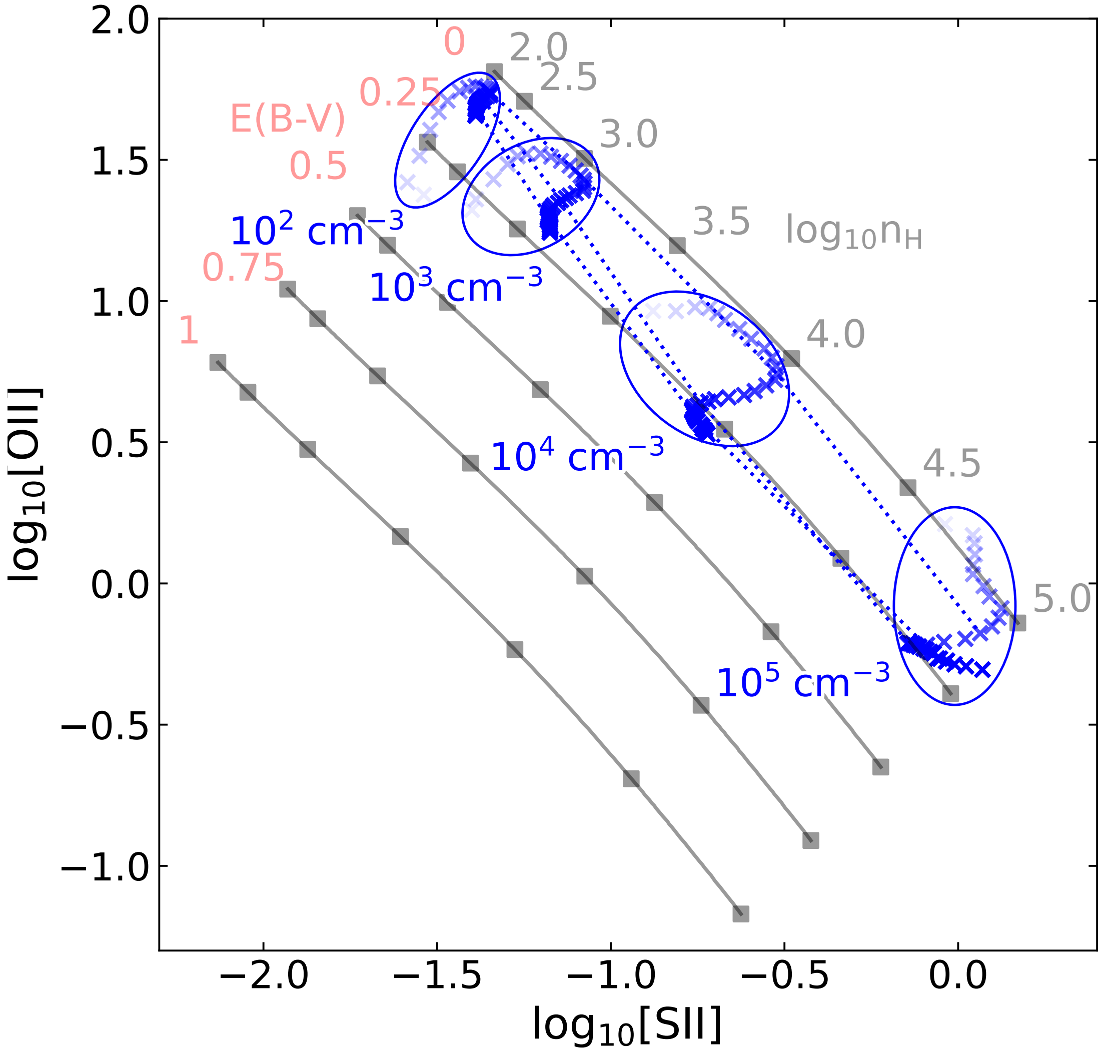


Figure C.1: Transauroral-line-ratio (TR([SII]) vs TR([OII]) grid for radiation-bounded AGN-photoionised gas (black with red E(B-V) labels; as in Figures 2.9 and 3.4) with the line ratios expected from modelled shocks (blue crosses) of fixed magnetic parameter ($B/\sqrt{n} = 2\ \mu$G cm$^{3/2}$) at different post-shock densities (labelled in blue), and for a range of shock velocities ($0 < v_{\rm shock} < 1000$ km s^{-1}). Line ratios from shock modelling at a single post-shock density (assuming a compression factor of 100) are grouped by blue ellipses, and points of the same shock velocity ($\rm v_{shock} = 400, 600, 800$ km s^{-1}) are joined by dashed blue lines.

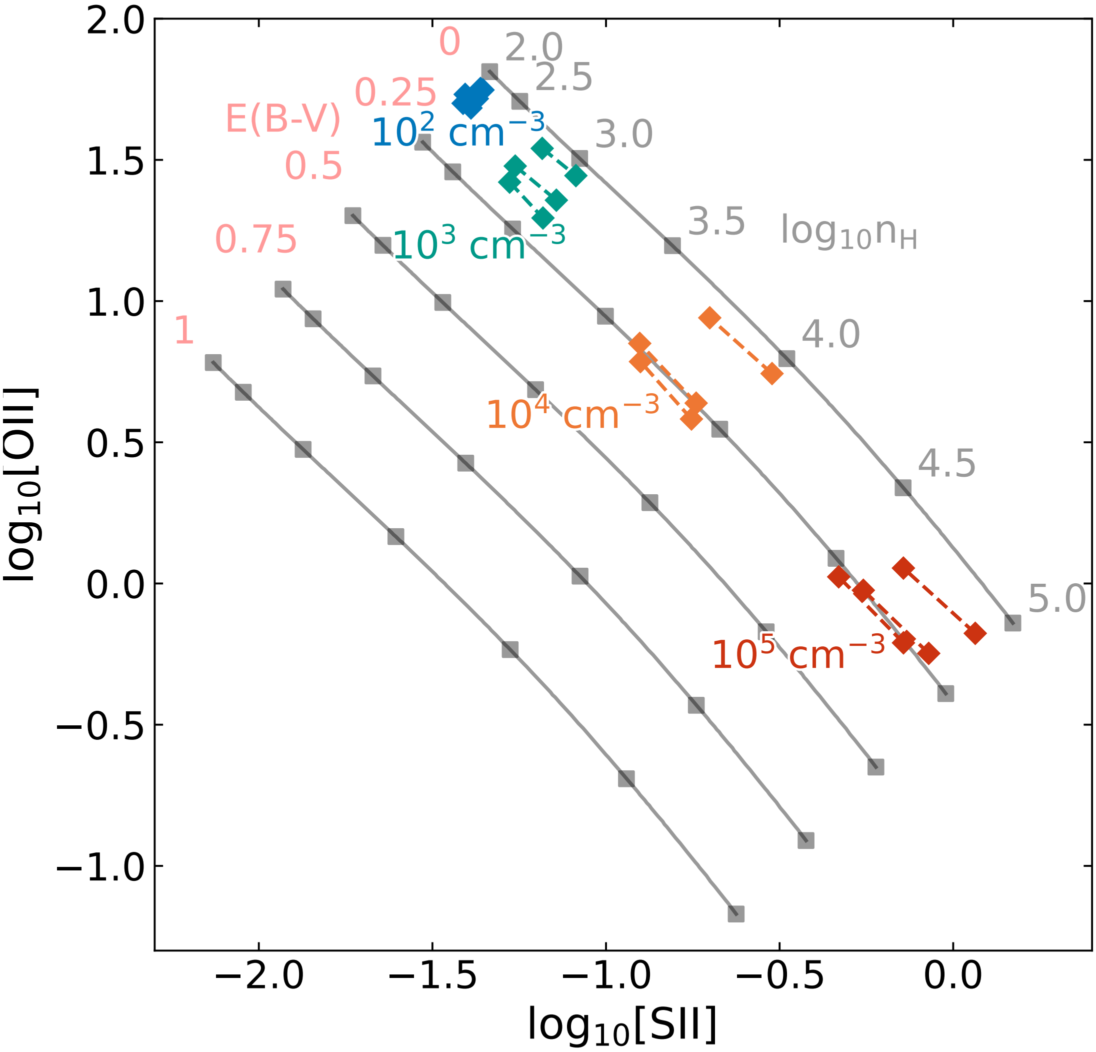


Figure C.2: Transauroral-line-ratio grid (as in Figure 3.4) with line ratios predicted by shock modelling for three values of shock velocity ($v_{\text{shock}} = 400, 600$ and 800 km s^{-1}) and two values of magnetic parameter ($2 < B/\sqrt{n} < 4$ μG cm$^{3/2}$) which are typical of the ISM. Line ratios generated using the same post-shock density are shown as crosses with the same colour (labelled), and points of the same density and velocity are joined by a dashed line.

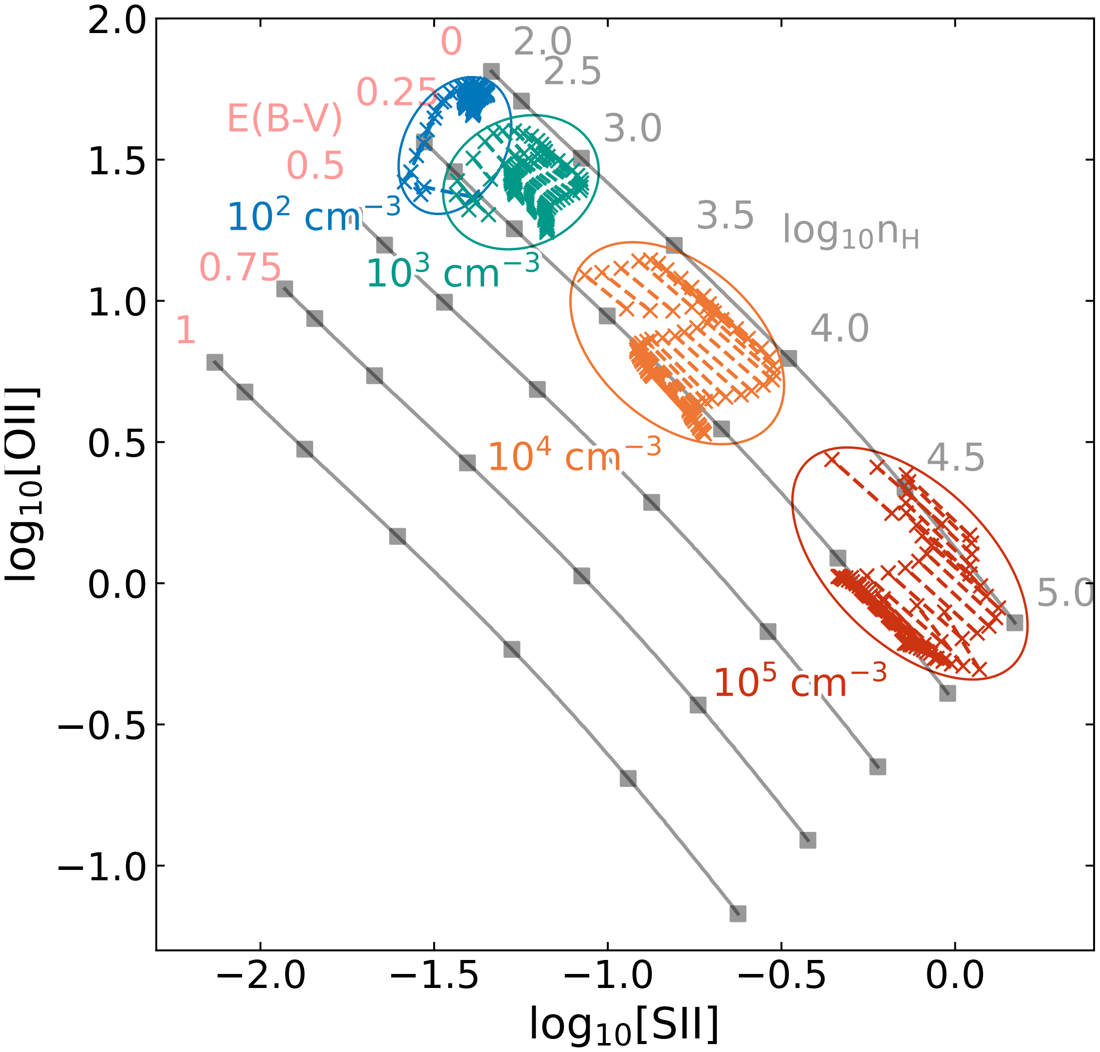


Figure C.3: Transauroral-line-ratio grid (as in Figure 3.4) with line ratios predicted by shock modelling for two magnetic parameters ($B/\sqrt{n} = 2, 4\ \mu\mathrm{G\ cm}^{3/2}$) and a range of shock velocities ($0 < v_{\mathrm{shock}} < 1000\ \mathrm{km\ s}^{-1}$) at each value of post-shock density. Predicted ratios with the same post-shock density are shown with crosses of a single colour for each density (labelled) and are grouped with ellipses.